

# 2019

## **BUILDING ENERGY EFFICIENCY STANDARDS FOR RESIDENTIAL AND NONRESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS**

FOR THE 2019 BUILDING  
ENERGY EFFICIENCY  
STANDARDS

TITLE 24, PART 6, AND ASSOCIATED  
ADMINISTRATIVE REGULATIONS  
IN PART 1.



DECEMBER 2018  
CEC-400-2018-020-CMF

**CALIFORNIA ENERGY COMMISSION**  
Edmund G. Brown Jr., Governor



# **CALIFORNIA ENERGY COMMISSION**

Robert B. Weisenmiller, Ph.D.  
***Chair***

## ***Commissioners***

Karen Douglas, J.D.  
Andrew McAllister  
David Hochschild  
Janea A. Scott

Payam Bozorgchami, P.E.  
Larry Froess, P.E.  
***Project Managers***

Christopher Meyer  
***Manager***  
***Building Standards Office***

David Ashuckian, P.E.  
***Deputy Director***  
***Efficiency Division***

Drew Bohan  
***Executive Director***

This page intentionally left blank.

## Acknowledgments

The Building Energy Efficiency Standards (Energy Standards) were first adopted and put into effect in 1978 and have been updated periodically in the intervening years. The Energy Standards are a unique California asset that have placed the State on the forefront of energy efficiency, sustainability, energy independence, and climate change issues, and have provided a template for national standards within the United States as well as for other countries around the globe. They have benefitted from the conscientious involvement and enduring commitment to the public good of many persons and organizations along the way. The 2019 Energy Standards development and adoption process continues a long-standing practice of maintaining the Standards with technical rigor, challenging but achievable design and construction practices, public engagement, and full consideration of the views of stakeholders.

2019 is a major step towards meeting the Zero Net Energy (ZNE) goal by the year 2020 and is the last of three updates to move California toward achieving that goal.

The 2019 Energy Standards revision and the supporting documents were conceptualized, evaluated and justified through the excellent work of Energy Commission staff and consultants working under contract to the Energy Commission, supported by the utility-organized Codes and Standards Enhancement (CASE) Initiative, and shaped by the participation of over 150 stakeholders and the contribution of over 1,300 formal public comments.

We would like to acknowledge Commissioner Andrew McAllister and his adviser, Martha Brooks, P.E. for their unwavering leadership throughout the standards development. Payam Bozorgchami, P.E., who served as the project manager and senior engineer; Bill Pennington, Special Advisor to the Efficiency Division, who provided overall guidance and contributed to the technical content of the Standards documents; Mazi Shirakh, P.E., who served as the senior engineer and senior technical lead for solar photovoltaic standards; Christopher Meyer, who served as the Manager for the Buildings Standards Office; Peter Strait, who served as the supervisor for the Standards Development Unit; Todd Ferris, who served as the supervisor for the Standards Tools Unit, Rebecca Westmore, Matt Chalmers, Jacqueline Moore and Galen Lemei, who provided legal counsel; and technical staff contributors of the Building Standards office including Mark Alatorre, P.E.; Courtney Jones; Larry Froess, P.E.; Simon Lee P.E; Jeff Miller, P.E; Ronald Balneg; Adrian Ownby; Dee Anne Ross; Michael Shewmaker; Alexis Smith; Danny Tam; Gabriel Taylor, P.E.; RJ Wichert; Thao Chau; Ingrid Neumann; The Standards Outreach and Education Unit under the supervision of Christopher Olvera; Andrea Bailey; Amie Brousseau; Paula David; Kelly Morairty; Javier Perez; Daniel Wong, P.E. The Standards Compliance Office, Joe Loyer; Rashid Mir, P.E; Lea Haro who served as the supervisor of the Compliance and Enforcement Unit; Judy Roberson Veronica Olvera; and Tav Commins; Energy Commission editors office managed by Sandy Louey and including Carol Robinson; Amber Beck; Albert Lundeen; Lana McAllister; Edward Ortiz; and Michael Ward, and the Energy Commission Hotline staff and Web Team.

Key Energy Commission and CASE consultants included NORESKO, Bruce Wilcox, Benya Lighting Design, Frontier Energy, McHugh Energy, Energy Solutions. The CASE Initiative is supported by a consortium of California utility providers which includes the Pacific Gas and Electric Company, Southern California Edison Company, San Diego Gas and Electric Company, Southern California Gas Company, the Sacramento Metropolitan Utility District, and the Los Angeles Department of Water and Power.

## Abstract

The Building Energy Efficiency Standards were first adopted in 1976 and have been updated periodically since then as directed by statute. In 1975 the Department of Housing and Community Development adopted rudimentary energy conservation standards under their State Housing Law authority that were a precursor to the first generation of the Standards. However, the Warren-Alquist Act was passed one year earlier with explicit direction to the Energy Commission (formally titled the State Energy Resources Conservation and Development Commission) to adopt and implement the Standards. The Energy Commission's statute created separate authority and specific direction regarding what the Standards are to address, what criteria are to be met in developing the Standards, and what implementation tools, aids, and technical assistance are to be provided.

The Standards contain energy and water efficiency requirements (and indoor air quality requirements) for newly constructed buildings, additions to existing buildings, and alterations to existing buildings. Public Resources Code Sections 25402 subdivisions (a)-(b) and 25402.1 emphasize the importance of building design and construction flexibility by requiring the Energy Commission to establish performance standards, in the form of an "energy budget" in terms of the energy consumption per square foot of floor space. For this reason, the Standards include both a prescriptive option, allowing builders to comply by using methods known to be efficient, and a performance option, allowing builders complete freedom in their designs provided the building achieves the same overall efficiency as an equivalent building using the prescriptive option. Reference Appendices are adopted along with the Standards that contain data and other information that helps builders comply with the Standards.

The 2019 update to the Building Energy Efficiency Standards focuses on several key areas to improve the energy efficiency of newly constructed buildings and additions and alterations to existing buildings. The most significant efficiency improvements to the residential Standards include the introduction of photovoltaic into the prescriptive package, improvements for attics, walls, water heating, and lighting. The most significant efficiency improvements to the nonresidential Standards include alignment with the ASHRAE 90.1 2017 national standards. The 2019 Standards also include changes made throughout all of its sections to improve the clarity, consistency, and readability of the regulatory language.

Public Resources Code Section 25402.1 also requires the Energy Commission to support the performance standards with compliance tools for builders and building designers. The Alternative Calculation Method (ACM) Approval Manual adopted by regulation as an appendix of the Standards establishes requirements for input, output and calculational uniformity in the computer programs used to demonstrate compliance with the Standards. From this, the Energy Commission develops and makes publicly available free, public domain building modeling software in order to enable compliance based on modeling of building efficiency and performance. The ACM Approval Manual also includes provisions for private firms seeking to develop compliance software for approval by the Energy Commission, which further encourages flexibility and innovation.

The Standards are conceptually divided into three basic sets. First, there is a basic set of mandatory requirements that apply to all buildings. Second, there is a set of performance standards – the energy budgets – that vary by climate zone (of which there are 16 in California) and building type; thus the Standards are tailored to local conditions, and provide flexibility in how energy efficiency in buildings can be achieved. Finally, the third set constitutes an alternative to the performance standards, which is a set of prescriptive packages that provide a recipe or a checklist compliance approach.

**Keywords:**

California Energy Commission	Mandatory	Envelope Insulation
California Building Code	Prescriptive	HVAC
California Building Energy Efficiency Standards	Performance	Building Commissioning
	Time Dependent	Process Load
Title 24, Part 6	Valuation	Refrigeration
2019 Building Energy Efficiency Standards	TDV	Data Center
	Ducts in Conditioned Spaces	Exhaust
Residential	High Performance Attics	Compressed Air
Nonresidential	High Performance Walls	Acceptance Testing
Newly Constructed	High Efficacy Lighting	Data Collection
Additions and Alterations to Existing Buildings	Water Heating	Cool Roof
	Windows	On-site Renewable

This page intentionally left blank.

**ADMINISTRATIVE REGULATIONS**

**CALIFORNIA CODE OF REGULATIONS**

**TITLE 24, PART 1**

(This page intentionally left blank.)

# ARTICLE 1 – ENERGY BUILDING REGULATIONS

---

## 10-101 – SCOPE

- (a) This article contains administrative regulations relating to the energy building regulations in Title 24, Part 6. This article applies to all residential and nonresidential buildings.
- (b) Nothing in this article lessens any necessary qualifications or responsibilities of licensed or registered building professionals or other designers or builders, or the duties of enforcement agencies that exist under state or local law.
- (c) If any provision of the regulations in this article or the Building Energy Efficiency Standards, Title 24, Part 6, of the California Code of Regulations is found invalid by a court of competent jurisdiction, the remainder of these regulations shall remain in effect.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code.

---

## 10-102 – DEFINITIONS

In this article the following definitions apply:

**ACCEPTANCE REQUIREMENTS** are "acceptance requirements for code compliance" as defined in Section 100.1(b) of Part 6.

**ACCEPTANCE TEST TECHNICIAN (ATT)** is a Field Technician as defined in Section 10-102 who is certified by an authorized Acceptance Test Technician Certification Provider to perform acceptance testing of either lighting controls or mechanical systems pursuant to the requirements of Sections 10-103.1 or 10-103.2, respectively. ATTs are authorized to perform only those acceptance tests for which they are certified by an ATTCP; ATTs certified to perform acceptance testing of lighting controls are sometimes referred to as "lighting control ATTs", and ATTs certified to perform acceptance testing of mechanical systems are sometimes referred to as "mechanical ATTs". (See "Field Technician" and "Acceptance Test Technician Certification Provider".)

**ACCEPTANCE TEST EMPLOYER (ATE)** is a person or entity who employs an Acceptance Test Technician and is certified by an authorized Acceptance Test Technician Certification Provider pursuant to the requirements of Sections 10-103.1 or 10-103.2. ATEs are authorized to employ only those ATTs for which they are certified by an ATTCP; ATEs certified to employ ATTs that perform acceptance testing of lighting controls are sometimes referred to as "lighting control ATEs", and ATEs certified to employ ATTs that perform acceptance testing of mechanical systems are sometimes referred to as "mechanical ATEs". (See "Acceptance Test Technician" and "Acceptance Test Technician Certification Provider".)

**ACCEPTANCE TEST TECHNICIAN CERTIFICATION PROVIDER (ATTCP)** is an agency, organization or entity approved by the Energy Commission to train, certify and oversee ATTs and ATEs relating to either lighting controls or mechanical systems according to the requirements of Sections 10-103.1 or 10-103.2, respectively. ATTCPs are authorized to certify only those ATTs and ATEs for which they are approved by the Energy Commission; ATTCPs approved to certify ATTs and ATEs relating to the acceptance testing of lighting controls are sometimes referred to as "lighting control ATTCPs", and ATTCPs approved to certify ATTs and ATEs relating to the acceptance testing of mechanical systems are sometimes referred to as "mechanical ATTCPs". (See "Acceptance Test Technician" and "Acceptance Test Employer".)

**ACM** means **ALTERNATIVE CALCULATION METHOD** are compliance software, or alternative component packages, or exceptional methods approved by the Commission under Section 10-109. ACMs are also referred to as Compliance Software.

**ACM APPROVAL MANUALS** are the documents establishing the requirements for Energy Commission approval of Compliance Software used to demonstrate compliance with the Building Energy Efficiency Standards for Residential and Nonresidential Buildings currently adopted by the Energy Commission.

**ACM REFERENCE MANUAL** is the document establishing the procedures required to implement Sections 140.1 and 150.1 of Title 24, Part 6 of the California Code of Regulations in Compliance Software.

**ADDITIONALITY** is a property of solar offsets whereby the offset causes additional benefits beyond what would occur as a result of all other actions, and which would exclusively benefit the building or property for which the offset substitutes for compliance obligations that would otherwise be required for that building or property, and those benefits would not ever be transferred to other buildings or property.

**ALTERNATIVE COMPONENT PACKAGE** is a set of building measures whose aggregate calculated energy use is less than or equal to the maximum allowed Energy Budget.

**APPLIANCE EFFICIENCY REGULATIONS** are the regulations in Title 20, Section 1601 et. seq. of the California Code of Regulations.

**APPROVED CALCULATION METHOD** is compliance software, or alternative component packages, or exceptional methods approved under Section 10-109.

**BUILDING ENERGY EFFICIENCY STANDARDS** are those regulations contained in Title 24, Part 6 of the California Code of Regulations.

**BUILDING PERMIT** is an electrical, plumbing, mechanical, building, or other permit or approval, that is issued by an enforcement agency, and that authorizes any construction that is subject to Part 6.

**CALIFORNIA ENERGY COMMISSION** is the California State Energy Resources Conservation and Development Commission.

**COMMISSION** is the California State Energy Resources Conservation and Development Commission.

**COMPLEX MECHANICAL SYSTEMS** are defined here for the purposes of complying with the Design Phase Review component of Section 10-103(a)1. Complex Mechanical Systems are systems that include 1) fan systems each serving multiple thermostatically controlled zones, or 2) built-up air handler systems (non-unitary or non-packaged HVAC equipment), or 3) hydronic or steam heating systems, or 4) hydronic cooling systems. Complex systems are NOT the following: unitary or packaged equipment listed in Tables 110.2-A, 110.2-B, 110.2-C, and 110.2-E, that each serve one zone, or two-pipe, heating only systems serving one or more zones.

**COMPLIANCE APPROACH** is any one of the allowable methods by which the design and construction of a building may be demonstrated to be in compliance with Part 6. The compliance approaches are the performance compliance approach and the prescriptive compliance approach. The requirements for each compliance approach are set forth in Section 100.0(e)2 of Part 6.

**COMPLIANCE DOCUMENT** is any of the documents specified in Section 10-103(a) utilized to demonstrate compliance with Part 6 (i.e., Certificate of Compliance, Certificate of Installation, Certificate of Acceptance, and Certificate of Verification).

**COMPLIANCE SOFTWARE** is software that has been approved pursuant to Section 10-109 of Part 1.

**CONDITIONED FLOOR AREA** is the “conditioned floor area” as defined in Section 100.1(b) of Part 6.

**CRRC-1** is the Cool Roof Rating Council document titled “Product Rating Program”.

**DATA REGISTRY** is a web service with a user interface and database maintained by a Registration Provider that complies with the applicable requirements in Reference Joint Appendix JA7, with guidance from the Data Registry Requirements Manual, and provides for registration of residential or nonresidential compliance documentation used for demonstrating compliance with Part 6.

**RESIDENTIAL DATA REGISTRY** is a data registry that is maintained by a HERS Provider that provides for registration, when required by Part 6 of all residential compliance documentation and the nonresidential Certificate of Verification.

**NONRESIDENTIAL DATA REGISTRY** is a data registry that is maintained by a Registration Provider approved by the Commission that provides for registration, when required by Part 6 of all nonresidential compliance documentation. However, nonresidential data registries may not provide for registration of nonresidential Certificates of Verification.

**DATA REGISTRY REQUIREMENTS MANUAL** is a document that provides additional detailed guidance regarding the functional and technical aspects of the data registry requirements given in Joint Appendix JA7.

**DOCUMENTATION AUTHOR** is a person who prepares a Title 24 Part 6 compliance document that must subsequently be reviewed and signed by a responsible person in order to certify compliance with Part 6.

**ENERGY BUDGET** is the “energy budget” as defined in Section 100.1(b) of Part 6.

**ENERGY COMMISSION** is the California State Energy Resources Conservation and Development Commission.

**ENFORCEMENT AGENCY** is the city, county, or state agency responsible for issuing a building permit.

**EXCEPTIONAL METHOD** is a method for estimating the energy performance of building features that cannot be adequately modeled using existing Compliance Software and that is approved by the Executive Director.

**EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR** is the executive director of the Commission.

**FIELD TECHNICIAN** is a person who performs acceptance tests in accordance with the specifications in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7, and reports the results of the acceptance tests on the Certificate of Acceptance in accordance with the requirements of Section 10-103(a)4.

**HERS** is the California Home Energy Rating System as described in Title 20, Chapter 4, Article 8, Section 1670.

**HERS PROVIDER** is an organization that administers a home energy rating system as described in Title 20, Chapter 4, Article 8, Section 1670.

**HERS PROVIDER DATA REGISTRY** is a data registry maintained by a HERS provider.

**HERS RATER** is a person who has been trained, tested, and certified by a HERS Provider to perform the field verification and diagnostic testing required for demonstrating compliance with the Part 6 as described in Title 20, Chapter 4, Article 8, Section 1670(i).

**HVAC SYSTEM** is the “HVAC system” as defined in Section 100.1(b) of Part 6.

**MANUFACTURED DEVICE** is the “manufactured device” as defined in Section 100.1(b) of Part 6.

**NFRC 100** is the National Fenestration Rating Council document titled “NFRC 100: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product U-factors.” (2017) NFRC 100 includes procedures for the Component Modeling Approach (CMA) and site built fenestration formerly included in a separate document, NFRC 100-SB.

**NFRC 200** is the National Fenestration Rating Council document titled “NFRC 200: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficients and Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence.” (2017),

**NFRC 202** is the National Fenestration Rating Council document titled “NFRC 202: Procedures for Determining Translucent Fenestration Product Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence.” (2017).

**NFRC 203** is the National Fenestration Rating Council document titled “NFRC 203: Procedure for Determining Visible Transmittance of Tubular Daylighting Devices.” (2017),

**NFRC 400** is the National Fenestration Rating Council document titled “NFRC 400: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Air Leakage.” (2017).

**PART 6** is Title 24, Part 6 of the California Code of Regulations.

**PUBLIC ADVISER** is the Public Adviser of the Commission.

**R-VALUE** is the measure of the thermal resistance of insulation or any material or building component expressed in ft<sup>2</sup>-hr-°F/Btu.

**RECORD DRAWINGS** are drawings that document the as installed location and performance data on all lighting and space conditioning system components, devices, appliances and equipment, including but not limited to wiring sequences, control sequences, duct and pipe distribution system layout and sizes, space conditioning system terminal device layout and air flow rates, hydronic system and flow rates, and connections for the space conditioning system. Record drawings are sometimes referred to as “as built” drawings.

**REFERENCE APPENDICES** are the support document for the Building Energy Efficiency Standards and the ACM Approval Manuals. The document consists of three sections: the Reference Joint Appendices (JA), the Reference Residential Appendices (RA), and the Reference Nonresidential Appendices (NA) currently adopted by the Energy Commission.

**REFERENCE JOINT APPENDICES** are the Reference Joint Appendices currently adopted by the Energy Commission.

**REFERENCE NONRESIDENTIAL APPENDICES** are the Reference Nonresidential Appendices currently adopted by the Energy Commission.

**REFERENCE RESIDENTIAL APPENDICES** are the Reference Residential Appendices currently adopted by the Energy Commission.

**REGISTERED DOCUMENT** is a document that has been submitted to a residential or nonresidential data registry for retention, and the data registry has assigned a unique registration number to the document.

**REGISTRATION PROVIDER** is an organization that administers a data registry service that conforms to the requirements in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.

**STANDARD DESIGN BUILDING** is a “Standard Design Building” as defined in Section 100.1(b) of Part 6.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25402 and 25402.1, and 25213, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402 and 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8 and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

## 10-103 – PERMIT, CERTIFICATE, INFORMATIONAL, AND ENFORCEMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR DESIGNERS, INSTALLERS, BUILDERS, MANUFACTURERS, AND SUPPLIERS

(a) **Documentation.** For all buildings other than healthcare facilities, the following documentation is required to demonstrate compliance with Part 6. This documentation shall meet the requirements of Section 10-103(a) or alternatives approved by the Executive Director. Healthcare facilities shall instead comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 7.

1. **Certificate of Compliance.** For all buildings, the Certificate of Compliance described in Section 10-103 shall be signed by the person who is eligible under Division 3 of the Business and Professions Code to accept responsibility for the building design (*responsible person*); and submitted in accordance with Sections 10-103(a)1 and 10-103(a)2 to certify conformance with Part 6. If more than one person has responsibility for the building design, each person shall sign the Certificate of Compliance document(s) applicable to that portion of the design for which the person is responsible. Alternatively, the person with chief responsibility for the building design shall prepare and sign the Certificate of Compliance document(s) for the entire building design. Subject to the requirements of Sections 10-103(a)1 and 10-103(a)2, persons who prepare Certificate of Compliance documents (*documentation authors*) shall sign a declaration statement on the documents they prepare to certify the information provided on the documentation is accurate and complete. In accordance with applicable requirements of 10-103(a)1, the signatures provided by *responsible persons* and *documentation authors* shall be original signatures on paper documents or electronic signatures on electronic documents conforming to the electronic signature specifications in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.

For all Nonresidential buildings, the Design Review Kickoff Certificate(s) of Compliance and the Construction Document Design Review Checklist Certificate(s) of Compliance shall be reviewed and signed by a licensed professional engineer or licensed architect, or a licensed contractor representing services performed by or under the direct supervision of a licensed engineer or architect, as specified in the provisions of Division 3 of the Business and Professions Code. For buildings less than 10,000 square feet, this signer may be the engineer or architect of record. For buildings greater than 10,000 square feet but less than 50,000 square feet, this signer shall be a qualified in-house engineer or architect with no other project involvement or a third party engineer, architect, or contractor. For buildings greater than 50,000 square feet and all buildings with complex mechanical systems serving more than 10,000 square feet, this signer shall be a third party engineer, architect, or contractor.

- A. All Certificate of Compliance documentation shall conform to a format and informational order and content approved by the Energy Commission.

These documents shall:

- i. Identify the energy features, performance specifications, materials, components, and manufactured devices required for compliance with Part 6.
- ii. Identify the building project name and location. The building project name and location identification on the Certificate of Compliance shall be consistent with the building project name and location identification given on the other applicable building design plans and specifications submitted to the enforcement agency for approval with the building permit application.
- iii. Display the unique registration number assigned by the data registry if Section 10-103(a)1 requires the document to be registered.
- iv. Include a declaration statement to the effect that the building energy features, performance specifications, materials, components, and manufactured devices for the building design identified on the Certificate of Compliance indicate the building is in compliance with the requirements of Title 24, Parts 1 and 6, and the building design features identified on the Certificate of Compliance are consistent with the building design features identified on the other applicable compliance documents, worksheets, calculations, plans, and specifications submitted to the enforcement agency for approval with the building permit application.

- v. Be signed by the *documentation author* to certify the documentation is accurate and complete. When document registration is required by Section 10-103(a)1, the signature shall be an electronic signature on an electronic document in accordance with the electronic signature specifications in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.
- vi. Be signed by the *responsible person* eligible under Division 3 of the Business and Professions Code to accept responsibility for the design to certify conformance with Part 6. When document registration is required by Section 10-103(a)1, the signature shall be an electronic signature on an electronic document in accordance with the electronic signature specifications in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.

- B. For all low-rise residential buildings for which compliance requires HERS field verification, the person(s) responsible for the Certificate(s) of Compliance shall submit the Certificate(s) for registration and retention to a HERS provider data registry. The submittals to the HERS provider data registry shall be made electronically in accordance with the specifications in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.

Contingent upon availability and approval of an electronic document repository by the Executive Director, Certificate of Compliance documents that are registered and retained by a HERS provider data registry shall also be automatically transmitted by the data registry, to an electronic document repository for retention in accordance with the specifications in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.

- C. For alterations to existing residential buildings for which HERS field verification is not required, including but not limited to water heater and window replacements, and for additions to existing residential buildings that are less than 300 square feet for which HERS field verification is not required, the enforcement agencies may at their discretion not require any Certificate of Compliance documentation, or may develop simplified Certificate of Compliance documentation for demonstrating compliance with the Standards.

Exemptions from submitting compliance documentation shall not be deemed to grant authorization for any work to be done in any manner in violation of this code or other provisions of law.

- D. Contingent upon approval of data registry(s) by the Commission, all nonresidential buildings, high-rise residential buildings, and hotels and motels, when designated to allow use of an occupancy group or type regulated by Part 6 the person(s) responsible for the Certificate(s) of Compliance shall submit the Certificate(s) for registration and retention to a data registry approved by the Commission. The submittals to the approved data registry shall be made electronically in accordance with the specifications in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.

Contingent upon availability and approval of an electronic document repository by the Executive Director, Certificate of Compliance documents that are registered and retained by an approved data registry shall also be automatically transmitted by the data registry to an electronic document repository for retention in accordance with the specifications in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.

- 2. **Application for a building permit.** Each application for a building permit subject to Part 6 shall contain at least one copy of the documents specified in Sections 10-103(a)2A, 10-103(a)2B, and 10-103(a)2C.

- A. For all newly constructed buildings, additions, alterations, or repairs regulated by Part 6 the applicant shall submit the applicable Certificate(s) of Compliance to the enforcement agency for approval. The certificate(s) shall conform to the requirements of Section 10-103(a)1, and shall be approved by the local enforcement agency, in accordance with all applicable requirements of Section 10-103(d), by stamp or authorized signature prior to issuance of a building permit. A copy of the Certificate(s) of Compliance shall be included with the documentation the builder provides to the building owner at occupancy as specified in Section 10-103(b).

For alterations to existing residential buildings for which HERS field verification is required, and when the enforcement agency does not require building design plans to be submitted with the application for a building permit, the applicable Certificate of Compliance documentation specified in 10-103(a)1 is not required to be approved by the enforcement agency prior to issuance of a building permit, but shall be approved by the enforcement agency prior to final inspection of the dwelling unit, and shall be made available to the enforcement agency for all applicable inspections, or made available for viewing on an approved data registry.

When the enforcement agency requires building design plans to be submitted with the application for a building permit, the applicable Certificate of Compliance documents shall be incorporated into the building design plans. When Section 10-103(a)1 requires document registration, the certificate(s) that are incorporated into the building design plans shall be copies of the registered Certificate of Compliance documents from a HERS provider data registry, or a data registry approved by the Commission.

- B. When the enforcement agency requires building design plans and specifications to be submitted with the application for a building permit, the plans shall conform to the specifications for the features, materials, components, and manufactured devices identified on the Certificate(s) of Compliance, and shall conform to all other applicable requirements of Part 6. Plans and specifications shall be submitted to the enforcement agency for any other feature, material, component, or manufactured device that Part 6 requires be indicated on the building design plans and specifications. Plans and specifications submitted with each application for a building permit for Nonresidential buildings, High-rise Residential buildings and Hotels and Motels shall provide acceptance requirements for code compliance of each feature, material, component or manufactured device when acceptance requirements are required under Part 6. Plans and specifications for Nonresidential buildings, High-rise Residential buildings and Hotels and Motels shall require, and indicate with a prominent note on the plans, that within 90 days after the Enforcement Agency issues a permanent final occupancy permit, record drawings be provided to the building owner.

For all buildings, if the specification for a building design feature, material, component, or manufactured device is changed before final construction or installation, such that the building may no longer comply with Part 6 the building must be brought back into compliance, and so indicated on amended plans, specifications, and Certificate(s) of Compliance that shall be submitted to the enforcement agency for approval. Such characteristics shall include the efficiency (or other characteristic regulated by Part 6) of each building design feature, material, component, or device.

- C. The enforcement agency shall have the authority to require submittal of any supportive documentation that was used to generate the Certificate(s) of Compliance, including but not limited to the electronic input file for the compliance software tool that was used to generate performance method Certificate(s) of Compliance; or any other supportive documentation that is necessary to demonstrate that the building design conforms to the requirements of Part 6.
3. **Certificate of Installation.** For all buildings, the person in charge of the construction or installation, who is eligible under Division 3 of the Business and Professions Code to accept responsibility for the construction or installation of features, materials, components, or manufactured devices regulated by Part 6 or the Appliance Efficiency Regulations (*responsible person*) shall sign and submit Certificate of Installation documentation as specified in Section 10-103(a)3 to certify conformance with Part 6. If more than one person has responsibility for the construction or installation, each person shall sign and submit the Certificate of Installation documentation applicable to the portion of the construction or installation for which they are responsible; alternatively, the person with chief responsibility for the construction or installation shall sign and submit the Certificate of Installation documentation for the entire construction or installation scope of work for the project. Subject to the requirements of Section 10-103(a)3, persons who prepare Certificate of Installation documentation (*documentation authors*) shall sign a declaration statement on the documents they prepare to certify the information provided on the documentation is accurate and complete. In accordance with applicable requirements of 10-103(a)3, the signatures provided by *responsible persons* and *documentation authors* shall be original signatures on paper documents or electronic signatures on electronic documents conforming to the electronic signature specifications in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.
- A. **Delegation of Signature Authority.** Except where prohibited by law, including but not limited to any requirements under Division 3 of the Business and Professions Code, the *Responsible Person* may delegate signature authority to third parties (*Authorized Representatives*) provided that there is a written agreement:
- i. Between the *Responsible Person* and the person to be designated as the *Authorized Representative*.
  - ii. Specifying that the *Authorized Representative* may sign Certificates of Installation on behalf of the *Responsible Person*.

- iii. Specifying that the legal responsibility for construction or installation in the applicable classification for the scope of work specified on the Certificate of Installation document(s) remains with the Responsible Person.
  - iv. That is signed by both the *Responsible Person* and the *Authorized Representative*.
  - v. That is retained by the HERS Provider to which all compliance documents are submitted for the building to which the Certificate of Installation documentation pertains.
  - vi. That is maintained in the HERS Provider Data Registry such that it is accessible for verification by, included but not limited to, the Energy Commission and enforcement agencies.
- B. **Format.** All Certificate of Installation documentation shall conform to a format and informational order and content approved by the Energy Commission.

These documents shall:

- i. Identify the features, materials, components, manufactured devices, and system performance diagnostic results required to demonstrate compliance with Part 6 and the Appliance Efficiency Regulations.
  - ii. State the number of the building permit under which the construction or installation was performed.
  - iii. Display the unique registration number assigned by the data registry if Section 10-103(a)3 requires the document to be registered.
  - iv. Include a declaration statement indicating that the constructed or installed features, materials, components or manufactured devices (the installation) identified on the Certificate of Installation conforms to all applicable codes and regulations, and the installation conforms to the requirements given on the plans and specifications approved by the enforcement agency.
  - v. Be signed by the *documentation author* to certify the documentation is accurate and complete. When document registration is required by Section 10-103(a)3, the signature shall be an electronic signature on an electronic document in accordance with the electronic signature specifications in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.
  - vi. Be signed by the *Responsible Person* eligible under Division 3 of the Business and Professions Code to accept responsibility for construction or installation in the applicable classification for the scope of work specified on the Certificate of Installation document(s), or shall be signed by their *Authorized Representative*. When document registration is required by Section 10-103(a)3, the signature shall be an electronic signature on an electronic document in accordance with the electronic signature specifications in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.
- C. For all low-rise residential buildings, the person(s) responsible for the Certificate(s) of Installation, or their *Authorized Representative(s)*, shall submit the following Certificate of Installation documentation that is applicable to the building to a HERS provider data registry for registration and retention in accordance with procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA2:
- i. All Certificates of Installation for which compliance requires HERS field verification.
  - ii. All other Certificates of Installation, except those exempted by the Energy Commission.

The submittals to the HERS provider data registry shall be made electronically in accordance with the specifications in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.

Contingent upon availability and approval of an electronic document repository by the Executive Director, Certificate of Installation documents that are registered and retained by a HERS provider data registry shall also be automatically transmitted by the data registry to an electronic document repository for retention in accordance with the specifications in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.

- D. For alterations to existing residential buildings for which HERS field verification is not required, including but not limited to water heater and window replacements, and for additions to existing residential buildings that are less than 300 square feet for which HERS field verification is not required, the enforcement agencies may, at their discretion, not require any Certificate of Installation

documentation, or may develop simplified Certificate of Installation documentation for demonstrating compliance with the Standards.

Exemptions from submitting compliance documentation shall not be deemed to grant authorization for any work to be done in any manner in violation of this code or other provisions of law.

- E. Contingent upon approval of data registry(s) by the Commission, all nonresidential buildings, high-rise residential buildings, and hotels and motels, when designated to allow use of an occupancy group or type regulated by Part 6 the person(s) responsible for the Certificate(s) of Installation, except those documents exempted by the Energy Commission, shall submit the Certificate(s) for registration and retention to a data registry approved by the Commission. The submittals to the approved data registry shall be made electronically in accordance with the specifications in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.

Contingent upon availability and approval of an electronic document repository by the Executive Director, Certificate of Installation documents that are registered and retained by an approved data registry shall also be automatically transmitted by the data registry to an electronic document repository for retention in accordance with the specifications in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.

- F. **Availability.** For all buildings, a copy of the Certificate(s) of Installation shall be posted, or made available with the building permit(s) issued for the building, or made available for viewing on an approved data registry, and shall be made available to the enforcement agency for all applicable inspections. When document registration is required by Section 10-103(a)3, registered copies of the Certificate(s) of Installation from a HERS provider data registry or a data registry approved by the Commission shall be posted or made available with the building permit(s) issued for the building, and shall be made available to the enforcement agency for all applicable inspections. If construction on any portion of the building subject to Part 6 will be impossible to inspect because of subsequent construction, the enforcement agency may require the Certificate(s) of Installation to be posted upon completion of that portion. A copy of the Certificate(s) of Installation shall be included with the documentation the builder provides to the building owner at occupancy as specified in Section 10-103(b).

4. **Certificate of Acceptance.** For all nonresidential buildings, high-rise residential buildings, and hotels and motels, when designated to allow use of an occupancy group or type regulated by Part 6 the person in charge of the acceptance testing, who is eligible under Division 3 of the Business and Professions Code to accept responsibility for the applicable scope of system design, or construction, or installation of features, materials, components, or manufactured devices regulated by Part 6 or the Appliance Efficiency Regulations (*responsible person*), shall sign and submit all applicable Certificate of Acceptance documentation in accordance with Section 10-103(a)4 and Nonresidential Appendix NA7 to certify conformance with Part 6. If more than one person has responsibility for the acceptance testing, each person shall sign and submit the Certificate of Acceptance documentation applicable to the portion of the construction or installation, for which they are responsible; alternatively, the person with chief responsibility for the system design, construction or installation, shall sign and submit the Certificate of Acceptance documentation for the entire construction or installation scope of work for the project. Subject to the requirements of Section 10-103(a)4, persons who prepare Certificate of Acceptance documentation (*documentation authors*) shall sign a declaration statement on the documents they prepare to certify the information provided on the documentation is accurate and complete. Persons who perform acceptance test procedures in accordance with the specifications in Reference Joint Appendix NA7, and report the results of the acceptance tests on the Certificate of Acceptance (*field technicians*) shall sign a declaration statement on the documents they submit to certify the information provided on the documentation is true and correct. In accordance with applicable requirements of 10-103(a)4, the signatures provided by *responsible persons*, *field technicians*, and *documentation authors* shall be original signatures on paper documents or electronic signatures on electronic documents conforming to the electronic signature specifications in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.
- A. All Certificate of Acceptance documentation shall conform to a format and informational order and content approved by the Energy Commission.

These documents shall:

- i. Identify the features, materials, components, manufactured devices, and system performance diagnostic results required to demonstrate compliance with the acceptance requirements to which

the applicant must conform as indicated in the plans and specifications submitted under Section 10-103(a)2, and as specified in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.

- ii. State the number of the building permit under which the construction or installation was performed.
  - iii. Display the unique registration number assigned by the data registry if Section 10-103(a)4 requires the document to be registered.
  - iv. Include a declaration statement indicating that the features, materials, components or manufactured devices identified on the Certificate of Acceptance conform to the applicable acceptance requirements as indicated in the plans and specifications submitted under Section 10-103(a), and with applicable acceptance requirements and procedures specified in the Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7, and confirms that Certificate(s) of Installation described in Section 10-103(a)3 has been completed and is posted or made available with the building permit(s) issued for the building, or made available for viewing on an approved data registry.
  - v. Be signed by the *documentation author* to certify the documentation is accurate and complete. When document registration is required by Section 10-103(a)4, the signature shall be an electronic signature on an electronic document in accordance with the electronic signature specifications in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.
  - vi. Be signed by the *field technician* who performed the acceptance test procedures and reported the results on the Certificate of Acceptance. When document registration is required by Section 10-103(a)4, the signature shall be an electronic signature on an electronic document in accordance with the electronic signature specifications in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.
  - vii. Be signed by the *responsible person* in charge of the acceptance testing who is eligible under Division 3 of the Business and Professions Code to accept responsibility for the system design, construction or installation in the applicable classification for the scope of work identified on the Certificate of Acceptance, or shall be signed by their authorized representative. When document registration is required by Section 10-103(a)4, the signature shall be an electronic signature on an electronic document in accordance with the electronic signature specifications in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.
- B. Contingent upon approval of data registry(s) by the Commission, for all nonresidential buildings, high-rise residential buildings, and hotels and motels, when designated to allow use of an occupancy group or type regulated by Part 6 the person(s) responsible for the Certificate(s) of Acceptance shall submit the Certificate(s) for registration and retention to a data registry approved by the Commission. The submittals to the approved data registry shall be made electronically in accordance with the specifications in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.

Contingent upon availability and approval of an electronic document repository by the Executive Director, Certificate of Acceptance documents that are registered and retained by an approved data registry shall also be automatically transmitted by the data registry, to an electronic document repository for retention in accordance with the specifications in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.

- C. A copy of the registered Certificate(s) of Acceptance shall be posted, or made available with the building permit(s) issued for the building, or made available for viewing on an approved data registry, and shall be made available to the enforcement agency for all applicable inspections. If construction on any portion of the building subject to Part 6 will be impossible to inspect because of subsequent construction, the enforcement agency may require the Certificate(s) of Acceptance to be posted upon completion of that portion. A copy of the Certificate(s) of Acceptance shall be included with the documentation the builder provides to the building owner at occupancy as specified in Section 10-103(b).
5. **Certificate of Field Verification and Diagnostic Testing (Certificate of Verification).** For all buildings for which compliance requires HERS field verification, a certified HERS Rater shall conduct all required HERS field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with applicable procedures specified in Reference Appendices RA2, RA3, NA1, and NA2. All applicable Certificate of Verification documentation shall be completed, signed, and submitted by the certified HERS Rater who performed the field verification and diagnostic testing services (*responsible person*) in accordance with the requirements of Section 10-

103(a)5, and Reference Appendices RA2, and NA1, to certify conformance with Part 6. If more than one rater has responsibility for the HERS verification for the building, each rater shall sign and submit the Certificate of Verification documentation applicable to the portion of the building for which they are responsible. Subject to the requirements of Section 10-103(a)5, persons who prepare Certificate of Verification documentation (*documentation authors*) shall sign a declaration statement on the documents they prepare to certify the information provided on the documentation is accurate and complete. The signatures provided by *responsible persons* and *documentation authors* shall be electronic signatures on electronic documents.

- A **Format.** All Certificate of Verification documentation shall conform to a format and informational order and content approved by the Energy Commission.

These documents shall:

- i. Identify the installed features, materials, components, manufactured devices, or system performance diagnostic results that require HERS verification for compliance with Part 6 as specified on the Certificate(s) of Compliance for the building.
  - ii. State the number of the building permit under which the construction or installation was performed,
  - iii. Display the unique registration number assigned by the HERS provider data registry, and provide any additional information required by Reference Appendices RA2, RA3, NA1, and NA2.
  - iv. Include a declaration statement indicating that the installed features, materials, components or manufactured devices requiring HERS verification conform to the applicable requirements in Reference Appendices RA2, RA3, NA1, NA2, and the requirements specified on the Certificate(s) of Compliance approved by the local enforcement agency, and confirms the same features, materials, components or manufactured devices are identified on the applicable Certificate(s) of Installation signed and submitted by the person(s) responsible for the construction or installation as described in Section 10-103(a)3.
  - v. Be signed by the *documentation author* to certify the documentation is accurate and complete. The signatures shall be electronic signatures on electronic documents in accordance with the electronic signature specifications in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.
  - vi. Be signed by the HERS Rater who performed the field verification and diagnostic testing services (*responsible person*). The signatures shall be electronic signatures on electronic documents in accordance with the electronic signature specifications in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.
- B. For all buildings for which compliance requires HERS field verification, the certified HERS Rater responsible for the Certificate(s) of Verification shall submit the Certificates for registration and retention to a HERS provider data registry in accordance with the applicable procedures in Reference Appendices RA2 and NA1.

The submittals to the HERS provider data registry shall be made electronically in accordance with the specifications in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.

Contingent upon availability and approval of an electronic document repository by the Executive Director, Certificate of Verification documents that are registered and retained by a HERS provider data registry shall also be automatically transmitted by the data registry, to an electronic document repository for retention in accordance with the specifications in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.

- C. **Availability.** For all buildings, a copy of the registered Certificate(s) of Verification shall be posted, or made available with the building permit(s) issued for the building, or made available for viewing on an approved data registry, and shall be made available to the enforcement agency for all applicable inspections. If construction on any portion of the building subject to Part 6 will be impossible to inspect because of subsequent construction, the enforcement agency may require the Certificate(s) of Verification to be posted upon completion of that portion. A copy of the registered Certificate(s) of Verification shall be included with the documentation the builder provides to the building owner at occupancy as specified in Section 10-103(b).

**EXCEPTION to Section 10-103(a):** Enforcing agencies may exempt nonresidential buildings that have no more than 1,000 square feet of conditioned floor area in the entire building and an occupant load of 49 persons

or less from the documentation requirements of Section 10-103(a), provided a statement of compliance with Part 6 is submitted and signed by a licensed engineer or the licensed architect with chief responsibility for the design.

**(b) Compliance, Operating, Maintenance, and Ventilation Information to be provided by Builder.**

**1. Compliance information.**

- A. For low-rise residential buildings, at final inspection, the enforcement agency shall require the builder to leave in the building, copies of the completed, signed, and submitted compliance documents for the building owner at occupancy. For low-rise residential buildings, such information shall, at a minimum, include copies of all Certificate of Compliance, Certificate of Installation, and Certificate of Verification documentation submitted. These documents shall be in paper or electronic format and shall conform to the applicable requirements of Section 10-103(a).
- B. For nonresidential buildings, high-rise residential buildings and hotels and motels, at final inspection, the enforcement agency shall require the builder to leave in the building, copies of the completed, signed, and submitted compliance documents for the building owner at occupancy. For nonresidential buildings, high-rise residential buildings and hotels and motels, such information shall include copies of all Certificate of Compliance, Certificate of Installation, Certificate of Acceptance and Certificate of Verification documentation submitted. These documents shall be in paper or electronic format and shall conform to the applicable requirements of Section 10-103(a).

- 2. Operating information.** At final inspection, the enforcement agency shall require the builder to leave in the building, for the building owner at occupancy, operating information for all applicable features, materials, components, and mechanical devices installed in the building. Operating information shall include instructions on how to operate the features, materials, components, and mechanical devices correctly and efficiently. The instructions shall be consistent with specifications set forth by the Executive Director. For low-rise residential buildings, such information shall be contained in a folder or manual which provides all information specified in Section 10-103(b). This operating information shall be in paper or electronic format.

For dwelling units, buildings or tenant spaces that are not individually owned and operated, or are centrally operated, such information shall be provided to the person(s) responsible for operating the feature, material, component or mechanical device installed in the building. This operating information shall be in paper or electronic format.

- 3. Maintenance information.** At final inspection, the enforcement agency shall require the builder to leave in the building, for the building owner at occupancy, maintenance information for all features, materials, components, and manufactured devices that require routine maintenance for efficient operation. Required routine maintenance actions shall be clearly stated and incorporated on a readily accessible label. The label may be limited to identifying, by title and/or publication number, the operation and maintenance manual for that particular model and type of feature, material, component or manufactured device. For low-rise residential buildings, this information shall include a schedule of all interior luminaires and lamps installed to comply with Section 150.0(k).

For dwelling units, buildings or tenant spaces that are not individually owned and operated, or are centrally operated, such information shall be provided to the person(s) responsible for maintaining the feature, material, component or mechanical device installed in the building. This information shall be in paper or electronic format.

- 4. Ventilation information.** For low-rise residential buildings, the enforcement agency shall require the builder to leave in the building, for the building owner at occupancy, a description of the quantities of outdoor air that the ventilation system(s) are designed to provide to the building's conditioned space, and instructions for proper operation and maintenance of the ventilation system. For buildings or tenant spaces that are not individually owned and operated, or are centrally operated, such information shall be provided to the person(s) responsible for operating and maintaining the feature, material, component or mechanical ventilation device installed in the building. This information shall be in paper or electronic format.

For nonresidential buildings, high-rise residential buildings and hotels and motels, the enforcement agency shall require the builder to provide the building owner at occupancy a description of the quantities of outdoor and recirculated air that the ventilation systems are designed to provide to each area. For buildings or tenant spaces that are not individually owned and operated, or are centrally operated, such information

shall be provided to the person(s) responsible for operating and maintaining the feature, material, component or mechanical device installed in the building. This information shall be in paper or electronic format.

- (c) **Equipment Information to be Provided by Manufacturer or Supplier.** The manufacturer or supplier of any manufactured device shall, upon request, provide to building designers and installers information about the device. The information shall include the efficiency (and other characteristics regulated by Part 6). This information shall be in paper or electronic format.
- (d) **Enforcement Agency Requirements.**
1. **Permits.** An enforcement agency shall not issue a building permit for any construction unless the enforcement agency determines in writing that the construction is designed to comply with the requirements of Part 6 that are in effect on the date the building permit was applied for. The enforcement agency determination shall confirm that the documentation requirements of Sections 10-103(a)1 and 10-103(a)2 have been met.

If a building permit has been previously issued, there has been no construction under the permit, and the permit has expired, the enforcement agency shall not issue a new permit unless the enforcement agency determines in writing that the construction is designed to comply with the requirements of Part 6 in effect on the date the new permit is applied for. The enforcement agency determination shall confirm that the documentation requirements of Sections 10-103(a)1 and 10-103(a)2 have been met.

“Determines in writing” includes, but is not limited to, approval of a building permit with a stamp normally used by the enforcement agency.

2. **Inspection.** The enforcement agency shall inspect newly constructed buildings and additions, and alterations to existing buildings to determine whether the construction or installation is consistent with the agency's approved plans and specifications, and complies with Part 6. Final certificate of occupancy shall not be issued until such consistency and compliance is verified. For Occupancy Group R-3, final inspection shall not be complete until such consistency and compliance is verified.

Such verification shall include determination that:

- A. All installed features, materials, components or manufactured devices, regulated by the Appliance Efficiency Regulations or Part 6 are indicated, when applicable, on the Certificate(s) of Installation, Certificate(s) of Acceptance and Certificate(s) of Verification, and are consistent with such features, materials, components or manufactured devices given in the plans and specifications and the Certificate(s) of Compliance approved by the local enforcement agency.
- B. All required Certificates of Installation are posted, or made available with the building permit(s) issued for the building, or made available for viewing on an approved data registry, and are made available to the enforcement agency for all applicable inspections, and that all required Certificates of Installation conform to the specifications of Section 10-103(a)3.
- C. All required Certificates of Acceptance are posted, or made available with the building permit(s) issued for the building, or made available for viewing on an approved data registry, and are made available to the enforcement agency for all applicable inspections, and that all required Certificates of Acceptance conform to the specifications of Section 10-103(a)4.
- D. All required Certificates of Verification are posted, or made available with the building permit(s) issued for the building, or made available for viewing on an approved data registry, and are made available to the enforcement agency for all applicable inspections, and that all required Certificates of Verification conform to the specifications of Section 10-103(a)5.

**NOTE:** Authority: Section 25402, 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Section 25402, Public Resources Code.

---

## 10-103.1 – NONRESIDENTIAL LIGHTING CONTROLS ACCEPTANCE TEST TRAINING AND CERTIFICATION

- (a) **Scope.** The requirements of this section apply to Acceptance Test Technicians (ATTs), Acceptance Test Employers (ATEs), and Acceptance Test Technician Certification Providers (ATTCPs) that perform work relating to the acceptance testing of nonresidential lighting systems and controls.
- (b) **Industry Certification Threshold.** ATT and ATE certification requirements shall take effect when the Energy Commission finds that each of the following conditions are met. Until such time that Section 10-103.1(b)1 and 10-103.1(b)2 are met, or if, subsequent to being met, they cease to be maintained, Field Technicians may complete acceptance testing as specified in Part 6, Section 130.4 without meeting the certification requirements specified in Part 1, Section 10-103.1.
1. **Number of Certified ATTs.** There shall be no less than 300 ATTs certified to perform the lighting acceptance tests in Building Energy Efficiency Standards, Section 130.4. The number of certified ATTs shall be submitted to the Energy Commission in the annual reports prepared by ATTCPs, as specified in Section 10-103.1(d)1.
  2. **Industry Coverage by ATTCPs.** ATTCPs approved by the Energy Commission, in their entirety, shall provide reasonable access to certification to the following industry groups: electrical contractors, certified general electricians, licensed architects, professional engineers, controls installation and startup contractors and certified commissioning professionals who have verifiable training, experience and expertise in lighting controls and electrical systems. The Energy Commission will determine whether reasonable access to certification is provided by considering factors such as certification costs commensurate with the complexity of the training being provided, certification marketing materials, prequalification criteria, class location and availability, and curriculum.
- (c) **Qualifications and Approval of ATTCPs.** ATTCPs shall submit a written application to the Energy Commission with a summary and the related background documents to explain how the following criteria and procedures have been met:
1. **Organizational Structure.** ATTCPs shall provide written explanations of the organization type, by-laws, and ownership structure. ATTCPs shall explain in writing how their certification program meets the qualification requirements of Title 24, Part 1, Section 10-103.1(c). ATTCPs shall explain in their application to the Energy Commission their organizational structure and their procedures for independent oversight, quality assurance, supervision and support of the acceptance test training and certification processes.
  2. **Certification of ATEs.** The ATTCPs shall provide written explanations of their certification and oversight of ATEs. This explanation shall document how the ATTCP ensures that ATEs are providing quality control and appropriate supervision and support for their ATTs.
    - A. **Recertification.** The ATTCP shall recertify all ATEs prior to the implementation of each adopted update to the Building Energy Efficiency Standards as these updates affect the acceptance test requirements. Recertification requirements and procedures shall only apply to those specific elements that are new or modified in future updates to Building Energy Efficiency Standards.
  3. **Training and Certification Procedures.** ATTCPs shall include with their application a complete copy of all training and testing procedures, manuals, handbooks and materials. ATTCPs shall explain in writing how their training and certification procedures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - A. **Training Scope.** The scope of the training shall include both hands-on experience and theoretical training to certify competency in the technologies and skills necessary to perform the acceptance tests.
    - B. **ATT Training.**
      - i. **Curricula.** ATTCP training curricula for ATTs shall include, but not be limited to, the analysis, theory, and practical application of the following:

- a. Lamp and ballast systems;
  - b. Line voltage switching controls;
  - c. Low voltage switching controls;
  - d. Dimming controls;
  - e. Occupancy sensors;
  - f. Photosensors;
  - g. Demand responsive signal inputs to lighting control systems;
  - h. Building Energy Efficiency Standards required lighting control systems;
  - i. Building Energy Efficiency Standards required lighting control system-specific analytical/problem solving skills;
  - j. Integration of mechanical and electrical systems for Building Energy Efficiency Standards required lighting control installation and commissioning;
  - k. Safety procedures for low-voltage retrofits (<50 volts) to control line voltage systems (120 to 480 volts);
  - l. Accurate and effective tuning, calibration, and programming of Building Energy Efficiency Standards required lighting control systems;
  - m. Measurement of illuminance according to the Illuminating Engineering Society's measurement procedures as provided in the IES Lighting Handbook, 10<sup>th</sup> Edition, 2011;
  - n. Building Energy Efficiency Standards lighting controls acceptance testing procedures; and
  - o. Building Energy Efficiency Standards acceptance testing compliance documentation for lighting controls.
- ii. **Hands-on training.** The ATTCP shall describe in its application the design and technical specifications of the laboratory boards, equipment and other elements that will be used to meet the hands-on requirements of the training and certification. iii. **Prequalification.** Participation in the certification program shall be limited to persons who have at least three years of professional experience and expertise in lighting controls and electrical systems as determined by the Lighting Controls ATTCPs.
- NOTE:** ATTCPs may specify additional qualifications for participation in their programs, such as limiting participation to persons that are not currently listed as “decertified” by another ATTCP.
- iv. **Instructor to Trainee Ratio.** The ATTCP shall document in its application to the Energy Commission why its instructor to trainee ratio is sufficient to ensure the integrity and efficacy of the curriculum and program based on industry standards and other relevant information.
  - v. **Tests.** The ATTCP shall describe the written and practical tests used to demonstrate each certification applicant's competence in all specified subjects. The ATTCPs shall retain all results of these tests for five years from the date of the test.
  - vi. **Recertification.** The ATTCP shall recertify all ATTs prior to the implementation of each adopted update to the Building Energy Efficiency Standards when these updates affect the acceptance test requirements. Recertification requirements and procedures shall only apply to those specific elements that are new or modified in future updates to Building Energy Efficiency Standards. The ATTCP shall develop recertification training curricula for ATTs consistent with training requirements in Sections 10-103.1(c)3A and 10-103.1(c)3B, and shall submit the proposed recertification training curricula to the Energy Commission for review and approval in the update report required under Section 10-103.1(d)2.

- C. **ATE Training.** Training for ATEs shall consist of a single class or webinar consisting of at least four hours of instruction that covers the scope and process of the acceptance tests in Building Energy Efficiency Standards, Section 130.4.
- D. **Complaint Procedures.** The ATTCP shall describe in its applications to the Energy Commission procedures for accepting and addressing complaints regarding the performance of any ATT or ATE certified by the ATTCP, and explain how building departments and the public will be notified of these proceedings.
- E. **Decertification Procedures.** The ATTCP shall describe in its applications to the Energy Commission procedures for revoking their certification of ATTs and ATEs based upon poor quality or ineffective work, failure to perform acceptance tests, falsification of documents, failure to comply with the documentation requirements of these regulations or other specified actions that justify decertification. The ATTCP shall also describe its general procedures for decertified ATTs or ATEs seeking to regain their certification status, including eligibility requirements for recertification (if any).
- F. **Quality Assurance and Accountability.** The ATTCP shall describe in its application to the Energy Commission its procedures for conducting quality assurance and accountability activities, including but not limited to the following:
- i. The ATTCP shall include quality assurance and accountability measures, including but not limited to independent oversight of the certification materials, processes and procedures, visits to building sites where certified technicians are completing acceptance tests, certification process evaluations, building department surveys to determine acceptance testing effectiveness, and expert review of the training curricula developed for Building Energy Efficiency Standards, Section 130.4.
  - ii. The ATTCP shall review a random sample of no less than 1 percent of each ATT's completed compliance forms, and shall perform randomly selected on-site audits of no less than 1 percent of each ATT's completed acceptance tests. Independent oversight may be demonstrated by accreditation under the ISO/IEC 17024 standard.
- G. **Certification Identification Number and Verification of ATT and ATE Certification Status.** The ATTCP shall describe in its application to the Energy Commission its procedures for recording, tracking, and communicating certification status, including but not limited to the following:
- i. Upon certification of an ATT or ATE, the ATTCP shall issue a unique certification identification number to the ATT or ATE.
  - ii. The ATTCP shall maintain an accurate public record of the certification status for all ATTs and ATEs that the ATTCP has certified, including any ATTs or ATEs who have been decertified as specified in Section 10-103.1(c)3E.
  - iii. The ATTCP shall provide verification of current ATT certification status upon request to authorized document Registration Provider personnel or enforcement agency personnel to determine the ATT's eligibility to sign Certificate of Acceptance documentation according to all applicable requirements in Sections 10-103.1, 10-102, 10-103(a)4, and the Reference Joint Appendix JA7.
- (d) **Requirements for ATTCPs to Provide Regular Reports.** The ATTCP shall provide the following regular reports to the Energy Commission:
1. **Annual Report.** The ATTCP shall provide an annual report to the Energy Commission that includes the following:
    - A. A summary of the certification services provided over the reporting period, including the total number of Acceptance Test Technicians and Employers certified by the ATTCP during the reporting period and to date.
    - B. A summary of all actions taken against any ATT or ATE as a result of the complaint or quality assurance procedures described by the ATTCP as required under Section 10-103.1(c)(3)(D) and 10-103.1(c)(3)(F).

- C. A summary of the quality assurance and accountability activities conducted over the reporting period, including the compliance forms reviewed and the on-site audits performed as required under Section 10-103.1(c)3F(ii) during the reporting period and to date.
  - D. A summary of the number and type of acceptance tests performed in each local jurisdiction over the reporting period and to date.
  - E. A signed certification to the Energy Commission that the ATTCP continues to meet the requirements of Section 10-103.1.
2. **Update Report.** The ATTCP shall have no less than six months following the adoption of an update to the Building Energy Efficiency Standards to prepare an Update Report. The ATTCP shall submit an Update Report to the Energy Commission no less than six months prior to the effective date of any newly adopted update to the Building Energy Efficiency Standards. The ATTCP shall report to the Energy Commission what application amendments are proposed, to address changes to the Building Energy Efficiency Standards or to ensure training is reflective of the variety of lighting controls that are currently encountered in the field. All required update reports shall contain a signed certification that the ATTCP continues to meet the requirements of Section 10-103.1. Update reports shall be approved through the Amendment Process provided under Section 10-103.1(f).

All required reports shall contain a signed certification that the ATTCP has met all requirements for this program.

- (e) **Application Review and Determination.** The Energy Commission shall review ATTCP applications according to the criteria and procedures in Section 10-103.1(c) to determine if such providers meet the specified requirements for providing acceptance testing certification services.
- 1. Energy Commission staff will review and validate all information received on ATTCP applications, and determine whether the application is complete and contains sufficient information to be evaluated by staff. Complete applications shall be evaluated by staff based on their contents.
  - 2. The Executive Director may require that the applicant provide additional information as required by staff to fully evaluate the ATTCP application.
  - 3. The Executive Director shall provide a copy of the staff evaluation to interested persons and provide a reasonable opportunity for public comment.
  - 4. The Executive Director shall issue a written recommendation that the Energy Commission designate the applicant as an authorized ATTCP or deny the application.
  - 5. The Energy Commission shall make a final decision on the application at a publicly noticed hearing.

(f) **Amendment Process.**

The ATTCP may amend a submitted or approved application, as follows:

1. **Amendment Scope.**

- A. **Nonsubstantive Changes.** A nonsubstantive change is a change that does not substantively alter the requirements of the application materials for the ATTCP, ATT, or ATE. For amendments making only nonsubstantive changes, the ATTCP shall submit the following:
  - i. A letter describing the change to the Energy Commission as an addendum to the application;
  - ii. A replacement copy of the affected sections of the ATTCP application with the changes incorporated; and
  - iii. A copy of the affected sections of the ATTCP application showing the changes in underline and strikeout format.
- B. **Substantive Changes.** A substantive change is a change that substantively alters the requirements of the application materials for the ATTCP, ATT, or ATE. For amendments making any substantive changes, the ATTCP shall submit the following:
  - i. A document describing the scope of the change to the application, the reason for the change and the potential impact to the ATTCP, ATT, and ATE as an addendum to the application;

- ii. A replacement copy of the affected sections of the ATTCP application with the changes incorporated; and
  - iii. A copy of the affected sections of the ATTCP application showing the changes in underline and strikeout format.
2. **Amendment Review.** Amendments submitted prior to approval of an ATTCP application shall be included in the application's Application Review and Determination process specified in Section 10-103.1(e).

Amendments submitted after approval of an ATTCP's application that contain only nonsubstantive changes shall be reviewed by the Executive Director for consistency with Section 10-103.1. Amendments determined to be consistent with this Section shall be incorporated into the approval as errata.

Amendments submitted after approval of an ATTCP's application that contain any substantive changes shall be subject to the Application Review and Determination process specified in Section 10-103.1(e). If the Energy Commission finds that the amended application does not meet the requirements of Section 10-103.1, then the ATTCP shall either abide by the terms of their previously approved application or have their approval suspended.

(g) **Review by the Energy Commission.**

If the Energy Commission determines there is a violation of these regulations or that an ATTCP is no longer providing adequate certification services, the Energy Commission may revoke the authorization of the ATTCP pursuant to Section 1230 et seq. of Title 20 of the California Code of Regulations.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25402, 25402.1, 25213, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8 and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

## 10-103.2 – NONRESIDENTIAL MECHANICAL ACCEPTANCE TEST TRAINING AND CERTIFICATION

- (a) **Scope.** The requirements of this section apply to Acceptance Test Technicians (ATTs), Acceptance Test Employers (ATEs), and Acceptance Test Technician Certification Providers (ATTCPs) that perform work relating to the acceptance testing of nonresidential mechanical systems and controls.
- (b) **Industry Certification Threshold.** ATT and ATE certification requirements shall take effect when the Energy Commission finds that each of the following conditions are met. Until such time that Sections 10-103.2(b)1 and 10-103.2(b)2 are met, or if, subsequent to being met, they cease to be maintained, Field Technicians may complete acceptance testing as specified in Section 120.5 without completing certification requirements specified in Part 1, Section 10-103.2.
1. **Number of Certified ATTs.**
- A. There shall be no less than 300 ATTs certified to perform the complete set of mechanical acceptance tests in Building Energy Efficiency Standards, Section 120.5, except as provided in Subsection 10-103.2(b)1.B, below. The number of certified ATTs shall be submitted to the Energy Commission in the annual reports prepared by ATTCPs, as specified in Section 10-103.2(d)1.
  - B. If there are less than 300 ATTs certified to perform all of the acceptance tests in Building Energy Efficiency Standards, Section 120.5, then there shall be at least 300 ATTs certified to complete the following tests:
    - i. NA7.5.1 Outdoor Air Ventilation Systems
    - ii. NA7.5.2 Constant Volume, Single Zone Unitary Air Conditioners and Heat Pumps
    - iii. NA7.5.4 Air Economizer Controls
    - iv. NA7.5.5 Demand Control Ventilation Systems
    - v. NA 7.5.6 Supply Fan Variable Flow Controls
    - vi. NA7.5.7, NA7.5.9 Hydronic System Variable Flow Controls
    - vii. NA7.5.10 Automatic Demand Shed Controls

2. **Industry Coverage by ATTCPs.** ATTCPs approved by the Energy Commission, in their entirety, provide reasonable access to certification to the following industry groups: Professional engineers, licensed architects, HVAC installers, mechanical contractors, Testing and Balancing (TAB) certified technicians, controls installation and startup contractors and certified commissioning professionals who have verifiable training, experience and expertise in HVAC systems. The Energy Commission will determine reasonable access by considering factors such as certification costs commensurate with the complexity of the training being provided, certification marketing materials, prequalification criteria, class availability and curriculum.
- (c) **Qualifications and Approval of ATTCPs.** ATTCPs shall submit a written application to the Energy Commission with a summary and the necessary background documents to explain how the following criteria and procedures have been met:
1. **Organizational Structure.** ATTCPs shall provide written explanations of the organization type, by-laws, and ownership structure. ATTCPs shall explain in writing how their certification program meets the qualifications of Building Energy Efficiency Standards, Section 10-103.2(c). ATTCPs shall explain in their application to the Energy Commission their organizational structure and their procedures for independent oversight, quality assurance, supervision and support of the acceptance test training and certification processes.
  2. **Certification of ATEs.** The ATTCPs shall provide written explanations of their certification and oversight of ATEs. This explanation shall document how the ATTCP ensures that ATEs are providing quality control and appropriate supervision and support for their ATTs.
    - A. **Recertification.** The ATTCP shall recertify all ATEs prior to the implementation of each adopted update to the Building Energy Efficiency Standards as these updates affect the acceptance test requirements. Recertification requirements and procedures shall only apply to those specific elements that are new or modified in future updates to Building Energy Efficiency Standards.
  3. **Requirements for Applicant ATTCPs to Document Training and Certification Procedures.** ATTCPs shall include with their application a complete copy of all training and testing procedures, manuals, handbooks and materials. ATTCPs shall explain in writing how their training and certification procedures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - A. **Training Scope.** The scope of the training shall include both hands-on experience and theoretical training to certify competency in the technologies and skills necessary to perform the acceptance tests.
    - B. **ATT Training.**
      - i. **Curricula.** ATTCP training curricula for ATTs shall include, but not be limited to, the analysis, theory, and practical application of the following:
        - a. Constant volume system controls;
        - b. Variable volume system controls;
        - c. Air-side economizers;
        - d. Air distribution system leakage;
        - e. Demand controlled ventilation with CO<sub>2</sub> sensors;
        - f. Demand controlled ventilation with occupancy sensors;
        - g. Automatic demand shed controls;
        - h. Hydronic valve leakage;
        - i. Hydronic system variable flow controls;
        - j. Supply air temperature reset controls;
        - k. Condenser water temperature reset controls;
        - l. Outdoor air ventilation systems;
        - m. Supply fan variable flow controls;

- n. Boiler and chiller isolation controls;
  - o. Fault detection and diagnostics for packaged direct-expansion units;
  - p. Automatic fault detection and diagnostics for air handling units and zone terminal units;
  - q. Distributed energy storage direct-expansion air conditioning systems;
  - r. Thermal energy storage systems;
  - s. Building Energy Efficiency Standards mechanical acceptance testing procedures; and
  - t. Building Energy Efficiency Standards acceptance testing compliance documentation for mechanical systems.
- ii. **Hands-on training.** The ATTCP shall describe in its application the design and technical specifications of the laboratory boards, equipment and other elements that will be used to meet the hands-on requirements of the training and certification.
  - iii. **Prequalification.** Participation in the certification program shall be limited to persons who have at least three years of professional experience and expertise in mechanical controls and systems as determined by the Mechanical ATTCPs.  
**NOTE:** ATTCPs may specify additional qualifications for participation in their programs, such as limiting participation to persons that are not currently listed as “decertified” by another ATTCP.
  - iv. **Instructor to Trainee Ratio.** The ATTCP shall document in its application to the Energy Commission why its instructor to trainee ratio is sufficient to ensure the integrity and efficacy of the curriculum and program based on industry standards and other relevant information.
  - v. **Tests.** The ATTCP shall describe the written and practical tests used to demonstrate each certification applicant’s competence in all specified subjects. The ATTCPs shall retain all results of these tests for five years from the date of the test.
  - vi. **Recertification.** The ATTCP shall recertify all ATTs prior to the implementation of each adopted update to the Building Energy Efficiency Standards as these updates affect the acceptance test requirements. Recertification requirements and procedures shall only apply to those specific elements that are new or modified in future updates to Building Energy Efficiency Standards.
- C. **ATE Training.** Training for ATEs shall consist of a single class or webinar consisting of at least four hours of instruction that covers the scope and process of the acceptance tests in Building Energy Efficiency Standards, Section 120.5.
  - D. **Complaint Procedures.** Procedures described in writing for notifying building departments and the public that the ATTCP will accept complaints regarding the performance of any certified ATT or ATE, and procedures for how the ATTCP will address these complaints.
  - E. **Decertification Procedures.** The ATTCP shall describe in its application to the Energy Commission procedures for revoking their certification of ATTs and ATEs based upon poor quality or ineffective work, failure to perform acceptance tests, falsification of documents, failure to comply with the documentation requirements of these regulations or other specified actions that justify decertification. The ATTCP shall also describe its general procedures for decertified ATTs or ATEs seeking to regain their certification status, including eligibility requirements for recertification (if any).
  - F. **Quality Assurance and Accountability.** The ATTCP shall describe in its applications to the Energy Commission procedures for conducting quality assurance and accountability activities, including but not limited to the following:
    - i. The ATTCPs shall include quality assurance and accountability measures, including but not limited to independent oversight of the certification materials, processes and procedures, visits to building sites where certified technicians are completing acceptance tests, certification process evaluations, building department surveys to determine acceptance testing

effectiveness, and expert review of the training curricula developed for Building Energy Efficiency Standards, Section 120.5.

- ii. The ATTCP shall review a random sample of no less than 1 percent of each ATT's completed compliance forms. The ATTCP shall also randomly select and shadow audit no less than 1 percent of each ATE's overseen projects, following the assigned ATT and observing their performance on the job site. Independent oversight may be demonstrated by accreditation under the ISO/IEC 17024 standard.

**G. Certification Identification Number and Verification of ATT and ATE Certification Status.**

The ATTCP shall describe in its applications to the Energy Commission procedures for recording, tracking, and communicating certification status, including but not limited to the following:

- i. Upon certification of an ATT or ATE, the ATTCP shall issue a unique certification identification number to the ATT or ATE.
- ii. The ATTCP shall maintain an accurate public record of the certification status for all ATTs and ATEs that the ATTCP has certified, including any ATTs or ATEs who have been decertified as specified in 10-103.2(c)3E.
- iii. The ATTCP shall provide verification of current ATT certification status upon request to authorized document Registration Provider personnel or enforcement agency personnel to determine the ATT's eligibility to sign Certificate of Acceptance documentation according to all applicable requirements in Sections 10-103.2, 10-102, 10-103(a)4, and Reference Joint Appendix JA7.

**(d) Requirements for ATTCPs to Provide Regular Reports.** The ATTCP shall provide the following regular reports to the Energy Commission:

1. **Annual Report.** The ATTCP shall provide an annual report to the Energy Commission that includes the following:
  - A. A summary of the certification services provided over the reporting period, including the total number of Acceptance Test Technicians and Employers certified by the agency during the reporting period and to date.
  - B. A summary of all actions taken against any ATT or ATE as a result of the complaint or quality assurance procedures described by the ATTCP as required under Section 10-103.2(c)(3)(D) and 10-103.2(c)(3)(F).
  - C. A summary of the quality assurance and accountability activities conducted over the reporting period, including the compliance forms reviewed and the on-site audits performed as required under Section 10-103.2(c)3F(ii) during the reporting period and to date.
  - D. A summary of the number and type of acceptance tests performed in each local jurisdiction over the reporting period and to date.
  - E. A signed certification to the Energy Commission that the ATTCP continues to meet the requirements of Section 10-103.2.
2. **Update Report.** The ATTCP shall have no less than six months following the adoption of an update to the Building Energy Efficiency Standards to prepare an Update Report. The ATTCP shall submit an Update Report to the Energy Commission no less than six months prior to the effective date of any newly adopted update to the Building Energy Efficiency Standards. The ATTCP shall report to the Energy Commission what application amendments are proposed to address changes to the Building Energy Efficiency Standards or to ensure training is reflective of the variety of mechanical equipment and systems currently encountered in the field. All required update reports shall contain a signed certification that the ATTCP continues to meet all the requirements of Section 10-103.2(c). Update reports shall be approved through the Amendment Process provided under Section 10-103.2(f).

All required reports shall contain a signed certification that the ATTCP has met all requirements for this program.

- (e) Application Review and Determination.** The Energy Commission shall review ATTCP applications according to the criteria and procedures in Section 10-103.2(c) to determine if such providers meet the specified requirements for providing acceptance testing certification services.

1. Energy Commission staff will review and validate all information received on ATTCP applications, and determine whether the application is complete and contains sufficient information to be evaluated by staff. Complete applications shall be evaluated by staff based on their contents.
2. The Executive Director may require that the applicant provide additional information as required by staff to fully evaluate the ATTCP application.
3. The Executive Director shall provide a copy of the staff evaluation to interested persons and provide an opportunity for public comment.
4. The Executive Director shall issue a written recommendation that the Energy Commission designate the applicant as an authorized ATTCP or deny the Provider application.
5. The Energy Commission shall make a final decision on the application at a publicly noticed hearing.

(f) **Amendment Process.**

The ATTCP may amend a submitted or approved application, as follows:

1. **Amendment Scope.**

A. **Nonsubstantive Changes.** A nonsubstantive change is a change that does not substantively alter the requirements of the application materials for the ATTCP, ATT, or ATE. For amendments making only nonsubstantive changes, the ATTCP shall submit the following:

- i. a letter describing the change to the Energy Commission as an addendum to the application;
- ii. A replacement copy of the affected sections of the ATTCP application with the changes incorporated; and
- iii. A copy of the affected sections of the ATTCP application showing the changes in underline and strikeout format.

B. **Substantive Changes.** A substantive change is a change that substantively alters the requirements of the application materials for the ATTCP, ATT, or ATE. For amendments making any substantive changes, the ATTCP shall submit the following:

- i. A document describing the scope of the change to the application, the reason for the change and the potential impact to the ATTCP, ATT, and ATE as an addendum to the application;
- ii. A replacement copy of the affected sections of the ATTCP application with the changes incorporated; and
- iii. A copy of the affected sections of the ATTCP application showing the changes in underline and strikeout format.

2. **Amendment Review.** Amendments submitted prior to approval of an ATTCP application shall be included in the application's Application Review and Determination process specified in Section 10-103.2(e).

Amendments submitted after approval of an ATTCP's application that contain only nonsubstantive changes shall be reviewed by the Executive Director for consistency with Section 10-103.2. Amendments determined to be consistent with this Section shall be incorporated into the approval as errata.

Amendments submitted after approval of an ATTCP's application that contain any substantive changes shall be subject to the Application Review and Determination process specified in Section 10-103.2(e). If the Energy Commission finds that the amended application does not meet the requirements of Section 10-103.2, then the ATTCP shall either abide by the terms of their previously approved application or have their approval suspended.

(g) **Review by the Energy Commission.**

If the Energy Commission determines there is a violation of these regulations or that an ATTCP is no longer providing adequate certification services, the Energy Commission may revoke the authorization of the ATTCP pursuant to Section 1230 et. seq. of Title 20 of the California Code of Regulations.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25402, 25402.1, 25213, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8 and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

## 10-104 – EXCEPTIONAL DESIGNS

**NOTE:** See Section 10-109 for approval of calculation methods and Alternative Component Packages.

- (a) **Requirements.** If a building permit applicant proposes to use a performance compliance approach, and the building designs cannot be adequately modeled by an approved calculation method, an applicant shall be granted a building permit if the Commission finds:
1. That the design cannot be adequately modeled with an approved calculation method;
  2. Using an alternative evaluation technique, that the design complies with Part 6; and
  3. That the enforcement agency has determined that the design complies with all other legal requirements.
- (b) **Applications.** The applicant shall submit four copies of a signed application with the following materials to the Executive Director:
1. A copy of the plans and documentation required by Section 10-103(a)2;
  2. A statement explaining why meeting the energy budget cannot be demonstrated using an approved calculation method;
  3. Documentation from the enforcement agency stating that:
    - A. Meeting the energy budget requirements cannot be demonstrated using an approved calculation method; and
    - B. The design complies with all other legal requirements; and
  4. A detailed evaluation of the energy consumption of the proposed building and the building's materials, components, and manufactured devices proposed to be installed to meet the requirements of Part 6 using an alternative evaluation technique. The evaluation shall include a copy of the technique, instructions for its use, a list of all input data, and all other information required to replicate the results.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8 and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

**10-105 – ENFORCEMENT BY THE COMMISSION**

- (a) **Where there is No Local Enforcement Agency.** Before new construction may begin in an area where there is no local enforcement agency, the Executive Director shall determine in writing that the building design conforms to the requirements of Part 6. The person proposing to construct the building shall submit the information described in Sections 10-103(a)1 and 10-103(a)2 to the Executive Director when such a determination is sought.
- (b) **Where building construction is under the jurisdiction of a State agency.** Pursuant to Public Resources Code Section 25402.1(g)(5), no construction of any State building shall commence until the Department of General Services or the State agency that otherwise has jurisdiction over the property determines that the construction is designed to comply with the requirements of Part 6, and confirms that the documentation requirements of Sections 10-103(a)1 and 10-103(a)2 have been met and that the plans indicate the features and performance specifications needed to comply with Part 6. The responsible state agency shall notify the Commission's Executive Director of its determination.
- (c) **Where the Enforcement Agency Fails to Enforce.** If an enforcement agency fails to enforce the requirements of this article or of Part 6 the Commission, after furnishing 10 days written notice, may condition building permit issuance on submission of the information described in Sections 10-103(a)1 and 10-103(a)2 to the Executive Director and on his or her written determination that proposed construction conforms to the requirements of Part 6.

**NOTE:** Authority: Code Section 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Section 25402.1, Public Resources Code.

---

## 10-106 – LOCALLY ADOPTED ENERGY STANDARDS

- (a) **Requirements.** Local governmental agencies may adopt and enforce energy standards for newly constructed buildings, additions, alterations, and repairs to existing buildings provided the following two requirements are met prior to any enforcement of the standards:
1. A determination that the standards are cost effective is adopted by the local agency at a public meeting and subsequently filed with the Energy Commission; and
  2. The Energy Commission finds that the standards will require buildings to be designed to consume less energy than permitted by Title 24, Part 6.
- (b) **Documentation Application.** Local governmental agencies wishing to enforce energy standards subject to Section 10-106(a) shall submit an application with the following materials to the Executive Director:
1. The proposed energy standards;
  2. The local governmental agency's findings and supporting analyses on the energy savings and cost effectiveness of the proposed energy standards;
  3. A statement or finding by the local governmental agency that the proposed energy standards will require buildings to be designed to consume less energy than permitted by Part 6; and
  4. Any findings, determinations, declarations or reports, including any negative declaration or environmental impact report, required pursuant to the California Environmental Quality Act, Pub. Resources Code Section 21000 et seq.

**NOTE:** Authority: Section 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25402.1, 21080.4, 21153, Public Resources Code.

**10-107 – INTERPRETATIONS**

- (a) The Commission may make a written determination as to the applicability or interpretation of any provision of this article or of Part 6 upon written application, if a dispute concerning a provision arises between an applicant for a building permit and the enforcement agency, and the dispute has been heard by the local board of permit appeals or other highest local review body. Notice of any such appeal, including a summary of the dispute and the section of the regulations involved, shall if possible be sent to the Commission by the enforcing agency 15 days before the appeal is heard, and the result of the appeal shall be sent to the Commission within 15 days after the decision is made. Either party to the dispute may apply for a determination but shall concurrently deliver a copy of the application to the other party. The determinations are binding on the parties.
- (b) The Executive Director may, upon request, give written advice concerning the meaning of any provision of this article or of Part 6. Such advice is not binding on any person.

**NOTE:** Authority: Section 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Section 25218.5 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code.

---

## 10-108 – EXEMPTION

- (a) **Requirements.** The Commission may exempt any building from any provision of Part 6 if it finds that:
1. Substantial funds had been expended in good faith on planning, designing, architecture, or engineering of the building before the adoption date of the provision; and
  2. Compliance with the requirements of the provision would be impossible without both substantial delays and substantial increases in costs of construction above the reasonable costs of the measures required to comply with the provision.
- (b) **Application.** The applicant shall submit four copies of a signed application with the following materials to the Executive Director:
1. A summary of the claimant's contracts for the project;
  2. A summary of internal financial reports on the project;
  3. Dated schedules of design activities; and
  4. A progress report on project completion.

**NOTE:** Authority: Section 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Section 25402.1, Public Resources Code.

---

## **10-109 – COMPLIANCE SOFTWARE, ALTERNATIVE COMPONENT PACKAGES, EXCEPTIONAL METHODS, DATA REGISTRIES AND RELATED EXTERNAL DIGITAL DATA SOURCES, ALTERNATIVE RESIDENTIAL FIELD VERIFICATION PROTOCOLS, ELECTRONIC DOCUMENT REPOSITORIES, AND PHOTOVOLTAIC SYSTEM REQUIREMENT DETERMINATIONS**

- (a) **Compliance software, alternative component packages, exceptional methods, data registries and related data input software, alternative residential field verification protocols or electronic document repositories** must be approved by the Commission in order to be used to demonstrate compliance with Part 6.
- (b) **Application.** Applications for approval of compliance software, alternative component packages, exceptional methods, data registries and related data input software, and alternative field verification protocols must be made as follows:
1. An applicant shall submit four copies of a signed application form specified by the Executive Director.
  2. The application shall include the following materials:
    - A. A description of the functional or analytical capabilities of the compliance software, alternative component package, calculation method, exceptional method, data registry or related data input software, and alternative field verification protocol; and
    - B. A demonstration that the criteria in Section 10-109 are met; and
    - C. An initial fee of one thousand dollars (\$1,000). The total fee shall cover the Commission's cost of reviewing and analyzing the application. Within 75 days of receipt of an application, the Commission will provide an estimate of the total maximum cost to review and analyze the application and make a determination as to the completeness of the application. Consideration of the application will be delayed until the applicant submits requested additional information. After the Commission determines the total cost, if the cost exceeds the initial fee, the Commission shall assess an additional fee to cover the total cost. If the actual cost is less than the initial, or any estimated maximum, fee the Commission shall refund the difference to the applicant.
- (c) **Compliance Software.**
1. **Public Domain Computer Programs.** In addition to the public domain computer programs that are approved pursuant to Public Resources Code Section 25402.1, the Commission may, upon written application or its own motion, approve additional public domain computer programs that may be used to demonstrate that proposed building designs meet energy budgets.
    - A. The Commission shall ensure that users' manuals or guides for each approved program are available.
    - B. The Commission shall approve a program only if it predicts energy consumption substantially equivalent to that predicted by the above-referenced public domain computer program, when it models building designs or features.
  2. **Alternative Calculation Methods (All Occupancies).** The Commission may approve non-public domain computer programs as an alternative calculation method that building permit applicants may then use to demonstrate compliance with the performance standards (energy budgets) in Part 6. In addition to the application requirements of subdivision (b) above, an application for approval of compliance software must include documentation demonstrating that the compliance software meets the requirements, specifications, and criteria set forth in the Residential or Nonresidential ACM Approval Manual, as appropriate.

**NOTE:** Copies of the ACM Approval Manuals may be obtained from the Commission's website at: [www.energy.ca.gov/title24](http://www.energy.ca.gov/title24).

- (d) **Alternative Component Packages.** In addition to the application requirements of subdivision (b) above, an application for approval of an alternative component package must include documentation that demonstrates that the package:
1. Will meet the applicable energy budgets; and
  2. Is likely to apply to a significant percentage of newly constructed buildings or to a significant segment of the building construction and design community.
- (e) **Exceptional Methods.** The Commission may approve an exceptional method that analyzes a design, material, or device that cannot be adequately modeled using the public domain computer programs. Applications for approval of exceptional methods shall include all information needed to verify the method's accuracy.
- (f) **Commission Action.** The Commission may take the following actions on an application submitted pursuant to this section:
1. Approve the application unconditionally;
  2. Restrict approval to specified occupancies, designs, materials, or devices; or
  3. Reject the application.
- (g) **Resubmittal.** An applicant may resubmit a rejected application or may request modification of a restricted approval. Such application shall include the information required pursuant to this section, and, if applicable, shall indicate how the proposed compliance software, alternative component package, exceptional method, data registry or related data input software has been changed to enhance its accuracy or capabilities.
1. **Modification.** Whenever an approved compliance software, alternative component package, exceptional method, data registry or related data input software is changed in any way, it must be resubmitted under this section for approval.
  2. The Commission may modify or withdraw approval of compliance software, an alternative component package, an exceptional method, or a data registry or related data input software based on its approval of other programs, methods, registries or data input software that are more suitable.
- (h) **In addition to** the procedures and protocols identified in the Alternative Calculation Method Approval Manuals and the Reference Appendices, the Commission may authorize alternative procedures or protocols that demonstrate compliance with Part 6.
- (i) **Data Registries And Related External Digital Data Sources, And Electronic Document Repositories.**
1. **Data Registries and Related External Digital Data Sources.**

Data registries and related external digital data sources shall conform to the requirements specified in Reference Joint Appendix JA7.

    - A. The Commission may approve residential data registries that provide for registration, when required by Part 6 of all residential compliance documentation and the nonresidential Certificates of Verification.
    - B. The Commission may approve nonresidential data registries that provide for registration, when required by Part 6 of all nonresidential compliance documentation. However, nonresidential data registries may not provide for registration of nonresidential Certificates of Verification.
    - C. The Commission may approve external digital data sources used for data input to various data registries for registering, when required by Part 6 residential or nonresidential compliance documentation.
  2. **Electronic Document Repositories.**
    - A. The Commission may approve electronic document repositories that retain for the Commission electronic compliance documentation generated by residential and nonresidential data registries when registration is required by Part 6.
- (j) **Alternative Residential Field Verification Protocols.**

Alternative residential field verification protocols shall comply with the application requirements of Section 10-109(b) and any applicable requirements of Reference Residential Appendices RA1.

**(k) Photovoltaic System Requirement Determinations**

The Commission may, upon written application or its own motion, determine that the photovoltaic requirements in Section 150.1(c)14 shall not apply, if the Commission finds that the implementation of public agency rules regarding utility system costs and revenue requirements, compensation for customer-owned generation, or interconnection fees, causes the Commission's cost effectiveness conclusions, made pursuant to Public Resources Code 25402(b)(3), to not hold for particular buildings.

Applications shall include full information regarding the differences between public agency rules and Energy Commission cost effectiveness determinations, including all information requested by the Commission to enable full review of the application. Applications shall also include specific recommended limitations to the scope of the determination that is requested, and specific eligibility criteria to determine what buildings would qualify for the determination. Applications from public agencies shall be submitted to the Energy Commission only after public review within the jurisdiction of the public entity or service area of the utility.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, 25605, 25910, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

**10-110 – PROCEDURES FOR CONSIDERATION OF APPLICATIONS UNDER SECTIONS 10-104, 10-106, 10-108, AND 10-109**

- (a) Within 75 days of receipt of an application, the Executive Director shall determine if the application is complete with all the supporting information required pursuant to Sections 10-104, 10-106, 10-108, or 10-109 (the complete application package).
- (b) Once the application is determined to be complete, the Executive Director shall make the complete application package available to interested parties for review and comment. Comments from interested parties must be submitted within a time period set by the Executive Director, which shall be no less than 15 and no greater than 60 days after the complete application package is made available.
- (c) Within 75 days of the date the application is determined to be complete, the Executive Director may request any additional information needed to evaluate the application. Consideration of the application will be delayed until the applicant submits the requested additional information.
- (d) Within 75 days of the date the application is determined to be complete, the Executive Director may convene a workshop to gather additional information from the applicant and other interested parties. Interested parties will have 15 days after the workshop to submit additional comments or information regarding the application.
- (e) Within 90 days of the date the application is determined to be complete, or within 30 days after receipt of complete additional information requested under Section 10-110(c), or within 60 days after the receipt of additional information submitted by interested parties under Section 10-110(d), whichever is later, the Executive Director shall submit to the Commission a written recommendation on the application.
- (f) The complete application package, any additional information considered by the Executive Director, and the Executive Director's recommendation shall be placed on the consent calendar and considered at the next business meeting after submission of the recommendation. The matter may be removed from the consent calendar at the request of any person.
- (g) The Executive Director may charge a fee to recover the costs of processing and reviewing applications, with the exception of Section 10-106 applications.
- (h) All applicants have the burden of proof to establish that their applications should be granted.

**NOTE:** Authority: Section 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Section 25402.1, Public Resources Code.

---

## 10-111 – CERTIFICATION AND LABELING OF FENESTRATION PRODUCT AND EXTERIOR DOOR U-FACTORS, SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENTS, VISIBLE TRANSMITTANCE AND AIR LEAKAGE

This section establishes rules for implementing labeling and certification requirements relating to U-factors, solar heat gain coefficients (SHGCs), visible transmittance (VT) and air leakage for fenestration products and exterior doors under Section 110.6(a) of Part 6. This section also provides for designation of the National Fenestration Rating Council (NFRC) as the supervisory entity responsible for administering the state's certification program for fenestration products and exterior doors, provided NFRC meets specified criteria.

### (a) Labeling Requirements.

#### 1. Temporary labels.

- A. Every manufactured fenestration product and exterior door shall have attached to it a clearly visible temporary label that lists the U-factor, the solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) and Visible Transmittance (VT) and that certifies compliance with the air leakage requirements of Section 110.6(a)1. Temporary labels for manufactured fenestration products and exterior doors are to incorporate the values determined by Section 10-111(a)1B and shall comply with the labeling requirements of NFRC 700. No other values for U-factor, SHGC, VT and Air Leakage are allowed on the temporary label attached to the manufactured fenestration product or exterior door. Component Modeling Approach (CMA) and site-built fenestration products shall have an NFRC label certificate that lists the U-factor, the Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC), and the Visible Transmittance (VT) and shall comply with the labeling requirements of NFRC 705 for the Computer Modeling Approach or NFRC 700 for site-built fenestration products.
- B. U-factor, SHGC, VT and Air Leakage shall be determined by either:
  - i. Fenestration products and exterior doors rated and certified using NFRC 100, NFRC 200, NFRC 202 NFRC 203 or NFRC 400 Rating Procedures. The manufacturer shall stipulate that the ratings were determined in accordance with applicable NFRC procedures. For manufactured fenestration products and exterior doors, a temporary label certificate approved by the supervisory entity (NFRC) meets the requirements of this section. For component modeling and site-built fenestration products, a label certificate approved by the supervisory entity (NFRC) meets the requirements of this section.
  - ii. For manufactured or site-built fenestration products and exterior doors not rated by NFRC, a temporary label with the words "CEC Default U-factor," followed by the appropriate default U-factor specified in Section 110.6(a)2 and with the words "CEC Default SHGC," followed by the appropriate default SHGC specified in Section 110.6(a)3 and with the words "CEC Default VT," followed by the appropriate VT as specified in Section 110.6(a)4, meets the requirements of this Subsection B.
- C. Temporary labels shall also certify that the manufactured fenestration product or exterior door complies with the air leakage requirements of Section 110.6(a)1 of the Standards.

2. **Permanent labels.** Rated products shall have a permanent label consistent with their rating and certification that is either a stand-alone label, an extension or tab of an existing permanent certification label being used by the manufacturer/responsible party, or a series of marks or etchings on the product. The permanent label coupled with observable product characteristics, shall be usable to trace the product to certification information on file with the supervisory entity or to a directory of certified products, published by the supervisory entity. For CMA and site-built fenestration products, a label certificate approved by the supervisory entity meets the requirements of this section.

**EXCEPTION to Section 10-111(a):** Field-fabricated fenestration products.

### (b) Certification Requirements.

1. **Certification to default ratings.** The manufacturer shall certify on the Default Label that the product's U-factor, SHGC and VT meets the default criteria in Sections 110.6(a)2, 110.6(a)3 and 110.6(a)4; and

- A. A temporary label, affixed to the product, that meets the requirements of Section 10-111(a)1B meets this requirement.
  - B. If the product claims the default U-factor for a thermal-break product, the manufacturer shall also certify on the label that the product meets the thermal-break product criteria, specified on the default table, on which the default value is based. Placing the terms “Meets Thermal-Break Default Criteria” on the default temporary label or default label certificate meets this requirement.
2. **Certification to NFRC rating procedure.** If a product’s U-factor, SHGC or VT is based on the NFRC Rating Procedure, the U-factor, SHGC or VT shall be certified by the manufacturer according to the procedures of an independent certifying organization approved by the Commission.
- A. A temporary label, affixed to the product or label certificate for CMA and site-built fenestration, meeting the requirements of Section 10-111(a) certified by the independent certifying organization complies with this requirement.
  - B. An “independent certifying organization approved by the Commission” means any organization authorized by the supervisory entity to certify U-factor ratings, Solar Heat Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance ratings in accordance with the NFRC Rating Procedure. If the Commission designates the NFRC as the supervisory entity, any independent certification and inspection agency (IA) licensed by NFRC shall be deemed to be an “independent certifying organization approved by the Commission.”
  - C. The “supervisory entity” means the NFRC, except as provided in Section 10-111(c)1.

**EXCEPTION to Section 10-111(b):** Field-fabricated fenestration products.

- (c) **Designation of Supervisory Entity.** The NFRC shall be the supervisory entity to administer the certification program relating to U-factors, SHGC, and VT ratings for fenestration products and exterior doors, provided the Commission determines that the NFRC meets the criteria in Section 10-111(d).
  - 1. The Commission may consider designating a supervisory entity other than NFRC only if the Commission determines that the NFRC cannot meet the criteria in Section 10-111(d). Such other supervisory entity shall meet the criteria in Section 10-111(d) prior to being designated.
  - 2. The Commission shall periodically review, at least annually, the structure and operations of the supervisory entity to ensure continuing compliance with the criteria in Section 10-111(d).
- (d) **Criteria for Supervisory Entity.**
  - 1. Membership in the entity shall be open on a nondiscriminatory basis to any person or organization that has an interest in uniform thermal performance ratings for fenestration products and exterior doors, including, but not limited to, members of the fenestration industry, glazing infill industry, building industry, design professionals, specifiers, utilities, government agencies, and public interest organizations. The membership shall be composed of a broad cross section of those interested in uniform thermal performance ratings for fenestration products.
  - 2. The governing body of the entity shall reflect a reasonable cross-section of the interests represented by the membership.
  - 3. The entity shall maintain a program of oversight of product manufacturers, laboratories, and independent certifying organizations that ensures uniform application of the NFRC Rating Procedures, labeling and certification, and such other rating procedures for other factors affecting energy performance as the NFRC and the Commission may adopt.
  - 4. The entity shall require manufacturers and independent certifying organizations within its program to use laboratories accredited by the supervisory entity to perform simulations and tests under the NFRC Rating Procedure or by an NFRC Approved Calculation Entity (ACE) under the Component Modeling Approach (CMA)- Product Certification Program (PCP).
  - 5. The entity shall maintain appropriate guidelines for testing and simulation laboratories, manufacturers, and certifying agencies, including requirements for adequate:
    - A. Possession and calibration of equipment;
    - B. Education, competence, and training of personnel;

- C. Quality control;
  - D. Record keeping and reporting;
  - E. Periodic review (including, but not limited to, blind testing by laboratories; inspections of products; and inspections of laboratories, manufacturing facilities, and certifying agencies);
  - F. Challenges to certified ratings; and
  - G. Guidelines to maintain the integrity of the program, including, but not limited to, provisions to avoid conflicts of interest within the rating and certification process.
6. The entity shall be a nonprofit organization and shall maintain reasonable, nondiscriminatory fee schedules for the services it provides and shall make its fee schedules, the financial information on which fees are based, and financial statements available to its members for inspection.
  7. The entity shall provide hearing processes that give laboratories, manufacturers, and certifying agencies a fair review of decisions that adversely affect them.
  8. The entity shall maintain a certification policy committee whose procedures are designed to avoid conflicts of interest in deciding appeals, resolving disputes, and setting policy for the certifying organizations within its program.
  9. The entity shall publish at least annually a directory of products certified and decertified within its program.
  10. The entity itself shall be free from conflict-of-interest ties or to undue influence from any particular manufacturing interest(s), testing or simulation lab(s), or independent certifying organization(s).
  11. The entity shall provide or authorize the use of labels and label certificates for Component Modeling Approach and site-built fenestration products that can be used to meet the requirements of Sections 110.6(a)2, 110.6(a)3 and 110.6(a)4, and this section.
  12. The entity's certification program shall allow for multiple participants in each aspect of the program to provide for competition between manufacturers, testing labs, simulation labs, and independent certifying organizations.
- (e) **Certification for Other Factors.** Nothing in this section shall preclude any entity, whether associated with a U-factor, SHGC or VT certification program or not, from providing certification services relating to factors other than U-factors, SHGCs and VTs for fenestration products and exterior doors.

**NOTE:** Authority: Section 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

## 10-112 – CRITERIA FOR DEFAULT TABLES

- (a) The Commission shall maintain tables of default U-factors and SHGCs for use as an alternative to U-factors and SHGCs derived based on the NFRC Rating Procedure. The default values shall meet the following criteria:
  - 1. The values shall be derived from simulations of products using the same computer simulation program(s) used in the NFRC Rating Procedure.
  - 2. The default values shall be set so that they do not provide to any significant number of products a lower U-factor or SHGC than those products would obtain if they were rated using the full NFRC Rating Procedure.
- (b) The Commission shall periodically review and revise the default tables as necessary to ensure that the criteria are met.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.8, 25910 and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

## 10-113 – RATING AND LABELING OF ROOFING PRODUCT REFLECTANCE AND EMITTANCE

This section establishes rules for implementing labeling and rating requirements relating to reflectance and emittance for roofing products for showing compliance with Sections 140.1, 140.2, 140.3(a)1, 141.0(b)2B, 150.1(c)11, 150.2(b)1H, and 150.2(b)2 of Title 24, California Code of Regulations, Part 6. This section also provides for designation of the Cool Roof Rating Council (CRRC) as the supervisory entity responsible for administering the state's rating program for roofing products, provided CRRC meets specified criteria.

(a) **Labeling Requirements.**

Every roofing product installed in construction to take compliance credit or meet the prescriptive requirements for reflectance and emittance under Sections 140.1, 140.2, 140.3(a)1, 141.0(b)2B, 150.1(c)11, 150.2(b)1H or 150.2(b)2 shall have a clearly visible packaging label that lists the emittance and the initial and 3-year aged solar reflectance, or a CRRC Rapid Rating for solar reflectance, tested in accordance with CRRC-1.

Packaging for liquid-applied roof coatings shall state the product meets the requirements specified in Section 110.8(i)4.

(b) **Certification Requirements.**

Every roofing product installed in construction to take compliance credit or meet the prescriptive requirements for reflectance and emittance under Sections 140.1, 140.2, 140.3(a)1, 141.0(b)2B, 150.1(c)11, 150.2(b)1H or 150.2(b)2 shall be rated by CRRC or another supervisory entity approved by the Commission pursuant to Section 10-113(c).

(c) **Designation of Supervisory Entity.** The CRRC shall be the supervisory entity to administer the rating program relating to reflectance and emittance ratings for roofing products, provided the Commission determines that the CRRC meets the criteria in Section 10-113(d).

1. The Commission may consider designating a supervisory entity other than CRRC if the Commission determines that the CRRC is not meeting the criteria in Section 10-113(d). Such other supervisory entity shall meet the criteria in Section 10-113(d) prior to being designated.
2. The Commission shall periodically review, at least annually, the structure and operations of the supervisory entity to ensure continuing compliance with the criteria in Section 10-113(d). The supervisory entity shall provide an annual report to the Commission explaining all of the measures it has taken to comply with the criteria in Section 10-113(d).

(d) **Criteria for Supervisory Entity.**

1. Membership in the entity shall be open on a nondiscriminatory basis to any person or organization that has an interest in uniform performance ratings for roofing products, including, but not limited to, members of the roofing industry, building industry, design professionals, specifiers, utilities, government agencies, and public interest organizations. The membership shall be composed of a broad cross section of those interested in uniform thermal performance ratings for roofing products.
2. The governing body of the entity shall reflect a reasonable cross-section of the interests represented by the membership.
3. The entity shall maintain a program of oversight of product manufacturers, laboratories, and independent certifying organizations that ensures uniform application of the CRRC testing and rating procedures, labeling and rating, and such other rating procedures for other factors that improves the accuracy of properties of roofing products affecting energy performance as the CRRC and the Commission may adopt.
4. The entity shall require manufacturers and independent certifying organizations within its program to use only laboratories accredited by the supervisory entity to perform tests in accordance with CRRC-1.
5. The entity shall maintain appropriate guidelines for testing laboratories and manufacturers, including requirements for adequate:
  - A. Possession and calibration of equipment;

- B. Education, competence, and training of personnel;
  - C. Quality control;
  - D. Record keeping and reporting;
  - E. Periodic review (including but not limited to, blind testing by laboratories; inspections of products; inspections of laboratories, and manufacturing facilities);
  - F. Challenges to ratings; and
  - G. Guidelines to maintain the integrity of the program, including, but not limited to, provisions to avoid conflicts of interest within the rating process.
6. The entity shall be a nonprofit organization and shall maintain reasonable, nondiscriminatory fee schedules for the services it provides, and shall make its fee schedules, the financial information on which fees are based, and financial statements available to its members for inspection.
  7. The entity shall provide hearing processes that give laboratories, manufacturers and certifying agencies a fair review of decisions that adversely affect them.
  8. The entity shall maintain a policy committee or similar body, whose procedures are designed to avoid conflicts of interest in deciding appeals, resolving disputes and setting policy for the certifying organizations in its program.
  9. The entity shall publish at least annually a directory of rated products and products that are no longer rated by the CRRC.
  10. The entity itself shall be free from conflict-of-interest ties or to undue influence from any particular roofing product manufacturing interest(s), testing or independent certifying organization(s).
  11. The entity shall provide or authorize the use of labels that can be used to meet the requirements for showing compliance with the requirements of Sections 140.1, 140.2, 140.3(a)1, 141.0(b)2B, 150.1(c)11, 150.2(b)1H and 150.2(b)2, and this section.
  12. The entity's rating program shall allow for multiple participants in each aspect of the program to provide for competition between manufacturers and between testing labs.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.8, 25910 and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

## 10-114 – DETERMINATION OF OUTDOOR LIGHTING ZONES AND ADMINISTRATIVE RULES FOR USE

This section establishes rules for implementing outdoor lighting zones to show compliance with Section 140.7 of Title 24, California Code of Regulations, Part 6.

- (a) **Lighting Zones.** Exterior lighting allowances in California vary by Lighting Zones (LZ).
- (b) **Lighting Zone Characteristics.** TABLE 10-114-A specifies the relative ambient illumination level and the statewide default location for each lighting zone.
- (c) **Amending the Lighting Zone Designation.** A local jurisdiction may officially adopt changes to the lighting zone designation of an area by following a public process that allows for formal public notification, review, and comment about the proposed change. The local jurisdiction may determine areas where Lighting Zone 4 is applicable and may increase or decrease the lighting zones for areas that are in State Default Lighting Zones 1, 2 and 3, as specified in TABLE 10-114-A.
- (d) **Commission Notification, Amended Outdoor Lighting Zone Designation.** Local jurisdictions who adopt changes to the State Default Lighting Zones shall notify the Commission by providing the following materials to the Executive Director:
  - 1. A detailed specification of the boundaries of the adopted Lighting Zones, consisting of the county name, the city name if any, the zip code(s) of the re designated areas, and a description of the physical boundaries within each zip code;
  - 2. A description of the public process that was conducted in adopting the Lighting Zone changes; and
  - 3. An explanation of how the adopted Lighting Zone changes are consistent with the specifications of Section 10-114.
- (e) The Commission shall have the authority to not allow Lighting Zone changes which the Commission finds to be inconsistent with the specifications of Section 10-114.

**TABLE 10-114-A LIGHTING ZONE CHARACTERISTICS AND RULES FOR AMENDMENTS BY LOCAL JURISDICTIONS**

<b>Zone</b>	<b>Ambient Illumination</b>	<b>State wide Default Location</b>	<b>Moving Up to Higher Zones</b>	<b>Moving Down to Lower Zones</b>
LZ0	Very Low	Undeveloped areas of government designated parks, recreation areas, and wildlife preserves.	Undeveloped areas of government designated parks, recreation areas, and wildlife preserves can be designated as LZ1 or LZ2 if they are contained within such a zone.	Not applicable
LZ1	Low	Developed portion of government designated parks, recreation areas, and wildlife preserves. Those that are wholly contained within a higher lighting zone may be considered by the local government as part of that lighting zone.	Developed portion of a government designated park, recreation area, or wildlife preserve, can be designated as LZ2 or LZ3 if they are contained within such a zone.	Not applicable.
LZ2	Moderate	Rural areas, as defined by the 2010 U.S. Census.	Special districts within a default LZ2 zone may be designated as LZ3 or LZ4 by a local jurisdiction. Examples include special commercial districts or areas with special security considerations located within a rural area.	Special districts and government designated parks within a default LZ2 zone maybe designated as LZ1 by the local jurisdiction for lower illumination standards, without any size limits.
LZ3	Moderately High	Urban areas, as defined by the 2010 U.S. Census.	Special districts within a default LZ3 may be designated as a LZ4 by local jurisdiction for high intensity nighttime use, such as entertainment or commercial districts or areas with special security considerations requiring very high light levels.	Special districts and government designated parks within a default LZ3 zone may be designated as LZ1 or LZ2 by the local jurisdiction, without any size limits.
LZ4	High	None.	Not applicable.	Not applicable.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

## 10-115 – COMMUNITY SHARED SOLAR ELECTRIC GENERATION SYSTEM OR COMMUNITY SHARED BATTERY STORAGE SYSTEM COMPLIANCE OPTION FOR ONSITE SOLAR ELECTRIC GENERATION OR BATTERY STORAGE REQUIREMENTS

- (a) **Community Shared Solar Electric Generation System or Battery Storage System Offset.** A community shared solar system, other community shared renewable system, community shared battery storage system, or combination of the aforementioned systems (hereinafter referred to as a community shared solar or battery storage system) may be approved by the Commission as a compliance option to partially or totally meet the onsite solar electric generation system and/or battery storage system that is otherwise required by Section 150.1(b)1 of Title 24, California Code of Regulations, Part 6. To be approved the community shared solar electric generation or community shared battery storage system shall meet the following requirements.
1. **Enforcement Agency.** The community shared solar electric generation system and/or community shared battery storage system shall be installed and available for enforcement agency site inspection, no later than the point in time the enforcement agency must physically verify compliance of the building, which would otherwise be required to have an onsite solar electric generation and/or battery storage system, and shall not cause delay in the process of enforcement agency review and approval of that building. The enforcement agency shall have jurisdiction and facilitated access to make site inspections. All documentation for the community solar electric generation system and/or community solar battery storage system that is required to demonstrate compliance for the building shall be completed prior to building permit application.
  2. **Energy Performance.** The community shared solar electric generation system and/or community shared battery storage system shall be demonstrated to provide the same or better energy performance equal to the partial or total compliance with the energy performance of the onsite solar electric generation and/or battery storage system that would otherwise have been required for the building, computed by compliance software certified for use by the Commission.
  3. **Dedicated Building Energy Savings Benefits.** The community shared solar electric generation system and/or community shared battery storage system shall provide energy saving benefits directly to the building that would otherwise have been required to have an onsite solar electric generation system and/or battery storage system. The energy savings benefits shall be allocated from the total resource of the community shared solar electric generation system and/or community shared battery storage system in a manner demonstrated to be equivalent to the reductions in energy consumption that would have resulted from the onsite solar electric generation system and/or battery storage system that is otherwise required by Section 150.1 of Title 24. The energy savings benefits allocated to the building shall be in the form of:
    - A. actual reductions in the energy consumption of the dedicated building;
    - B. utility energy reduction credits that will result in virtual reductions in the building's energy consumption that is subject to energy bill payments; or
    - C. payments to the building that will have an equivalent effect as energy bill reductions.The reduction in the building's energy bill resulting from A, B, or C above shall be greater than the added cost to the building resulting from the building's share in the community shared solar or battery system.
  4. **Durability.** The community shared solar electric generation system and/or community shared battery storage system shall be designed and installed to provide the energy savings benefits to the dedicated building specified in Section 10-115(a)3 for a period of no less than twenty (20) years.
  5. **Additionality.** The community shared solar electric generation system and/or community shared battery storage system shall provide the energy savings benefits specified in Section 10-115(a)3 exclusively to the dedicated building. Those energy savings benefits shall in no way be attributed to other purposes or transferred to other buildings or property.
  6. **Accountability and Recordkeeping.** Applicants for Commission approval of community shared solar electric generation systems and/or community shared battery storage systems shall be accountable to all

parties who relied on these systems for partial or total compliance with the onsite solar electric generation and/or battery storage system that would otherwise be required, including but not limited to builders of the buildings, owners of the buildings, enforcement agencies, and the Commission. Recordkeeping regarding compliance with the requirements in Sections 10-115(a)1-6 shall be maintained over the period of time specified in Section 10-115(a)4 for each building for which the community shared solar electric generation or battery storage system is used to demonstrate partial or total compliance. Access to these records shall be provided to any entity approved by the Commission for auditing compliance with these requirements.

- (b) **Application for Commission Approval.** Any entity may apply to the Commission for approval to administer a community shared solar electric generation or community shared battery storage system to provide partial or total compliance with the onsite solar electric generation system and/or battery storage system required by Section 150.1 of Title 24, California Code of Regulations, Part 6. The application shall demonstrate to the Commission's satisfaction that each of the requirements specified in Section 10-115(a)1-6 will be met and shall include detailed explanation of the actions that will be taken by the applicant to ensure that each requirement is met over the period of time specified in Section 10-115(a)4 for each building for which a partial or total offset is used to demonstrate compliance. All applicants have the burden of proof to establish that their application should be granted. The Commission shall have the authority to not approve any application that the Commission determines to be inconsistent with the requirements of Section 10-115.
- (c) **Commission Approval.** Community shared solar electric generation systems and/or community shared battery storage systems, which demonstrate to the Commission's satisfaction that all of the requirements specified in Section 10-115 will be met, shall be approved.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402, 25402.1, and 25605, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.8, 25605, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

(This page intentionally left blank.)

**EFFICIENCY STANDARDS  
CALIFORNIA CODE OF REGULATIONS  
TITLE 24, PART 6**

(This page intentionally left blank)

# SUBCHAPTER 1

## ALL OCCUPANCIES—GENERAL PROVISIONS

---

### SECTION 100.0 – SCOPE

(a) **Buildings Covered.** The provisions of Part 6 apply to all buildings:

1. That are of Occupancy Group A, B, E, F, H, I, M, R, S, or U; and
2. For which an application for a building permit or renewal of an existing permit is filed (or is required by law to be filed) on or after the effective date of the provisions, or which are constructed by a governmental agency; and
3. That are:
  - A. Unconditioned; or
  - B. Indirectly or directly conditioned, or process spaces.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 100.0(a):** Qualified historic buildings, as regulated by the California Historic Building Code (Title 24, Part 8). Lighting in qualified historic buildings shall comply with the applicable requirements in Section 140.6(a)3Q.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 100.0(a):** Building departments, at their discretion, may exempt temporary buildings, temporary outdoor lighting or temporary lighting in an unconditioned building, or structures erected in response to a natural disaster. Temporary buildings or structures shall be completely removed upon the expiration of the time limit stated in the permit.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 100.0(a):** Buildings in Occupancy Group I-3 and I-4.

(b) **Parts of Buildings Regulated.** The provisions of Part 6 apply to the building envelope, space-conditioning systems, water-heating systems, pool and spas, solar ready buildings, indoor lighting systems of buildings, outdoor lighting systems, electrical power distribution systems, and signs located either indoors or outdoors, in buildings that are:

1. Covered by Section 100.0(a); and
2. Set forth in TABLE 100.0-A.

(c) **Habitable Stories.**

1. All conditioned space in a story shall comply with Part 6 whether or not the story is a habitable space.
2. All unconditioned space in a story shall comply with the lighting requirements of Part 6 whether or not the story is a habitable space.

(d) **Outdoor Lighting and Indoor and Outdoor Signs.** The provisions of Part 6 apply to outdoor lighting systems and to signs located either indoors or outdoors as set forth in TABLE 100.0-A.

(e) **Sections Applicable to Particular Buildings.** TABLE 100.0-A and this subsection list the provisions of Part 6 that are applicable to different types of buildings covered by Section 100.0(a).

1. **All buildings.** Sections 100.0 through 110.12 apply to all buildings.

**EXCEPTION to Section 100.0(e)1:** Spaces or requirements not listed in TABLE 100.0-A.

2. **Newly constructed buildings.**

A. **All newly constructed buildings.** Sections 110.0 through 110.12 apply to all newly constructed buildings within the scope of Section 100.0(a). In addition, newly constructed buildings shall meet the requirements of Subsections B, C, D or E, as applicable.

- B. Nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel buildings** that are mechanically heated or mechanically cooled.
- i. Sections applicable. Sections 120.0 through 140.8 apply to newly constructed nonresidential buildings, high-rise residential buildings, and hotels/motels that are mechanically heated or mechanically cooled.
  - ii. Compliance approaches. In order to comply with Part 6 newly constructed nonresidential buildings, high-rise residential buildings, and hotels/motels that are mechanically heated or mechanically cooled must meet the requirements of:
    - a. Mandatory measures: The applicable provisions of Sections 120.0 through 130.5; and
    - b. Either:
      - (i) Performance approach: Section 140.1; or
      - (ii) Prescriptive approach: Sections 140.2 through 140.9.
- C. Unconditioned nonresidential buildings and process space.** Sections 110.9, 110.10, 120.6, 130.0 through 130.5, 140.3(c), 140.6, 140.7, and 140.8 apply to all newly constructed unconditioned buildings and 140.1, and 140.3(c), for process spaces within the scope of Section 100.0(a).
- D. Low-rise residential buildings.**
- i. Sections applicable. Sections 150.0 through 150.1 apply to newly constructed low-rise residential buildings.
  - ii. Compliance approaches. In order to comply with Part 6 newly constructed low-rise residential buildings must meet the requirements of:
    - a. Mandatory measures: The applicable provisions of Sections 110.0 through 110.10, and 150.0; and
    - b. Either:
      - (i) Performance approach: Section 150.1(a) and (b); or
      - (ii) Prescriptive approach: Section 150.1(a) and (c).

**EXCEPTION to Section 100.0(e)2Diib:** Seasonally occupied agricultural housing limited by state or federal agency contract to occupancy not more than 180 days in any calendar year.
- E. Covered Processes.**
- i. Sections applicable. Sections 110.2, 120.6 and 140.9 apply to covered processes.
  - ii. Compliance approaches. In order to comply with Part 6 covered processes must meet the requirements of:
    - a. The applicable mandatory measures in Section 120.6; and
    - b. Either:
      - (i) The Performance approach requirements of Section 140.1; or
      - (ii) The Prescriptive approach requirements of Section 140.9.

**Note:** If covered processes do not have prescriptive requirements, then only the applicable mandatory measures in Section 120.6 must be met.

**3. New construction in existing buildings (additions, alterations and repairs).**

- A. Nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel buildings.** Section 141.0 applies to new construction in existing nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel buildings. New construction in existing buildings includes additions, alterations and repairs. Section 141.0 specifies requirements that uniquely apply to additions, alterations or repairs to existing buildings, and specify which requirements in other sections also apply. For alterations that change the occupancy

classification of the building, the requirements specified in Section 141.0 apply to the occupancy after the alterations.

- B. **Low-rise residential buildings.** Section 150.2 applies to new construction in existing low-rise residential buildings. New construction in existing buildings includes additions, alterations and repairs. Section 150.2 specifies requirements that uniquely apply to additions, alterations or repairs to existing buildings, and specify which requirements in other sections also apply. For alterations that change the occupancy classification of the building, the requirements specified in Section 150.2 apply to the occupancy after the alterations.
4. **Installation of insulation in existing buildings.** Section 110.8(d) applies to buildings in which insulation is being installed in existing attics, or on existing water heaters, or existing space conditioning ducts.
  5. **Outdoor Lighting.** Sections 110.9, 130.0, 130.2, 130.4, 140.7, and 150.0 apply to newly constructed outdoor lighting systems, and Section 141.0 applies to outdoor lighting that is either added or altered.
  6. **Signs.** Sections 130.0, 130.3 and 140.8 apply to newly constructed signs located either indoors or outdoors and Section 141.0 applies to sign alterations located either indoors or outdoors.
- (f) **Mixed Occupancy.** When a building is designed and constructed for more than one type of occupancy (residential and nonresidential), the space for each occupancy shall meet the provisions of Part 6 applicable to that occupancy.
- EXCEPTION 1 to Section 100.0(f):** If one occupancy constitutes at least 80 percent of the conditioned floor area of the building, the entire building envelope, HVAC, and water heating may be designed to comply with the provisions of Part 6 applicable to that occupancy, provided that the applicable lighting requirements in Sections 140.6 through 140.8 or 150.0(k) are met for each occupancy and space and mandatory measures in Sections 110.0 through 130.5, and 150.0 are met for each occupancy and space.
- EXCEPTION 2 to Section 100.0(f):** If one occupancy constitutes at least 90 percent of the combined conditioned plus unconditioned floor area of the building, the entire building indoor lighting may be designed to comply with only the lighting provisions of Part 6 applicable to that occupancy.
- (g) **Administrative Requirements.** Administrative requirements relating to permit requirements, enforcement by the Commission, locally adopted energy standards, interpretations, claims of exemption, approved calculation methods, rights of appeal, and certification and labeling requirements of fenestration products and roofing products are specified in California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 1, Sections 10-101 to 10-114.
- (h) **Certification Requirements for Manufactured Equipment, Products, and Devices.** Part 6 limits the installation of manufactured equipment, products, and devices to those that have been certified as specified by sections 110.0 and 110.1. Requirements for manufactured equipment, products, and devices, when not specified in Title 24 Part 6, are specified in California Code of Regulations, Title 20, Sections 1601-1609.

TABLE 100.0-A APPLICATION OF STANDARDS

Occupancies	Application	Mandatory	Prescriptive	Performance	Additions/Alterations
General Provisions for All Buildings		100.0, 100.1, 100.2, 110.0			
Nonresidential, High-Rise Residential, And Hotels/Motels	General	120.0	140.0, 140.2	140.0, 140.1	141.0
	Envelope (conditioned)	110.6, 110.7, 110.8, 120.7	140.3		
	Envelope (unconditioned process spaces)	N.A.	140.3(c)		
	HVAC (conditioned)	110.2, 110.5, 120.1, 120.2, 120.3, 120.4, 120.5, 120.8	140.4		
	Water Heating	110.3, 120.3, 120.8, 120.9	140.5		
	Indoor Lighting (conditioned, process spaces)	110.9, 120.8, 130.0, 130.1, 130.4	140.3(c), 140.6		
	Indoor Lighting (unconditioned and parking garages)	110.9, 120.8, 130.0, 130.1, 130.4	140.3(c), 140.6	N.A.	
	Outdoor Lighting	110.9, 130.0, 130.2, 130.4	140.7		
	Electrical Power Distribution	110.11, 130.5	N.A.		
	Pool and Spa Systems	110.4, 110.5, 150.0(p)	N. A.		141.0
	Solar Ready Buildings	110.10	N.A.		141.0(a)
Covered Processes <sup>1</sup>	Envelope, Ventilation, Process Loads	110.2, 120.6	140.9	140.1	120.6, 140.9, 141.1
Signs	Indoor and Outdoor	110.9, 130.0, 130.3	140.8	N.A.	141.0, 141.0(b)2H
Low-Rise Residential	General	150.0	150.1(a, c)	150.1(a), 150.1(b)	150.2(a), 150.2(b)
	Envelope (conditioned)	110.6, 110.7, 110.8, 150(a), 150.0(b), 150.0(c), 150.0(d), 150.0(e), 150.0(g), 150.0(q)			
	HVAC (conditioned)	110.2, 110.5, 150.0(h), 150.0(i), 150.0(j), 150.0(m), 150.0(o)			
	Water Heating	110.3, 150.0(j, n)			
	Indoor Lighting (conditioned, unconditioned and parking garages)	110.9, 130.0, 150.0(k)			
	Outdoor Lighting	110.9, 130.0, 150.0(k)			
	Pool and Spa Systems	110.4, 150.0(p)	N. A.	N.A.	150.2(a), 150.2(b)
	Solar Ready Buildings	110.10	N. A.	N.A.	N.A.
<sup>1</sup> Nonresidential, high-rise and hotel/motel buildings that contain covered processes may conform to the applicable requirements of both occupancy types listed in this table.					

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code

---

## SECTION 100.1 – DEFINITIONS AND RULES OF CONSTRUCTION

### (a) Rules of Construction.

1. Where the context requires, the singular includes the plural and the plural includes the singular.
2. The use of "and" in a conjunctive provision means that all elements in the provision must be complied with, or must exist to make the provision applicable. Where compliance with one or more elements suffices, or where existence of one or more elements makes the provision applicable, "or" (rather than "and/or") is used.
3. "Shall" is mandatory and "may" is permissive.

(b) **Definitions.** Terms, phrases, words and their derivatives in Part 6 shall be defined as specified in Section 100.1. Terms, phrases, words and their derivatives not found in Section 100.1 shall be defined as specified in the "Definitions" chapters of Title 24, Parts 1 through 5 of the California Code of Regulations. Where terms, phrases, words and their derivatives are not defined in any of the references above, they shall be defined as specified in *Webster's Third New International Dictionary of the English Language, Unabridged* (1961 edition, through the 2002 addenda), unless the context requires otherwise.

**AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/ I.S.2/A440-11** are the American Architectural Manufacturers Association/ Window and Door Manufacturers Association/ Canadian Standards Association document titled "North American Fenestration Standard/Specification for windows, doors, and skylights" (2011)

**ACCA** is the Air Conditioning Contractors of America.

**ACCA MANUAL J** is the Air Conditioning Contractors of America document titled "Manual J - Residential Load Calculation" (ANSI/ACCA 2 Manual J – 2016).

**ACCEPTANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR CODE COMPLIANCE** is a description of test procedures in the Reference Nonresidential Appendices that includes equipment and systems to be tested, functions to be tested, conditions under which the test shall be performed, the scope of the tests, results to be obtained, and measurable criteria for acceptable performance.

**ACCESSIBLE** is having access thereto, but which first may require removal or opening of access panels, doors, or similar obstructions.

**ADDITION** is any change to a building that increases conditioned floor area and conditioned volume. See also "newly conditioned space." Addition is also any change that increases the floor area and volume of an unconditioned building of an occupancy group or type regulated by Part 6. Addition is also any change that increases the illuminated area of an outdoor lighting application regulated by Part 6.

**ADIABATIC PAD** is a material located before the heat transfer surface of an adiabatic condenser, which pre-cools the ambient air by becoming fully wetted during pre-cool mode operation.

**AGRICULTURAL BUILDING** is a structure designed and constructed to house farm implements, hay, grain, poultry, livestock or other horticultural products. It is not a structure that is a place of human habitation, a place of employment where agricultural products are processed, treated or packaged, or a place used by the public.

**AIR BARRIER** is a combination of interconnected materials and assemblies joined and sealed together to provide a continuous barrier to air leakage through the building envelope that separates conditioned from unconditioned space, or that separates adjoining conditioned spaces of different occupancies or uses.

**AIR CONDITIONER** is an appliance that supplies cooled and dehumidified air to a space for the purpose of cooling objects within the space.

**AIR-COOLED AIR CONDITIONER** is an air conditioner using an air-cooled condenser.

**AIR-HANDLING UNIT** or **AIR HANDLER** is a blower or fan that distributes supply air to a room, space, or area.

**AIR FILTER, AIR FILTER EQUIPMENT, or AIR FILTER DEVICE** is air-cleaning equipment used for removing particulate matter from the air.

**AIR FILTER MEDIA** is the part of the air filter equipment which is the actual particulate removing agent.

**AIR-TO-AIR HEAT EXCHANGER** is a device which will reduce the heat losses or gains that occur when a building is mechanically ventilated, by transferring heat between the conditioned air being exhausted and outside air being supplied.

**AIR-SOURCE HEAT PUMP** is an appliance that consists of one or more factory-made assemblies, that includes an indoor conditioning coil, a compressor, and a refrigerant-to-air heat exchanger, and that provides heating and cooling functions.

**ALTERATION** is any change to a building's water-heating system, space-conditioning system, lighting system, electrical power distribution system, or envelope that is not an addition. Alteration is also any change that is regulated by Part 6 to an outdoor lighting system that is not an addition. Alteration is also any change that is regulated by Part 6 to signs located either indoors or outdoors. Alteration is also any change that is regulated by Part 6 to a covered process that is not an addition. (See also "fenestration alteration".)

**ALTERED COMPONENT** is a component that has undergone an alteration.

**ALTERNATIVE CALCULATION METHODS (ACM)** are compliance softwares, or alternative component packages, or exceptional methods approved by the Commission under Section 10-109. ACMs are also referred to as Compliance Software.

**ALTERNATIVE CALCULATION METHODS (ACM) APPROVAL MANUAL** are the documents establishing the requirements for Energy Commission approval of Compliance Software used to demonstrate compliance with the Building Energy Efficiency Standards for Residential and Nonresidential Buildings currently adopted by the Energy Commission.

**ANNUAL FUEL UTILIZATION EFFICIENCY (AFUE)** is a measure of the percentage of heat from the combustion of gas or oil which is transferred to the space being heated during a year, as determined using the applicable test method in the Appliance Efficiency Regulations or Section 110.2.

**ANNUNCIATED** is a type of visual signaling device that indicates the on, off, or other status of a load **ANSI** is the American National Standards Institute.

**ANSI C82.6-2015** is the American National Standards Institute document titled "Ballasts for High-Intensity Discharge Lamps – Methods of Measurement." (ANSI C82.6-2015)

**ANSI/AMCA STANDARD 500-D** is the American National Standards Institute / Air Movement and Control Association document titled "Laboratory Methods of Testing Dampers For Rating". (ANSI/AMCA 500-D-2012)

**ANSI/IES RP-16-17** is the document coauthored by the American National Standards Institute and the Illuminating Engineering Society of North America, Recommended Practice titled "Nomenclature and Definitions for Illuminating Engineering".

**ANSI Z21.10.3** is the American National Standards Institute document titled "Gas Water Heaters - Volume III, Storage Water Heaters With Input Ratings Above 75,000 Btu Per Hour," 2011 (ANSI Z21.10.3-2017/CSA 4.3-2017).

**ANSI Z21.13** is the American National Standards Institute document titled "Gas-Fired Low Pressure Steam and Hot Water Boilers," 2017 (ANSI Z21.13-2017/CSA 4.9-2017).

**ANSI Z21.40.4A** is the American National Standards Institute document titled "Addenda 1 to ANSI Z21.40.4-1996/CGA 2.94-M96, Performance Testing and Rating of Gas-Fired, Air Conditioning and Heat Pump Appliances," 1998 (ANSI Z21.40.4-1998 (R2017)/CGA 2.94A-M98(R2017)).

**ANSI Z21.47** is the American National Standards Institute document titled "Gas-Fired Central Furnaces," 2016 (ANSI Z21.47-2016/CSA 2.3-2016).

**ANSI Z83.8** is the American National Standards Institute document titled "American National Standard/CSA Standard For Gas Unit Heaters, Gas Packaged Heaters, Gas Utility Heaters and Gas-Fired Duct Furnaces," 2016 (ANSI Z83.8 -2016/CSA 2.6-2016).

**ANSI Z9.5** is the American National Standards Institute document titled "Laboratory Ventilation," 2012 (ANSI/ASSE Z9.5-2012).

**APPLIANCE EFFICIENCY REGULATIONS** are the regulations in Title 20, Sections 1601 et seq. of the California Code of Regulations.

**APPROVED CALCULATION METHOD** (See “alternative calculation methods”)

**AHRI** is the Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute.

**AHRI 210/240** is the Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute document titled “Performance Rating of Unitary Air-Conditioning and Air-Source Heat Pump Equipment,” 2008 (ANSI/AHRI Standard 210/240-2008 with Addenda 1 and 2).

**ANSI/AHRI/CSA 310/380** is the Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute document titled “Standard for Packaged Terminal Air-Conditioners and Heat Pumps (CSA-C744-17),” 2004 (ANSI/AHRI/CSA Standard 310/380-2017).

**AHRI 320** is the Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute document titled “Water-Source Heat Pumps,” 1998 (AHRI Standard 320-1998).

**AHRI 325** is the Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute document titled “Ground Water-Source Heat Pumps,” 1998 (ARI Standard 325-1998).

**ANSI/AHRI 340/360** is the Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute document titled “Performance Rating of Commercial and Industrial Unitary Air-Conditioning and Heat Pump Equipment,” 2015 (ANSI/AHRI Standard 340/360-2015).

**ANSI/AHRI 365** is the Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute document titled “Commercial and Industrial Unitary Air-Conditioning Condensing Units,” 2009 (ANSI/AHRI Standard 365 (I-P)-2009).

**ANSI/AHRI 390** is the Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute document titled “Performance Rating of Single Package Vertical Air-Conditioners and Heat Pumps,” 2003 (ANSI/AHRI Standard 390 (I-P)-2003).

**ANSI/AHRI 400** is the Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute document titled “Liquid to Liquid Heat Exchangers,” 2015 (ANSI/AHRI Standard 400 (I-P)-2015).

**ANSI/AHRI 460** is the Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute document titled “Performance Rating of Remote Mechanical-Draft Air-Cooled Refrigerant Condensers,” 2005 (ANSI/AHRI Standard 460-2005).

**AHRI 550/590** is the Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute document titled “Performance Rating of Water Chilling Packages Using the Vapor Compression Cycle,” 2015 (AHRI Standard 550/590-(I-P)-2015) with Addendum 1.

**ANSI/AHRI 560** is the Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute document titled “Absorption Water Chilling and Water Heating Packages,” 2000 (ANSI/AHRI Standard 560-2000).

**AHRI 680** is the Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute document titled “Performance Rating of Residential Air Filter Equipment,” 2017 (AHRI Standard 680-2017).

**AHRI 1230** is the Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute document titled “Performance Rating of Variable Refrigerant Flow (VRF) Multi-Split Air-Conditioning and Heat Pump Equipment,” 2014 (AHRI Standard 1230-2014) with Addendum 1.

**AIR, INFILTRATION** is outdoor air that enters a building or space through openings in the building or space envelope due to negative pressure in the space or building relative to the exterior of the building envelope.

**AIR, MAKEUP** is outdoor air that is intentionally conveyed by openings or ducts into the building from the outside; is supplied to the vicinity of an exhaust hood; and replaces air, vapor and contaminants being exhausted by the exhaust hood. Makeup air is generally filtered and fan-forced, and it may be heated or cooled. Makeup air may be delivered through openings or ducts integral to the exhaust hood.

**AIR, REPLACEMENT** is air that is used to replace air removed from a building through an exhaust system. Replacement air may be derived from one or more of the following: makeup air, portions of supply air, transfer air, or infiltration air.

**AIR, SUPPLY** is air entering a space from an air-conditioning, heating, or ventilating system for the purpose of comfort conditioning. Supply air is generally filtered, fan-forced, and heated, cooled, humidified or dehumidified as necessary to maintain specified temperature and humidity conditions.

**AIR, TRANSFER** is air transferred, whether actively by fans or passively by pressure differentials, from one room to another within a building through openings in the room envelope.

**AIR, AVAILABLE TRANSFER** is that portion of total outdoor ventilation air that is not required to satisfy other exhaust needs or to maintain pressurization of other spaces and that is transferable according to Section 120.1(g).

**ASHRAE** is the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air-conditioning Engineers.

**ASHRAE CLIMATIC DATA FOR REGION X** is the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers document titled "ASHRAE Climatic Data for Region X, Arizona, California, Hawaii and Nevada," Publication SPCDX, 1982 and "Supplement," 1994.

**ASHRAE HANDBOOK, APPLICATIONS VOLUME** is the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers document titled "ASHRAE Handbook: Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning Applications" (2015).

**ASHRAE HANDBOOK, EQUIPMENT VOLUME** is the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers document titled "ASHRAE Handbook: Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning Systems and Equipment" (2016).

**ASHRAE HANDBOOK, FUNDAMENTALS VOLUME** is the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers document titled "ASHRAE Handbook: Fundamentals" (2017).

**ASHRAE STANDARD 52.2** is the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers document titled "Method of Testing General Ventilation Air-Cleaning Devices for Removal Efficiency by Particle Size," 2017 (ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 52.2-2017).

**ASHRAE STANDARD 55** is the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers document titled "Thermal Environmental Conditions for Human Occupancy," 2017 (ASHRAE Standard 55-2017).

**ASHRAE STANDARD 62.1** is the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers document titled "Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality", 2016 (ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.1-2016, including Addenda k).

**ASHRAE STANDARD 62.2** is the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers document titled "Ventilation and Acceptable Indoor Air Quality in Residential Buildings," 2016 (ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.2-2016 including ANSI/ASHRAE Addenda b, d, l, q, and s to ANSI/ASHRAE 62.2-2016 published in the 2017 supplement).

**ASHRAE STANDARD 193** is the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers document titled "Method of Test for Determining the Airtightness of HVAC Equipment," RA2014 (ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 193-RA2014).

**ASME** is the American Society of Mechanical Engineers.

**ASME A17.1/CSA B44** is the American Society of Mechanical Engineers document titled "Handbook on Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators" 2016 (ASME Standard A17.1/CSAB44-2016).

**ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1** is the American Society of Mechanical Engineers document titled "Plumbing Fixture Fittings" 2012 (ASME Standard A112.18.1-2012/CSA B125.1-12).

**ASTM** is the American Society for Testing and Materials International.

**ASTM C55** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document titled "Standard Specification for Concrete Brick," 2017 (ASTM C55-17).

**ASTM C177** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document titled "Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Guarded-Hot-Plate Apparatus," 2013 (ASTM C177-13).

**ASTM C272** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document titled "Standard Test Method for Water Absorption of Core Materials for Structural Sandwich Constructions," 2016 (ASTM C272-16).

**ASTM C335/C335M** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document titled "Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Transfer Properties of Pipe Insulation," 2017 (ASTM C335/C335M-17).

**ASTM C518** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document titled "Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus," 2017 (ASTM C518-17).

**ASTM C731** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document titled “Standard Test Method for Extrudability, After Package Aging of Latex Sealants,” 2015 (ASTM C731-15).

**ASTM C732** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document titled “Standard Test Method for Aging Effects of Artificial Weathering on Latex Sealants,” 2017 (ASTM C732-17 (2017)).

**ASTM C836** is the American Society of Testing and Materials document titled, “Standard Specification for High Solids Content, Cold Liquid-Applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane for Use with Separate Wearing Course,” 2015 (ASTM C836/C836M-15).

**ASTM C1167** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document titled “Standard Specification for Clay Roof Tiles,” 2011 (ASTM C1167-11).

**ASTM C1371** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document titled “Standard Test Method for Determination of Emittance of Materials Near Room Temperature Using Portable Emissometers,” 2015 (ASTM C1371-(2015)).

**ASTM C1492** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document entitled “Standard Specification for Concrete Roof Tile,” 2016 (ASTM C1492-03(2016)).

**ASTM C1549** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document entitled, "Standard Test Method for Determination of Solar Reflectance Near Ambient Temperature Using a Portable Solar Reflectometer," 2016 (ASTM C1549- 16 (2016)).

**ASTM C1583** is the American Society of Testing and Materials document titled, “Standard Test Method for Tensile Strength of Concrete Surfaces and the Bond Strength or Tensile Strength of Concrete Repair and Overlay Materials by Direct Tension (Pull-off Method),” 2013 (ASTM C1583/c1583M-13).

**ASTM D448** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document titled, "Standard Classification for Sizes of Aggregate for Road and Bridge Construction," 2017 (ASTM D448-12(2017)).

**ASTM D522** is the American Society of Testing and Materials document titled, “Standard Test Methods for Mandrel Bend Test of Attached Organic Coatings,” 2017 (ASTM D522/D522M-17).

**ASTM D822** is the American Society of Testing and Materials document titled, “Standard Practice for Filtered Open-Flame Carbon-Arc Exposures of Paint and Related Coatings,” 2013 (ASTM D822/D822M-13).

**ASTM D1003** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document titled “Standard Test Method for Haze and Luminous Transmittance of Transparent Plastics,” 2013 (ANSI/ASTM D1003-13).

**ASTM D1653** is the American Society of Testing and Materials document titled, “Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Organic Coating Films,” 2013 (ASTM D1653-13).

**ASTM D1863** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document titled, "Standard Specification for Mineral Aggregate Used on Built-Up Roofs," 2011 (ASTM D1863/D1863M-05 (2011)).

**ASTM D2370** is the American Society of Testing and Materials document titled, “Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Organic Coatings,” 2016 (ASTM D2370-98 (2016)).

**ASTM D2824** is the American Society of Testing and Materials document titled “Standard Specification for Aluminum-Pigmented Asphalt Roof Coatings, Nonfibered, Asbestos Fibered, and Fibered without Asbestos,” 2013 (ASTM D2824/D2824M-13).

**ASTM D3468** is the American Society of Testing and Materials document titled, “Standard Specification for Liquid-Applied Neoprene and Chlorosulfonated Polyethylene Used in Roofing and Waterproofing,” 2013 (ASTM D3468/D3468M-99 (2013)).

**ASTM D3805** is the American Society of Testing and Materials document titled “Standard Guide for Application of Aluminum-Pigmented Asphalt Roof Coatings,” 2016 (ASTM D3805/D3805M-16 (2016)).

**ASTM D4798** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document titled “Standard Test Method for Accelerated Weathering Test Conditions and Procedures for Bituminous Materials (Xenon-Arc Method),” 2016 (ASTM D4798/D4798M-16).

**ASTM D5870** is the American Society of Testing and Materials document titled, “Standard Practice for Calculating Property Retention Index of Plastics,” 2016 (ASTM D5870-16).

**ASTM D6694** is the American Society of Testing and Materials document titled, “Standard Specification for Liquid-Applied Silicone Coating Used in Spray Polyurethane Foam Roofing,” 2015 (ASTM D6694/D6694M-15 (2015)).

**ASTM E96** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document titled “Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials,” 2016 (ASTM E96/E96M-16).

**ASTM E283** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document titled “Standard Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen,” 2012 (ASTM E283-04(2012)).

**ASTM E408** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document titled, “Standard Test Methods for Total Normal Emittance of Surfaces Using Inspection-Meter Techniques,” 2013 (ASTM E408-13).

**ASTM E779** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document titled, “Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization,” 2010 (ASTM E779-10).

**ASTM E903** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document titled, "Standard Test Method for Solar Absorptance, Reflectance, and Transmittance of Materials Using Integrating Spheres," 2012 (ASTM E903-12(2012)).

**ASTM E972** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document titled, "Standard Test Method for Solar Photometric Transmittance of Sheet Materials Using Sunlight," 1996 (ASTM E972-96(2013)).

**ASTM E1175** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document titled, "Standard Test Method for Determining Solar or Photopic Reflectance, Transmittance, and Absorptance of Materials Using a Large Diameter Integrating Sphere," 2015 (ASTM E1175-87(2015)).

**ASTM E1677** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document titled, “Standard Specification for an Air Retarder (AR) Material or System for Low-Rise Framed Building Walls,” 2011 (ASTM E1677-11).

**ASTM E1918** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document entitled, "Standard Test Method for Measuring Solar reflectance of Horizontal and Low-Sloped Surfaces in the Field," 2016 (ASTM E1918-16(2016)).

**ASTM E1980** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document titled, “Standard Practice for Calculating Solar Reflectance Index of Horizontal and Low-Sloped Opaque Surface,” 2011 (ASTM E1980-11).

**ASTM E2178** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document titled, "Standard Test Method for Air Permeance of Building Materials," 2013 (ASTM E21778-13).

**ASTM E2357** is the American Society for Testing and Materials document titled, "Standard Test Method for determining air leakage of air barrier assemblies" 2017 (ASTM E2357-17).

**ATTIC** is an enclosed space directly below the roof deck and above the ceiling beams.

**AUTOMATIC** is capable of operating without human intervention.

**AUTOMATED TELLER MACHINE (ATM)** is any electronic information processing device which accepts or dispenses currency in connection with a credit, deposit, or convenience account without involvement by a clerk.

**BACK-UP COMPRESSORS** are those compressors not used to meet peak compressed air loads. Back-up compressors are physically connected to the compressed air piping system and can be automatically controlled to turn on if one of the online compressors fails. Back-up compressors do not normally operate.

**BATTERY SYSTEM, STATIONARY STORAGE.** A rechargeable energy storage system consisting of electrochemical storage batteries, battery chargers, controls, and associated electrical equipment designed to provide electrical power to a building. The system is typically used to provide standby or emergency power, and uninterruptible power supply, load shedding, load sharing or similar capabilities.

**BELOW-GRADE WALL** is the portion of a wall, enclosing conditioned space that is below the grade line.

**BUBBLE POINT** is the liquid saturation temperature of a refrigerant at a specified pressure.

**BUILDING** is any structure or space covered by Section 100.0 of the Building Energy Efficiency Standards.

**BUILDING COMMISSIONING** is a systematic quality assurance process that spans the entire design and construction process, including verifying and documenting that building systems and components are planned, designed, installed, tested, operated and maintained to meet the owner’s project requirements.

**BUILDING ENVELOPE** is the ensemble of exterior and demising partitions of a building that enclose conditioned space.

**CALL CENTER** is a phone center that handles large number of phone calls including but not limited to help desk, customer and sales support, technical support, emergency response, telephone answering service, and inbound and outbound telemarketing.

**CASCADE REFRIGERATION SYSTEM** is a type of refrigeration system that uses a low-stage refrigeration system where the heat rejected from condensing the low-stage refrigerant is absorbed using a heat-exchanger by a separate high-stage refrigeration system, and the ultimate heat rejection to ambient air is accomplished by the high-stage refrigeration system.

**CERTIFIED TO THE ENERGY COMMISSION** means, when used in association with appliances, certified under Section 1606 of Title 20 of the California Code of Regulations; and otherwise means certified by the manufacturer in a declaration, executed under penalty of perjury under the laws of the State of California, that all the information provided pursuant to the certification is true, complete, accurate and in compliance with all applicable provisions of Part 6; and if applicable that the equipment, product, or device was tested under the applicable test method specified in Part 6.

**CERTIFYING ORGANIZATION** is an independent organization recognized by the Commission to certify manufactured devices for performance values in accordance with procedures adopted by the Commission.

**CIE 13.3** is the International Commission on Illumination (Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage) document titled "Method of Measuring and Specifying Colour Rendering Properties of Light Sources," 1995 (CIE 13.3-1995).

**CIE 15** is the International Commission on Illumination (Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage) document titled "Technical Report: Colorimetry," 2004 (CIE 15:2004).

**CLIMATE ZONES** are the 16 geographic areas of California for which the Commission has established typical weather data, prescriptive packages and energy budgets. Climate zones are defined by ZIP code and listed in Reference Joint Appendix JA2 FIGURE 100.1-A is an approximate map of the 16 Climate Zones.

**CLOSED-CIRCUIT COOLING TOWER** is a cooling tower that utilizes indirect contact between a heated fluid, typically water or glycol, and the cooling atmosphere to transfer the source heat load through sensible heat, latent heat, and mass transfer indirectly to the air, essentially combining a heat exchanger and cooling tower into an integrated and relatively compact device.

**CODES, CALIFORNIA HISTORICAL BUILDING CODE** is the California Historical Building Code, California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 8 and Part 2 (Chapter 34).

**CODES, CBC** is the 2016 California Building Code.

**CODES, CEC** is the 2016 California Electric Code.

**CODES, CMC** is the 2016 California Mechanical Code.

**CODES, CPC** is the 2016 California Plumbing Code.

**COEFFICIENT OF PERFORMANCE (COP), COOLING**, is the ratio of the rate of net heat removal to the rate of total energy input, calculated under designated operating conditions and expressed in consistent units, as determined using the applicable test method in the Appliance Efficiency Regulations or Section 110.2.

**COEFFICIENT OF PERFORMANCE (COP), HEATING**, is the ratio of the rate of net heat output to the rate of total energy input, calculated under designated operating conditions and expressed in consistent units, as determined using the applicable test method in the Appliance Efficiency Regulations or Section 110.2.

**COEFFICIENT OF PERFORMANCE (COP), HEAT PUMP** is the ratio of the rate of useful heat output delivered by the complete heat pump unit (exclusive of supplementary heating) to the corresponding rate of energy input, in consistent units and as determined using the applicable test method in Appliance Efficiency Regulations or Section 110.2.

**COMBUSTION AIR POSITIVE SHUT-OFF** is a means of restricting air flow through a boiler combustion chamber during standby periods, used to reduce standby heat loss. A flue damper and a vent damper are two examples of combustion air positive shut-off devices.

**COMBUSTION EFFICIENCY** is a measure of the percentage of heat from the combustion of gas or oil that is transferred to the medium being heated or lost as jacket loss.

**COMMERCIAL BOILER** is a type of boiler with a capacity (rated maximum input) of 300,000 Btus per hour (Btu/h) or more and serving a space heating or water heating load in a commercial building.

**COMMISSION** is the California State Energy Resources Conservation and Development Commission, which is also referred to as the California Energy Commission.

**COMPLEX MECHANICAL SYSTEMS** are systems that include 1) fan systems each serving multiple thermostatically controlled zones; or 2) built-up air handler systems (non-unitary or non-packaged HVAC equipment); or 3) hydronic or steam heating systems; or 4) hydronic cooling systems. Complex mechanical systems are NOT the following: 1) unitary or packaged equipment listed in Table 110.2-A, 110.2-B, 110.2-C, or 110.2-E that each serves one zone, or 2) two-pipe, heating only systems serving one or more zones.

**COMPLIANCE SOFTWARE** is software that has been approved pursuant to Section 10-109 of Part 1 of Title 24 of the California Code of Regulations, to demonstrate compliance with the performance approach of Part 6.

**COMPRESSED AIR SYSTEM** is a system of at least one compressor providing compressed air at 40 psig or higher.

**COMPUTER ROOM** is a room within a building whose primary function is to house electronic equipment and that has a design equipment power density exceeding 20 watts/ft<sup>2</sup> (215 watts/m<sup>2</sup>) of conditioned floor area.

**CONDENSER** is a refrigeration component that condenses refrigerant vapor by rejecting heat to air mechanically circulated over its heat transfer surface.

**CONDENSER, ADIABATIC** is a condenser that has the ability to use two heat transfer processes in series as accomplished by a single factory-made unit. The first heat transfer process is the pre-cooling of the entering air by lowering the entering air drybulb temperature. The second heat transfer process is forced-air circulation cooling over the heat transfer surface of the condenser.

**DRY MODE** is an operating condition of an adiabatic condenser wherein the only means of heat transfer is accomplished through forced-air circulation over the heat transfer surface of the condenser without any pre-cooling of the entering air.

**PRE-COOL MODE** is an operating condition of an adiabatic condenser wherein the entering air is pre-cooled.

**CONDENSER SPECIFIC EFFICIENCY** is the full load condenser Total Heat of Rejection (THR) capacity at standardized conditions divided by the fan input electric power (including but not limited to spray pump electric input power for evaporative condensers) at 100 percent rated fan speed.

**CONDITIONED FLOOR AREA (CFA)** is the floor area (in square feet) of enclosed conditioned space on all floors of a building, as measured at the floor level of the exterior surfaces of exterior walls enclosing the conditioned space.

**CONDITIONED SPACE** is an enclosed space within a building that is directly conditioned or indirectly conditioned.

**CONDITIONED SPACE, DIRECTLY** is an enclosed space that is provided with wood heating, mechanical heating that has a capacity exceeding 10 Btu/hr-ft<sup>2</sup>, or mechanical cooling that has a capacity exceeding 5 Btu/hr-ft<sup>2</sup>. Directly conditioned space does not include process space. (See "process space.")

**CONDITIONED SPACE, INDIRECTLY** is enclosed space that (1) is not directly conditioned space; and (2) either (a) has a thermal transmittance area product (UA) to directly conditioned space exceeding that to the outdoors or to unconditioned space and does not have fixed vents or openings to the outdoors or to unconditioned space, or (b) is a space through which air from directly conditioned spaces is transferred at a rate exceeding three air changes per hour.

**CONDITIONED VOLUME** is the total volume (in cubic feet) of the conditioned space within a building.

**CONTINUOUS INSULATION (c.i.)** is insulation that is continuous across all assemblies that separate conditioned from unconditioned space. It is installed on the exterior or interior or is integral to any opaque surface of the building envelope and has no thermal bridges other than fasteners and necessary service openings.

**CONTROLLED ATMOSPHERE** is an airtight space maintained at reduced oxygen levels for the purpose of reducing respiration of perishable product in long term storage.

**COOLER** is a space to be capable of operation at a temperature greater than or equal to 28°F but less than 55°F.

**COOL ROOF** is a roofing material with high thermal emittance and high solar reflectance, or low thermal emittance and exceptionally high solar reflectance as specified in Part 6 that reduces heat gain through the roof.

**COOLING EQUIPMENT** is equipment used to provide mechanical cooling for a room or rooms in a building.

**CRAWL SPACE** is a space immediately under the first floor of a building adjacent to grade.

**CRRC-1** is the Cool Roof Rating Council document titled “Product Rating Program Manual.”

**CTI** is the Cooling Technology Institute.

**CTI ATC-105** is the Cooling Technology Institute document titled “Acceptance Test Code for Water Cooling Towers,” 2000 (CTI ATC-105-00).

**CTI ATC-105S(11)** is the Cooling Technology Institute document titled “Acceptance Test Code for Closed-Circuit Cooling Towers,” 2011 (CTI ATC-105-11).

CTI ATC-106 is the Cooling Technology Institute document titled “Acceptance Test Code for Mechanical Draft Evaporative Vapor Condensers”, 2011 (CTI ATC-106 (11)).

**CTI STD-201** is the Cooling Technology Institute document titled “Standard for Thermal Performance Certification of Evaporative Heat Rejection Equipment,” 2015 (CTI STD-201-15).

**CURRENT AIR DEMAND** is the actual cubic feet per minute (acfm) of total air flow necessary for end uses in a compressed air system.

**C-VALUE** (also known as C-factor) is the time rate of heat flow through unit area of a body induced by a unit temperature difference between the body surfaces, in Btu (hr x ft<sup>2</sup> x °F). It is not the same as K-value or K-factor.

**CYCLES OF CONCENTRATION** is the number of times the concentration of total dissolved solids (TDS) in cooling tower water is multiplied relative to the TDS in the makeup water. Because evaporation of pure water leaves dissolved solids behind in the system water, TDS increases over time as the tower operates. The number of times the dissolved minerals are concentrated is relative to the TDS in the makeup water. For example, five cycles of concentration represents five times the concentration of solids in the cooling tower system water relative to the TDS in the makeup water entering the tower.

**DATA CENTER** is a building whose primary function is to house computer room(s).

**DAYLIT ZONE** is the floor area under skylights or next to windows. Types of Daylit Zones include Primary Sidelit Daylit Zone, Secondary Sidelit Daylit Zone, and Skylit Daylit Zone.

**DEADBAND** is the temperature range within which the HVAC system is neither calling for heating or cooling.

**DECORATIVE GAS APPLIANCE** is a gas appliance that is designed or installed for visual effect only, cannot burn solid wood, and simulates a fire in a fireplace.

**DEGREE DAY, HEATING**, is a unit, based upon temperature difference and time, used in estimating fuel consumption and specifying nominal annual heating load of a building. For any one day, when the mean temperature is less than 65°F, there exist as many degree days as there are Fahrenheit degrees difference in temperature between the mean temperature for the day and 65°F. The number of degree days for specific geographical locations are those listed in the Reference Joint Appendix JA2. For those localities not listed in the Reference Joint Appendix JA2, the number of degree days is as determined by the applicable enforcing agency.

**DEMAND FLEXIBILITY MEASURE** is a measure that reduces TDV energy consumption using communication and control technology to shift electricity use across hours of the day to decrease energy use onpeak or increase energy use offpeak, including but not limited to battery storage, or HVAC or water heating load shifting.

**DEMAND RESPONSE** is short-term changes in electricity usage by end-use customers from their normal consumption patterns. Demand response may be in response to:

- a. changes in the price of electricity; or
- b. participation in programs or services designed to modify electricity use

- i. in response to wholesale market prices, or
- ii. when system reliability is jeopardized.

**DEMAND RESPONSE PERIOD** is a period of time during which electricity loads are modified in response to a demand response signal.

**DEMAND RESPONSE SIGNAL** is a signal that indicates a price or a request to modify electricity consumption for a limited time period.

**DEMAND RESPONSIVE CONTROL** is an automatic control that is capable of receiving and automatically responding to a demand response signal.

**DEMISING PARTITION** is a wall, fenestration, floor, or ceiling that separates conditioned space from enclosed unconditioned space.

**DESIGN CONDITIONS** are the parameters and conditions used to determine the performance requirements of space-conditioning systems. Design conditions for determining design heating and cooling loads are specified in Section 140.4(b) for nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel buildings and in Section 150.0(h) for low-rise residential buildings.

**DESIGN HEAT GAIN RATE** is the total calculated heat gain through the building envelope under design conditions.

**DESIGN HEAT LOSS RATE** is the total calculated heat loss through the building envelope under design conditions.

**DESIGN REVIEW** is an additional review of the construction documents (drawings and specifications) that seeks to improve compliance with existing Title 24 regulations, to encourage adoption of best practices in design, and to encourage designs that are constructible and maintainable. It is an opportunity for an experienced design engineer or architect to look at a project with a fresh perspective in an effort to catch missing or unclear design information and to suggest design enhancements.

**DEW POINT TEMPERATURE** is the vapor saturation temperature at a specified pressure for a substance undergoing phase change from vapor to liquid.

**DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC)** is a type of control where controlled and monitored analog or binary data, such as temperature and contact closures, are converted to digital format for manipulation and calculations by a digital computer or microprocessor, then converted back to analog or binary form to control mechanical devices.

**DIRECT-VENT APPLIANCE** or “sealed combustion” appliance is an appliance that is constructed and installed so that air from combustion is derived directly from the outdoors and flue gases are discharged to the outdoors.

**DISPLAY PERIMETER** is the length of an exterior wall in a Group B; Group F, Division 1; or Group M, Occupancy that immediately abuts a public sidewalk, measured at the sidewalk level for each story that abuts a public sidewalk.

**DOMESTIC WATER HEATING SYSTEMS** (see “service water heating”) **DOOR** is an operable opening in the building envelope, including swinging and roll-up doors, fire doors, pet doors and access hatches with less than 25 percent glazed area. When that operable opening has 25 percent or more glazed area it is a glazed door. See Fenestration: Glazed Door.

**DOOR AREA** is the total rough opening area which includes the door, and when present, the fenestration, and the fenestration frame components in the door frame assembly.

**DUAL-GLAZED GREENHOUSE WINDOWS** are a type of dual-glazed fenestration product which adds conditioned volume but not conditioned floor area to a building.

**DUCT SEALING** is a procedure for installing a space conditioning distribution system that minimizes leakage of air from or to the distribution system. Minimum specifications for installation procedures, materials, diagnostic testing and field verification are contained in the Reference Residential Appendix RA3 and Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA1.

**DUCT SYSTEM** is all the ducts, duct fittings, plenums and fans when assembled to form a continuous passageway for the distribution of air.

**DUCTED SYSTEM** is an air conditioner or heat pump, either a split system or single-packaged unit, that is designed to be permanently installed equipment and delivers conditioned air to an indoor space through a duct.

**DWELLING** is a building that contains one or two dwelling units used, intended or designed to be used, rented, leased, let or hired out to be occupied for living purposes.

**DWELLING UNIT** is a single unit providing complete, independent living facilities for one or more persons including access permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation.

**EAST-FACING** (See “orientation.”)

**ECONOMIZER, AIR**, is a ducting arrangement, including dampers, linkages, and an automatic control system that allows a cooling supply fan system to supply outside air to reduce or eliminate the need for mechanical cooling.

**ECONOMIZER, WATER**, is a system by which the supply air of a cooling system is cooled directly or indirectly by evaporation of water, or other appropriate fluid, in order to reduce or eliminate the need for mechanical cooling.

**ELECTRICAL POWER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS.** The following definitions are intended to apply to Section 130.5 only:

**EQUIPMENT.** A general term, including devices, luminaires, apparatus, machinery, and the like used as a part of, or in connection with, an electrical installation.

**PLUG LOAD** is the energy consumed by any appliances or electronic device that is plugged into a receptacle or receptacle outlet. Plug loads are not related to general lighting, heating, ventilation, cooling, and water heating, domestic and service water system, renewable power, information technology equipment, computer room electronic equipment, and electric vehicle charging.

**ELECTRICAL METERING** is a device or system for measuring the electrical power and energy supplied to a customer or premise(s).

**LOW VOLTAGE DRY-TYPE DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMER** is a distribution transformer that has an input voltage of 600 volts or less, that is air-cooled, and that does not use oil as a coolant.

**SERVICE** is the conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premise served.

**SERVICE EQUIPMENT** is the necessary equipment, usually consisting of a circuit breaker(s) or switch(es) and fuse(s) and their accessories, connected to the load end of service conductors to a building or other structure, or an otherwise designated area, and intended to constitute the main control and cutoff of the supply.

**ELECTRONICALLY-COMMUTATED MOTOR** is a brushless DC motor with a permanent magnet rotor that is surrounded by stationary motor windings, and an electronic controller that varies rotor speed and direction by sequentially supplying DC current to the windings.

**EMITTANCE, THERMAL** is the ratio of the radiant heat flux emitted by a sample to that emitted by a blackbody radiator at the same temperature.

**ENCLOSED SPACE** is space that is substantially surrounded by solid surfaces, including walls, ceilings or roofs, doors, fenestration areas, and floors or ground.

**ENERGY BUDGET** is the maximum energy consumption, based on Time Dependent Valuation (TDV) energy, that a proposed building, or portion of a building, can be designed to consume, calculated using Commission-approved compliance software as specified by the Alternative Calculation Method Approval Manual. The Energy Budget for newly constructed, low-rise residential buildings is expressed in terms of the Energy Design Rating.

**ENERGY COMMISSION** is the California State Energy Resources Conservation and Development Commission.

**ENERGY DESIGN RATING (EDR)** is a way to express the energy consumption of a building as a rating score index where a score of 100 represents the energy consumption of the building built to the specifications of the Residential Energy Services (RESNET) reference home characterization of the 2006 International Energy Conservation Code (IECC) with Title 24, Part 6 modeling assumptions, and a score of 0 (zero) represents a building that has zero net energy consumption. The EDR is calculated using Commission-approved compliance software as specified by the Alternative Calculation Method Approval Manual.

**ENERGY DESIGN RATING, ENERGY EFFICIENCY** is an Energy Design Rating based on the TDV energy consumption of a building that results from the building's energy efficiency characteristics, calculated using Commission-approved compliance software as specified by the Alternative Calculation Methods Approval Manual.

**ENERGY DESIGN RATING, SOLAR ELECTRIC GENERATION AND DEMAND FLEXIBILITY** is the reduction in TDV energy consumption of a building expressed in terms of an Energy Design Rating reduction that results from the combination of the building's solar electric generation system and demand flexibility measures.

**ENERGY DESIGN RATING, TOTAL** is the total Energy Design Rating for the building that is determined by subtracting the Solar Electric Generation System and Demand Flexibility Energy Design Rating from the Energy Efficiency Energy Design Rating.

**ENERGY EFFICIENCY RATIO (EER)** is the ratio of net cooling capacity (in Btu/hr) to total rate of electrical energy input (in watts), of a cooling system under designated operating conditions, as determined using the applicable test method in the Appliance Efficiency Regulations or Section 110.2.

**ENERGY FACTOR (EF)** of a water heater is a measure of overall water heater efficiency, as determined using the applicable test method in the Appliance Efficiency Regulations.

**ENERGY MANAGEMENT CONTROL SYSTEM (EMCS)** is an automated control system that regulates the energy consumption of a building by controlling the operation of energy consuming systems, and is capable of monitoring loads and adjusting operations in order to optimize energy usage and respond to demand response signals.

**ENERGY OBTAINED FROM DEPLETABLE SOURCES** is electricity purchased from a public utility, or any energy obtained from coal, oil, natural gas, or liquefied petroleum gases.

**ENERGY OBTAINED FROM NONDEPLETABLE SOURCES** is energy that is not energy obtained from depletable sources.

**ENFORCEMENT AGENCY** is the city, county, or state agency responsible for issuing a building permit.

**ENTIRE BUILDING** is the ensemble of all enclosed space in a building, including the space for which a permit is sought, plus all existing conditioned and unconditioned space within the structure.

**ENVELOPE** (See "building envelope")

**EXFILTRATION** is uncontrolled outward air leakage from inside a building, including leakage through cracks and interstices, around windows and doors, and through any other exterior partition or duct penetration.

**EXTERIOR FLOOR/SOFFIT** is a horizontal exterior partition, or a horizontal demising partition, under conditioned space. For low-rise residential occupancies, exterior floors also include those on grade.

**EXTERIOR PARTITION** is an opaque, translucent, or transparent solid barrier that separates conditioned space from ambient air or space. For low-rise residential occupancies, exterior partitions also include barriers that separate conditioned space from unconditioned space, or the ground.

**EXTERIOR ROOF/CEILING** is an exterior partition, or a demising partition, that has a slope less than 60 degrees from horizontal, that has conditioned space below, and that is not an exterior door or skylight.

**EXTERIOR ROOF/CEILING AREA** is the area of the exterior surface of exterior roof/ceilings.

**EXTERIOR WALL** is any wall or element of a wall, or any member or group of members, which defines the exterior boundaries or courts of a building and which has a slope of 60 degrees or greater with the horizontal plane. An exterior wall or partition is not an exterior floor/soffit, exterior door, exterior roof/ceiling, window, skylight, or demising wall.

**EXTERIOR WALL AREA** is the area of the opaque exterior surface of exterior walls.

**FACADE** is the contiguous exterior of a building surface, but not limited to fenestration products.

**FACTORY** is build, structure or space designated as Factory Group F that is used for assembling, disassembling, fabricating, finishing, manufacturing, packaging, repair or processing operations.

**FACTORY ASSEMBLED COOLING TOWERS** are cooling towers constructed from factory-assembled modules either shipped to the site in one piece or put together in the field.

**FENESTRATION:** Includes the following:

**ACE** is an NFRC-Approved Calculation Entity that conducts calculations of fenestration product ratings for certification authorization using the NFRC Component Modeling approach and issues label certificates to Specifying Authorities for product certification authorization in accordance with NFRC requirements.

**ALTERED COMPONENT** is a new fenestration component that has undergone an alteration other than a repair and is subject to all applicable Standards requirements.

**BAY WINDOW** is a combination assembly which is composed of three or more individual windows either joined side by side or installed within opaque assemblies and which projects away from the wall on which it is installed. Center windows, if used are parallel to the wall on which the bay is installed, the end panels or two side windows are angled with respect to the center window. Common angles are 30° and 45°, although other angles may be employed.

**CLERESTORY** is fenestration installed above a roofline greater than or equal to 60 degrees from the horizontal, or any portion of exterior vertical glazing greater than eight feet per floor above the finished floor of a space.

**CMA** (component modeling approach) is a fenestration product certification program from the National Fenestration Rating Council (NFRC) that enables energy-related performance ratings for nonresidential fenestration products, including the thermal performance U-factor, Solar Heat Gain Coefficient, and Visible Transmittance.

**CMAST** (Component Modeling Approach Software Tool) is an NFRC approved software which allows a user to create a fenestration product “virtually,” and generate its energy-related performance ratings, including the thermal performance U-factor, Solar Heat Gain Coefficient, and Visible Transmittance.

**CURTAIN WALL/STOREFRONT** is an external nonbearing wall intended to separate the exterior nonconditioned and interior conditioned spaces. It also consists of any combination of framing materials, fixed glazing, opaque glazing, operable windows, or other in-fill materials.

**GLAZED DOOR** is an exterior door having a glazed area of 25 percent or greater of the area of the door. Glazed doors shall meet fenestration product requirements. See: Door.

**DUAL-GLAZED GREENHOUSE WINDOWS** is a double glass pane separated by an air or other gas space which adds conditioned volume but not conditioned floor area to a building.

**DYNAMIC GLAZING SYSTEMS** are glazing systems that have the ability to reversibly change their performance properties, including U-factor, Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC), and/or Visible Transmittance (VT) between well-defined end points. These may include, but are not limited to chromogenic glazing systems and integrated shading systems (defined below). Dynamic Glazing systems do not include internally mounted or externally mounted shading devices that attach to the window framing/glazing that may or may not be removable.

**CHROMOGENIC GLAZING** is a class of switchable glazing which includes active materials (e.g. electrochromic) and passive materials (e.g. photochromic and thermochromic) permanently integrated into the glazing assembly. Their primary function is to switch reversibly from a high transmission state to a low transmission state with associated changes in VT and SHGC.

**INTEGRATED SHADING SYSTEM** is a class of fenestration products including an active layer: e.g. shades, louvers, blinds or other materials permanently integrated between two or more glazing layers. The U-factor and/or SHGC and VT of the insulating glass assembly can be altered by reversibly changing the enclosed active layer.

**FENESTRATION ALTERATION** is any change to an existing building's exterior fenestration product that is not a repair (see Fenestration Repair) that:

- i. Replaces existing fenestration in an existing wall or roof with no net area added; or
- ii. Replaces existing fenestration and adds new net area in the existing wall or roof; or
- iii. Adds a new window that increases the net fenestration area to an existing wall or roof.

**FENESTRATION AREA** is the rough opening area of any fenestration product. **FENESTRATION PRODUCT** is any transparent or translucent material plus any sash, frame, mullions and dividers, in the facade of a building, including, but not limited to, windows, glazed doors, skylights, curtain walls, dynamic glazing, garden windows and glass block.

**FENESTRATION REPAIR** is the reconstruction or renewal for the purpose of maintenance of any fenestration product, component or system and shall not increase the preexisting energy consumption of the repaired fenestration product, component, system, or equipment. Replacement of any component, system, or equipment for which there are requirements in the Standards are considered an alteration (see Fenestration, Alterations) and not a repair and is subject to the requirements of Part 6 of the Standards.

**FIELD-FABRICATED** is a fenestration product whose frame is made at the construction site of standard dimensional lumber or other materials that were not previously cut, or otherwise formed with the specific intention of being used to fabricate a fenestration product. Field fabricated does not include site-built fenestration.

**FIN** is an opaque surface, oriented vertically and projecting outward horizontally from an exterior vertical surface.

**FIN OFFSET** is the horizontal distance from the edge of exposed exterior glazing at the jamb of a window to the fin.

**FIN PROJECTION** is the horizontal distance, measured outward horizontally, from the surface of exposed exterior glazing at the jamb of a window to the outward edge of a fin.

**FIXED** is fenestration that is not designed to be opened or closed.

**GREENHOUSE or GARDEN WINDOW** is a window unit that consists of a three-dimensional, five-sided structure generally protruding from the wall in which it is installed. Operating sash may or may not be included.

**HORIZONTAL SLATS**, when referring to a daylighting device, is a set of adjacent surfaces located directly adjacent to vertical fenestration, oriented horizontally and projecting horizontally from its interior or exterior vertical surface.

**LIGHT SHELF** is an adjacent, opaque surfaced daylighting device located at the sill of clerestory glazing, oriented horizontally and projecting horizontally from an interior or exterior vertical surface.

**MANUFACTURED or KNOCKED DOWN PRODUCT** is a fenestration product constructed of materials which are factory cut or otherwise factory formed with the specific intention of being used to fabricate a fenestration product. Knocked down or partially assembled products may be sold as a fenestration product when provided with temporary and permanent labels as described in Section 10-111; or as a site-built fenestration product when not provided with temporary and permanent labels as described in Section 10-111.

**NFRC 100** is the National Fenestration Rating Council document titled “NFRC 100: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product U-factors.” (2017)

**NFRC 200** is the National Fenestration Rating Council document titled “NFRC 200: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficients and Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence.” (2017).

**NFRC 202** is the National Fenestration Rating Council document titled “NFRC 202: Procedures for Determining Translucent Fenestration Product Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence.” (2017).

**NFRC 203** is the National Fenestration Rating Council document titled “NFRC 203: Procedure for Determining Visible Transmittance of Tubular Daylighting Devices.” (2017).

**NFRC 400** is the National Fenestration Rating Council document titled “NFRC 400: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Air Leakage.” (2017).

**OPERABLE SHADING DEVICE** is a device at the interior or exterior of a building or integral with a fenestration product, which is capable of being operated, either manually or automatically, to adjust the amount of solar radiation admitted to the interior of the building.

**RELATIVE SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT (RSHGC)** is the ratio of solar heat gain through a fenestration product (corrected for external shading) to the incident solar radiation. Solar heat gain includes directly transmitted solar heat and absorbed solar radiation, which is then reradiated, conducted, or convected into the space.

**SITE-BUILT** is fenestration designed to be field-glazed or field assembled units using specific factory cut or otherwise factory formed framing and glazing units, that are manufactured with the intention of being assembled at the construction site. These include storefront systems, curtain walls, and atrium roof systems.

**SKYLIGHT ROOF RATIO (SRR)** is the ratio of the skylight area to the gross exterior roof area.

**SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT (SHGC)** is the ratio of the solar heat gain entering the space through the fenestration area to the incident solar radiation. Solar heat gain includes directly transmitted solar heat and absorbed solar radiation, which is then reradiated, conducted, or convected into the space.

**SPANDREL** is opaque glazing material most often used to conceal building elements between floors of a building so they cannot be seen from the exterior, also known as “opaque in-fill systems”.

**TINTED GLASS** is colored glass by incorporation of a mineral admixture resulting in a degree of tinting. Any tinting reduces both visible and radiant transmittance.

**VERTICAL FENESTRATION** is all fenestration other than skylights and doors.

**VISIBLE REFLECTANCE** is the reflectance of light at wavelengths from 410 to 722 nanometers.

**VISIBLE TRANSMITTANCE (VT)** is the ratio (expressed as a decimal) of visible light that is transmitted through a glazing fenestration. The higher the VT rating, the more light is allowed through a window.

**WINDOW** is fenestration that is not a skylight and that is an assembled unit consisting of a frame and sash component holding one or more pieces of glazing.

**WINDOW AREA** is the area of the surface of a window, plus the area of the frame, sash, and mullions.

**WINDOW HEAD HEIGHT** is the height from the floor to the top of the vertical fenestration.

**WINDOW WALL RATIO (WWR)** is the ratio of the window area to the gross exterior wall area.

**FIELD ERECTED COOLING TOWERS** are cooling towers which are custom designed for a specific application and which cannot be delivered to a project site in the form of factory assembled modules due to their size, configuration, or materials of construction.

**FIREPLACE** is a hearth and fire chamber, or similar prepared place, in which a fire may be made and which is built in conjunction with a flue or chimney, including but not limited to factory-built fireplaces, masonry fireplaces, and masonry heaters as further clarified in the CBC.

**FLOOR/SOFFIT TYPE** is a type of floor/soffit assembly having a specific heat capacity, framing type, and U-factor.

**FLUID COOLER** is a fan-powered heat rejection device that includes a water or glycol circuit connected by a closed circulation loop to a liquid-cooled refrigerant condenser, and may be either evaporative-cooled, air-cooled, or a combination of the two.

**FLUX** is the rate of energy flow per unit area.

**FOOD PREPARATION EQUIPMENT** is cooking equipment intended for commercial use, including coffee machines, espresso coffee makers, conductive cookers, food warmers including heated food servers, fryers, griddles, nut warmers, ovens, popcorn makers, steam kettles, ranges, and cooking appliances for use in commercial kitchens, restaurants, or other business establishments where food is dispensed.

**FREEZER** is a space designed to be capable of operation at less than 28°F.

**GAS COOLER** is a refrigeration component that reduces the temperature of a refrigerant vapor by rejecting heat to air mechanically circulated over its heat transfer surface. Used by a CO<sub>2</sub> refrigeration system in transcritical mode, and normally also capable of operating in subcritical mode.

**GAS COOLING EQUIPMENT** is cooling equipment that produces chilled water or cold air using natural gas or liquefied petroleum gas as the primary energy source.

**GAS HEATING SYSTEM** is a system that uses natural gas or liquefied petroleum gas as a fuel to heat a conditioned space.

**GAS LOG** is a self-contained, free-standing, open-flame, gas-burning appliance consisting of a metal frame or base supporting simulated logs, and designed for installation only in a vented fireplace.

**GLAZING** (See “fenestration product”)

**GLOBAL WARMING POTENTIAL (GWP)** is the radiative forcing impact of one mass-based unit of a given greenhouse gas relative to an equivalent unit of carbon dioxide over a given period of time.

**GLOBAL WARMING POTENTIAL VALUE (GWP Value)** is the 100-year GWP value published by the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) in either its Second Assessment Report (SAR) (IPCC, 1995), or its Fourth Assessment A-3 Report (AR4) (IPCC, 2007). Both the 1995 IPCC SAR values and the 2007 IPCC AR4 values are published in table 2.14 of the 2007 IPCC AR4. The SAR GWP values are found in column “SAR (100-yr)” of Table 2.14.; the AR4 GWP values are found in column “100 yr” of Table 2.14.”

**GOVERNMENTAL AGENCY** is any public agency or subdivision thereof, including, but not limited to, any agency of the state, a county, a city, a district, an association of governments, or a joint power agency.

**GROSS EXTERIOR ROOF AREA** is the sum of the skylight area and the exterior roof/ceiling area.

**GROSS EXTERIOR WALL AREA** is the sum of the window area, door area, and exterior wall area.

**HABITABLE SPACE** is space in a building for living, sleeping, eating or cooking, excluding bathrooms, toilets, hallways, storage areas, closets, utility rooms and similar areas. (See also “occupiable space”.)

**HABITABLE STORY** is a story that contains habitable space and that has at least 50 percent of its volume above grade.

**HEALTHCARE FACILITY** is any building or portion thereof licensed pursuant to California Health and Safety Code Division 2, Chapter 1, §1204 or Chapter 2, §1250.

**HEAT CAPACITY (HC)** is the measurable physical quantity that characterizes the amount of heat required to change a substance's temperature by a given amount.

**HEAT PUMP** is an appliance, that consists of one or more assemblies; that uses an indoor conditioning coil, a compressor, and a refrigerant-to-outdoor air heat exchanger to provide air heating; and that may also provide air cooling, dehumidifying, humidifying, circulating, or air cleaning.

**HEATED SLAB FLOOR** is a concrete floor either, on-grade, raised, or a lightweight concrete slab topping. Heating is provided by a system placed within or under the slab, and is sometimes referred to as a radiant slab floor.

**HEATING EQUIPMENT** is equipment used to provide mechanical heating for a room or rooms in a building.

**HEATING SEASONAL PERFORMANCE FACTOR (HSPF)** is the total heating output of a central air-conditioning heat pump (in Btu) during its normal use period for heating divided by the total electrical energy input (in watt-hours) during the same period, as determined using the applicable test method in the Appliance Efficiency Regulations.

**HIGH-RISE RESIDENTIAL BUILDING** is a building, other than a hotel/motel, of Occupancy Group R-2 or R-4 with four or more habitable stories.

**HOTEL/MOTEL** is a building or buildings that has six or more guest rooms or a lobby serving six or more guest rooms, where the guest rooms are intended or designed to be used, or which are used, rented, or hired out to be occupied, or which are occupied for sleeping purposes by guests, and all conditioned spaces within the same building envelope. Hotel/motel also includes all conditioned spaces which are (1) on the same property as the hotel/motel, (2) served by the same central heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning system as the hotel/motel, and (3) integrally related to the functioning of the hotel/motel as such, including, but not limited to, exhibition facilities, meeting and conference facilities, food service facilities, lobbies, and laundries.

**HVAC SYSTEM** is a space-conditioning system or a ventilation system.

**HVI 915** is the Home Ventilating Institute document titled “Home Ventilating Institute Loudness Testing and Rating Procedure,” 2015 (HVI Publication 915-2015).

**HVI 916** is the Home Ventilating Institute document titled “Home Ventilating Institute Airflow Test Procedure,” 2015 (HVI Publication 916-2015).

**HVI 920** is the Home Ventilating Institute document titled “Home Ventilating Institute Product Performance Certification Procedure Including Verification And Challenge,” 2015 (HVI Publication 920-2015).

**IES HB** (See IES Lighting Handbook)

**IES LIGHTING HANDBOOK** is the Illuminating Engineering Society document titled “The IES Lighting Handbook: Reference and Applications, Tenth Edition” (2011).

**IES LM-79-08** is the Illuminating Engineering Society document titled, “IES Approved Method for the Electrical and Photometric Measurements of Solid-State Lighting Products” (2008).

**IES TM-15-11** is the Illuminating Engineering Society document titled, “Luminaire Classification Systems for Outdoor Luminaires” (2011).

**INFILTRATION** is uncontrolled inward air leakage from outside a building or unconditioned space, including leakage through cracks and interstices, around windows and doors, and through any other exterior or demising partition or pipe or duct penetration. See AIR BARRIER.

**INTEGRATED ENERGY EFFICIENCY RATIO (IEER)** is a single-number cooling part load efficiency figure of merit calculated as specified by the method described in ANSI/AHRI Standard 340/360/1230 . This metric replaces the IPLV for ducted and non-ducted units.

**INTEGRATED PART LOAD VALUE (IPLV)** is a single-number cooling partload efficiency figure of merit calculated as specified by the method described in ANSI/AHRI Standard 550/590 for use with chillers.

**ISO STANDARD 17025** is the International Organization for Standardization document titled "General Criteria for the Competence of Testing and Calibration Laboratories", 2005 (ANS/ISO/IEC Standard 17025:2005).

**ISO 13256-1** is the International Organization for Standardization document titled "Water-source heat pumps -- Testing and rating for performance -- Part 1: Water-to-air and brine-to-air heat pumps," 1998.

**ISO 13256-2** is the International Organization for Standardization document titled "Water-source heat pumps -- Testing and rating for performance -- Part 1: Water-to-water and brine-to-water heat pumps," 1998.

**LANGELIER SATURATION INDEX (LSI)** is expressed as the difference between the actual system pH and the saturation pH. LSI indicates whether water will precipitate, dissolve, or be in equilibrium with calcium carbonate, and is a function of hardness, alkalinity, conductivity, pH and temperature.

**LARGEST NET CAPACITY INCREMENT** is the largest increase in capacity when switching between combinations of base compressors that is expected to occur under the compressed air system control scheme.

**LIGHTING** definitions:

**Accent Lighting** is directional lighting designed to highlight or spotlight objects. It can be recessed, surface mounted, or mounted to a pendant, stem, or track.

**Chandelier** is a ceiling-mounted, close-to-ceiling, or suspended decorative luminaire that uses glass, crystal, ornamental metals, or other decorative material.

**Color Rendering Index (CRI)** is the ability of a light source to reflect the color of illuminated objects with fidelity relative to ideal or natural light sources of the same color temperature. CRI is calculated according to CIE 13.3.

**Correlated Color Temperature (CCT)** is a description of color of light relative to the chromaticity of the radiative emission of heated black body and reported in temperature units of Kelvin according to CIE 15

**Colored light source** is a light source designed and marketed as a colored light source and not designed or marketed for general lighting applications with either of the following characteristics maintained throughout all modes of operation including color changing operation:

- (1) A Color Rendering Index (CRI) less than 40, as determined according to the method set forth in CIE Publication 13.3; or
- (2) A Correlated Color Temperature less than 2,200 K or greater than 7,000 K as determined according to the method set forth in IES LM-66 or IES LM-79 as appropriate.

**Compact Fluorescent Lamp** is a single-ended fluorescent lamp with a T5 or smaller diameter glass tube that is folded, bent, or bridged.

**Decorative (Lighting/Luminaire)** is lighting or luminaires installed only for aesthetic purposes and that does not serve as display lighting or general lighting.

**Display Lighting** is lighting that provides a higher level of illuminance to a specific area than the level of surrounding ambient illuminance. Types of display lighting include:

**Floor:** supplementary lighting required to highlight features, such as merchandise on a clothing rack, which is not displayed against a wall.

**Wall:** supplementary lighting required to highlight features, such as merchandise on a shelf, which is displayed on perimeter walls.

**Window:** lighting of objects such as merchandise, goods, and artifacts, in a show window, to be viewed from the outside of a space through a window.

**Case:** lighting of small art objects, artifacts, or valuable collections which involves customer inspection of very fine detail from outside of a glass enclosed display case.

**Enclosed Luminaires** are luminaires which contain enclosed lamp compartments where ventilation openings are less than 3 square inches per lamp in the lamp compartment as defined by UL 1598.

**General Lighting** is installed electric lighting that provides a uniform level of illumination throughout an area, exclusive of any provision for special visual tasks or decorative effect, exclusive of daylighting, and also known as ambient lighting.

**GU-24** is the designation of a lamp holder and socket configuration, based on a coding system by the International Energy Consortium, where “G” indicates the broad type of two or more projecting contacts, such as pins or posts, “U” distinguishes between lamp and holder designs of similar type but that are not interchangeable due to electrical or mechanical requirements, and “24” indicates 24 millimeters center to center spacing of the electrical contact posts.

**Illuminance** is the area density of the luminous flux incident at a point on a surface.

**Illumination** is light incident on a surface of body, or the general condition of being illuminated.

**Inseparable Solid State Lighting (SSL) Luminaire** is a luminaire featuring solid state lighting components such as LEDs and driver components which cannot be easily removed or replaced by the end user, thus requiring replacement of the entire luminaire. Removal of solid state lighting components may require the cutting of wires, use of a soldering iron, or damage to or destruction of the luminaire.

**Institutional Tuning** is the process of adjusting the maximum light output of lighting systems to support visual needs or save energy. Institutional tuning differs from personal tuning in that the control strategy is implemented at the institutional rather than the individual user level, and maximum light level adjustments are available only to authorized personnel.

**Lamp** is an electrical appliance that produces optical radiation for the purpose of visual illumination, designed with a base to provide an electrical connection between the lamp and a luminaire, and designed to be installed into a luminaire. A lamp is not a luminaire and is not a LED retrofit kit.

**Landscape Lighting** is a type of outdoor lighting that is recessed into or mounted on the ground, paving, or raised deck, which is mounted less than 42 inches above grade or mounted onto trees or trellises, and that is intended to be aimed only at landscape features.

**Lantern** is an outdoor luminaire that uses an electric lamp to replicate the appearance of a pre-electric lantern, which used a flame to generate light.

**Light** is the luminous equivalent of power and is properly called luminous flux.

**Lighting**, or illumination, is the application of light to achieve some practical or aesthetic effect.

**Light Emitting Diode (LED)** is a p-n junction solid state diode whose radiated output is a function of its physical construction, material used and exciting current. The output may be in the near ultraviolet, the visible or in the infrared regions of the spectrum.

**LED Light Engine** is an integrated assembly comprised of LED packages, LED components, LED arrays, LED modules, or LED driver, and other optical, thermal, mechanical and electrical components. The device is intended to connect directly to the branch circuit through a custom connector compatible with the LED luminaire for which it was designed and does not use an ANSI standard base. (IES RP-16-17).

**LED Retrofit Kit** is a solid state lighting product intended to replace existing light sources and systems, including incandescent and fluorescent light sources, in previously installed luminaires that already comply with safety standards. These kits replace the existing light source and related electrical components, and are classified or certified to UL 1598C. They may employ an ANSI standard lamp base, either integral or connected to the retrofit by wire leads. LED retrofit kit does not include self-ballasted lamps.

**Non-integrated LED lamp** is an assembly composed of a light emitting diode (LED) array (module) or LED packages (components), and an ANSI standard base. The device is intended to connect to the LED driver of an LED luminaire through an ANSI standard lamp-holder (socket). The device cannot be connected directly to the branch circuit. (ANSI/IES RP-16-17).

**Integrated LED lamp** is an integrated assembly composed of light emitting diode (LED) packages (components) or LED arrays (modules), as well as an LED driver, an ANSI standard base, and other optical, thermal, mechanical and electrical components. The device is intended to connect directly to the branch circuit through a corresponding ANSI standard lamp-holder (socket). (ANSI/IES RP-16-17).

**Low Voltage** is less than 90 volts.

**Lumen Maintenance** is a strategy used to provide a precise, constant level of lighting from a lighting system regardless of the age of the lamps or the maintenance of the luminaires.

**Luminaire** is a complete lighting unit consisting of a light source such as a lamp or lamps, together with the parts that distribute the light, position and protect the light source and connect it to the power supply.

**Luminance** is the luminous intensity of the source or surface divided by the area of the source or surface seen by the observer.

**Luminous Efficacy** is a measure of the luminous efficiency of a light source. It is the quotient of the total luminous flux emitted by the total light source power input, expressed in lm/W.

**Luminous Flux** is visually evaluated radiant flux and defines “light” for purposes of lighting design and illuminating engineering.

**Marquee Lighting** is a permanent lighting system consisting of one or more rows of many small lamps, including light emitting diodes (LEDs) lamps, tungsten lamps, low pressure discharge lamps or fiber optic lighting, attached to a canopy.

**Narrow Band Spectrum** is a limited range of wavelengths (nm) concentric to a dominant peak wavelength in the visible spectrum. The limited range of wavelength shall be within 20 nm on either side of the peak wavelength at 50 percent of the peak wavelength’s relative spectral power, and within 75 nm on either side of the peak wavelength at 10 percent of the peak wavelength’s relative spectral power.

**Ornamental Lighting** for compliance with Part 6 is the following:

**Luminaires** installed outdoor which are rated for 30 watts or less that are post-top luminaires, lanterns, pendant luminaires, chandeliers, and marquee lighting, not providing general lighting or task lighting.

**Decorative Luminaires** installed indoor that are chandeliers, sconces, lanterns, neon and cold cathode, light emitting diodes, theatrical projectors, moving lights, and light color panels, not providing general lighting or task lighting.

**Pendant (Suspended)** - A luminaire that is hung from a ceiling by supports.

**Permanently Installed lighting** consists of luminaires that are affixed to land, within the meaning of Civil Code Section 658 and 660, except as provided below. Permanently installed luminaires may be mounted inside or outside of a building or site. Permanently installed luminaires may have either plug-in or hardwired connections for electric power. Examples include track and flexible lighting systems; lighting attached to walls, ceilings, columns, inside or outside of permanently installed cabinets, internally illuminated cabinets, mounted on poles, in trees, or in the ground; attached to ceiling fans and integral to exhaust fans. Permanently installed lighting does not include portable lighting or lighting that is installed by the manufacturer in exhaust hoods for cooking equipment, refrigerated cases, food preparation equipment, and scientific and industrial equipment.

**Portable Lighting** is lighting, with plug-in connections for electric power, that is: table and freestanding floor lamps; attached to modular furniture; workstation task luminaires; luminaires attached to workstation panels; attached to movable displays; or attached to other personal property.

**Post Top Luminaire** is an outdoor luminaire that is mounted directly on top of a lamp-post.

**Precision Lighting** is task lighting for commercial or industrial work that illuminates low contrast, finely detailed, or fast moving objects.

**Radiant Power** is the time-rate-flow of radiant energy.

**Radiant Energy** is energy travelling in the form of electromagnetic waves. It is measured in units of energy such as joules or kilowatt hours.

**Recessed Luminaire** is a luminaire that is mounted in the ceiling or behind a wall or other surface with the opening of the luminaire flush with the surface.

**Sconce** is a wall mounted decorative accent luminaire.

**Solid State Lighting (SSL)** is a family of light sources that includes: semiconductor light emitting diodes (LEDs); and organic light emitting diodes (OLEDs).

**Driver**, when used in relation to solid state lighting, is a device that uses semiconductors to control and supply dc power for LED starting and operation.

**Source (light)** is the general term used to reference a source of light. It can refer variously to an electric lamp, a light emitting diode (LED), an entire luminaire with lamp and optical control, or fenestration for daylighting.

**Special Effects Lighting** is lighting installed to give off luminance instead of providing illuminance, which does not serve as general, task, or display lighting.

**Task Lighting** is lighting that is not general lighting and that specifically illuminates a location where a task is performed.

**Temporary Lighting** is a lighting installation, with plug-in connections, that does not persist beyond 60 consecutive days or more than 120 days per year.

**Track Lighting** is a system that includes luminaires and a track, rails, or cables that both mount the system, and deliver electric power. Track lighting includes the following types:

**Line-Voltage Track Lighting** is equipped with luminaires that, use line-voltage lamps or that are equipped with integral transformers at each luminaire.

**Low-Voltage Track Lighting** is equipped with remote transformers for use with low-voltage equipment along the entire length of track.

**Track Lighting Integral Current Limiter** consists of a current limiter integral to the end-feed housing of a manufactured line-voltage track lighting system.

**Track Lighting Supplementary Overcurrent Protection Panel** is a panelboard containing Supplementary Overcurrent Protection Devices as defined in Article 100 of the California Electrical Code, and used only with line voltage track lighting.

**Track Mounted Luminaires** are luminaires designed to be attached at any point along a track lighting system. Track mounted luminaires may be line-voltage or low-voltage.

**Tuning** is the ability to set maximum light levels at a lower level than full lighting power.

**LIGHTING CONTROLS** consist of the following:

**Astronomical Time-Switch Control** is a lighting control that controls lighting based on the time of day and astronomical events such as sunset and sunrise, accounting for geographic location and calendar date.

**Automatic Daylight Control** uses one or more photosensors to detect changes in daylight illumination and then automatically adjusts the luminous flux of the electric lighting system in response.

**Automatic Multi-Level Daylight Control** adjusts the luminous flux of the electric lighting system in either a series of steps or by continuous dimming in response to available daylight. This kind of control uses one or more photosensors to detect changes in daylight illumination and then automatically adjusts the electric lighting levels in response.

**Automatic Scheduling Control** is a time-based lighting control that is capable of being programmed to reduce or turn off lighting power for a portion of the night and to turn off lighting power for the day.

**Automatic Time Switch Control** controls lighting based on the time of day.

**Captive-Key Override** is a type of lighting control in which the key that activates the override cannot be released when the lights are in the on position.

**Countdown Timer Switch** turns lighting or other loads ON when activated using one or more selectable count-down time periods and then automatically turns lighting or other loads OFF when the selected time period had elapsed.

**Dimmer** is a lighting control that varies the luminous flux of the electric lighting system by changing the power used by or delivered to that lighting system.

**Dimmer, Full-Range**, or Continuous Dimmer, means a dimmer that varies the luminous flux of the electric lighting system over a continuous range from the device's maximum light output to the device's minimum light output without visually apparent abrupt changes in light level between the various steps.

**Dimmer, Stepped** varies the luminous flux of the electric lighting system in one or more predetermined discrete steps between maximum light output and OFF with changes in light level between adjacent steps being visually apparent.

**Dimmer, Forward Phase Cut**, varies the luminous flux of the electric lighting system in which a portion of the alternating current voltage waveform supplying to the light source is removed.

**Lighting Control, Self Contained** is a unitary lighting control module that requires no additional components to be a fully functional lighting control.

**Lighting Control System** requires two or more components to be installed in the building to provide all of the functionality required to make up a fully functional and compliant lighting control.

**Multi-Level Astronomical Time Switch** is an Astronomical Time Switch Control that reduces lighting power in multiple steps.

**Multi-Level Lighting Control** reduces power going to a lighting system in multiple steps.

**Multiscene Programmable Control** allows for two or more pre-defined lighting settings, in addition to all-OFF, for two or more groups of luminaires to suit multiple activities in the space.

**NEMA SSL 7A** is the National Electrical Manufacturers Association document titled "Phase Cut Dimming for Solid State Lighting: Basic Compatibility," 2015. (NEMA SSL 7A-2015).

**Occupant Sensing Controls** automatically control levels of illumination, allow for manual operation, and consist of the following types:

**Motion Sensor** is used outdoors, automatically reduces lighting power or turns lights OFF after an area is vacated of occupants, and automatically turns the lights ON when the area is occupied.

**Occupant Sensor** is used indoors, automatically reduces lighting power or turns lights OFF after an area is vacated of occupants, and is capable of automatically turning the lighting load ON when an area is occupied.

**Partial-ON Occupant or Motion Sensor** automatically turns lights OFF after an area is vacated of occupants and is capable of automatically or manually turning ON part of the lighting load when an area is occupied.

**Partial-OFF Occupant or Motion Sensor** automatically dims the lighting or turns OFF part of the lighting load after an area is vacated of occupants, and is capable of automatically turning ON the lighting load or restoring it to full when an area is occupied.

**Vacancy Sensor** automatically turns lights OFF after an area is vacated of occupants but requires lights to be turned ON manually.

**Part-Night Outdoor Lighting Control** is a light sensing and time-based lighting control device or system that is programmed to reduce or turn off the lighting power to an outdoor luminaire for a portion of the night.

**Photo Control** automatically turns lights ON and OFF, or automatically adjusts lighting levels, in response to the amount of daylight that is available. A Photo Control may also be one component of a field assembled lighting

system, the component having the capability to provide a signal proportional to the amount of daylight to a Lighting Control System to dim or brighten the electric lights in response.

**Shut-off Controls** is any lighting control capable of automatically shutting OFF the lighting in a space when the space is typically unoccupied.

**LISTED** is in accordance with Article 100 of the California Electrical Code.

**LOW-GWP REFRIGERANT** is a compound used as a heat transfer fluid or gas that is: (A) any compound or blend of compounds, with a GWP Value less than 150; and (B) U.S. EPA Significant New Alternatives Policy (SNAP)-approved; and (C) not an ozone depleting substance as defined in Title 40 of the Code of Federal Regulations, Part 82, §82.3 (as amended March 10, 2017).

**LOW-RISE RESIDENTIAL BUILDING** is a building, other than a hotel/motel, that is Occupancy Group:

R-2, multifamily, with three habitable stories or less; or

R-3, single family; or

U-building, located on a residential site.

**LPG** is liquefied petroleum gas.

**MANUAL** is capable of being operated by personal intervention.

**MANUFACTURED DEVICE** is any heating, cooling, ventilation, lighting, water heating, refrigeration, cooking, plumbing fitting, insulation, door, fenestration product, or any other appliance, device, equipment, or system subject to Sections 110.0 through 110.9 of Part 6.

**MANUFACTURED or KNOCKED DOWN PRODUCT** is a fenestration product constructed of materials that are factory cut or otherwise factory formed with the specific intention of being used to fabricate a fenestration product. Knocked down or partially assembled products may be sold as a fenestration product when provided with temporary and permanent labels as described in Section 10-111, or as a site-built fenestration product when not provided with temporary and permanent labels as described in Section 10-111.

**MECHANICAL COOLING** is lowering the temperature within a space using refrigerant compressors or absorbers, desiccant dehumidifiers, or other systems that require energy to directly condition the space. In nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel buildings, cooling of a space by direct or indirect evaporation of water alone is not considered mechanical cooling.

**MECHANICAL HEATING** is raising the temperature within a space using electric resistance heaters, fossil fuel burners, heat pumps, or other systems that require energy to directly condition the space.

**MERV** is the minimum efficiency reporting value as determined by ASHRAE Standard 52.2 Method of Testing General Ventilation Air-Cleaning Devices for Removal Efficiency by Particle Size.

**METAL BUILDING** is a complete integrated set of mutually dependent components and assemblies that form a building, which consists of a steel-framed superstructure and metal skin. This does not include structural glass or metal panels such as in a curtainwall system.

**MICROCHANNEL CONDENSER** is an air-cooled condenser for refrigeration systems which utilizes multiple small parallel gas flow passages in a flat configuration with fin surfaces bonded between the parallel gas passages.

**MINISPLIT AIR CONDITIONERS AND HEAT PUMPS** are air conditioner or heat pump systems that have a single outdoor section and one or more indoor sections. The indoor sections cycle on and off in unison in response to a single indoor thermostat.

**MODELING ASSUMPTIONS** are the conditions (such as weather conditions, thermostat settings and schedules, internal gain schedules, etc.) that are used for calculating a building's annual energy consumption as specified in the Alternative Calculation Methods (ACM) Approval Manuals.

**MULTIPLE-SPLIT AIR CONDITIONERS AND HEAT PUMPS** are air conditioner or heat pump systems that have two or more indoor sections. The indoor sections operate independently and can be used to condition multiple zones in response to multiple indoor thermostats.

**MULTIPLE ZONE SYSTEM** is an air distribution system that supplies air to more than one Space Conditioning Zone, each of which has one or more devices (such as dampers, cooling coils, and heating coils) that regulate airflow, cooling, or heating capacity to the zone.

**NATURAL GAS AVAILABILITY.** For newly constructed buildings, natural gas is available if a gas service line can be connected to the site without a gas main extension. For addition and alteration, natural gas is available if a gas service line is connected to the existing building.

**NEEA** is the Northwest Energy Efficiency Alliance.

**NEEA ADVANCED WATER HEATER SPECIFICATION** is the Northwest Energy Efficiency Alliance (NEEA) specification version 6.0 for heat pump water heaters.

**NET EXHAUST FLOW RATE** is the exhaust flow rate for a hood, minus any internal discharge makeup air flow rate.

**NEWLY CONDITIONED SPACE** is any space being converted from unconditioned to directly conditioned or indirectly conditioned space. Newly conditioned space must comply with the requirements for an addition. See Section 141.0 for nonresidential occupancies and Section 150.2 for residential occupancies.

**NEWLY CONSTRUCTED BUILDING** is a building that has never been used or occupied for any purpose.

**NONDUCTED SYSTEM** is an air conditioner or heat pump that: is permanently installed; directly heats or cools air within the conditioned space; and uses one or more indoor coils that are mounted on walls or ceilings within the conditioned space. The system may be of a modular design that allows for combining multiple outdoor coils and compressors to create one unified system.

**NONRESIDENTIAL BUILDING** is any building which is identified in the California Building Code Table; Description of Occupancy as Group A, B, E, F, H, I, M, or S; and is a U; as defined by Part 2 of Title 24 of the California Code of Regulation.

**NOTE:** Requirements for high-rise residential buildings and hotels/motels are included in the nonresidential sections of Part 6.

**NONRESIDENTIAL BUILDING OCCUPANCY TYPES** are building types in which a minimum of 90 percent of the building floor area functions as one of the following, which do not qualify as any other Building Occupancy Types more specifically defined in Section 100.1, and which do not have a combined total of more than 10 percent of the area functioning of any Nonresidential Function Areas specifically defined in Section 100.1:

**Assembly Building** is a building with meeting halls in which people gather for civic, social, or recreational activities. These include civic centers, convention centers and auditoriums.

**Commercial and Industrial Storage Building** is a building with building floor areas used for storing items.

**Financial Institution Building** is a building with floor areas used by an institution which collects funds from the public and places them in financial assets, such as deposits, loans, and bonds.

**Industrial/Manufacturing Facility Building** is a building with building floor area used for performing a craft, assembly or manufacturing operation.

**Grocery Store Building** is a building with building floor areas used for the display and sale of food.

**Gymnasium Building** is a building with building floor areas used for physical exercises and recreational sport events and activities.

**Library Building** is a building with building floor area used for repository of literary materials, and for reading reference such as books, periodicals, newspapers, pamphlets and prints.

**Office Building** is a building of CBC Group B Occupancy with building floor areas in which business, clerical or professional activities are conducted.

**Parking Garage Building** is a building with building floor areas used for parking vehicles, and consists of at least a roof over the parking area enclosed with walls on all sides. The building includes areas for vehicle maneuvering to reach designated parking spaces. If the roof of a parking structure is also used for parking, the section without an overhead roof is considered an outdoor parking lot instead of a parking garage.

**Religious Facility Building** is a building with building floor areas used for assembly of people to worship.

**Restaurant Building** is a building with building floor areas in which food and drink are prepared and served to customers in return for money.

**Retail Store Building** is a building with building floor areas used for the display and sale of merchandise except food.

**School Building** is a building used by an educational institution. The building floor area can include classrooms or educational laboratories, and may include an auditorium, gymnasium, kitchen, library, multi-purpose room, cafeteria, student union, or workroom. A maintenance or storage building is not a school building.

**Sports Arena Building** is a building with building floor areas used for public viewing of sporting events and activities. Sports arenas are classified according to the number of spectators they are able to accommodate, as follows:

Class I Facility is used for competition play for 5000 or more spectators.

Class II Facility is used for competition play for up to 5000 spectators.

Class III Facility is used for competition play for up to 2000 spectators.

Class IV Facility is normally used for recreational play and there is limited or no provision for spectators.

**Motion Picture Theater Building** is a building with building floor areas used for showing motion pictures to audiences.

**Performance Arts Theater Building** is a building with building floor areas used for showing performing arts that include plays, music or dance to audiences.

**NONRESIDENTIAL COMPLIANCE MANUAL** is the manual developed by the Commission, under Section 25402.1(e) of the Public Resources Code, to aid designers, builders, and contractors in meeting the energy efficiency requirements for nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel buildings.

**NONRESIDENTIAL FUNCTION AREAS** are those areas, rooms, and spaces within Nonresidential Buildings which fall within the following particular definitions, and are defined according to the most specific definition:

**Aisle Way** is the passage or walkway between storage racks permanently anchored to the floor in a Commercial or Industrial Storage Building, where the racks are used to store materials such as goods and merchandise.

**Atrium** is a large-volume indoor space created by openings between two or more stories but is not used for an enclosed stairway, elevator hoistway, escalator opening, or utility shaft for plumbing, electrical, air-conditioning or other equipment.

**Audience Seating Area** is a room or area with fixed seats for public meetings or gatherings.

**Auditorium Area** is a room or area with a stage and fixed seats used for public meetings or gatherings.

**Auto Repair / Maintenance Area** is an area used to repair or maintain automotive equipment and/or vehicles.

**Beauty Salon Area** is a room or area in which the primary activity is manicures, pedicures, facials, or the cutting or styling of hair.

**Civic Meeting Place Area** is a space in a government building designed or used for public debate, discussion, or public meetings of governmental bodies.

**Classroom, Lecture, Training, Vocational Area** is a room or area where an audience or class receives instruction.

**Commercial and Industrial Storage Area** includes the following:

**Warehouse** is a room or areas used for storing of items such as goods, merchandise and materials.

**Shipping & Handling** is a room or areas used for packing, wrapping, labelling and shipping out goods, merchandise and materials.

**Commercial and Industrial Storage Area (refrigerated)** is a room or area used for storing items where mechanical refrigeration is used to maintain the space temperature at 55° F or less.

**Convention, Conference, Multipurpose and Meeting Area** are rooms or areas that are designed or used for meetings, conventions or events, and that have neither fixed seating nor fixed staging.

**Copy Room** is a room or area used for copying, scanning, or binding documents.

**Corridor Area** is a passageway or route into which compartments or rooms open.

**Dining** Areas include the following:

**Bar/Lounge and Fine Dining: Bar/Lounge** is a room or area with wait staff serve patrons with liquor, cocktails, wine and beer in a relaxed atmosphere, usually with tables and chairs.

**Fine Dining** is a room or area with wait staff serve patrons with meals in an elegant and formal atmosphere.

**Cafeteria/Fast Food** is a room or area where customers pick up their food at a counter and there is little or no wait staff or table service.

**Family Dining** is a room or area with wait staff serve patrons with meals in a causal atmosphere.

**Electrical/Mechanical/Telephone Room** is a room in which the building's electrical switchbox or control panels, telephone switchbox, and/or HVAC controls or equipment is located.

**Exercise/Fitness Center and Gymnasium Area** is a room or area equipped for gymnastics, exercise equipment, or indoor athletic activities.

**Financial Transaction Area** is a room or area used by an institution which collects funds from the public and places them in financial assets, such as deposits, loans and bonds, and includes tellers, work stations, and customers' waiting areas; to complete financial transactions. Financial transaction areas do not include private offices, hallways, restrooms, or other support areas.

**General Commercial and Industrial Work Area** is a room or area in which an art, craft, assembly or manufacturing operation is performed. Lighting installed in these areas is classified as follows:

**High bay:** Where the luminaires are 25 feet or more above the floor.

**Low bay:** Where the luminaires are less than 25 feet above the floor.

**Precision:** Where visual tasks of small size or fine detail such as electronics assembly, fine woodworking, metal lathe operation, fine hand painting and finishing, egg processing operations, or tasks of similar visual difficulty are performed.

**Healthcare Facilities** may have a room or area as follows:

**Exam/Treatment Room** is a room or area that does not provide overnight patient care and that is used to provide physical and mental care through medical, dental, or psychological examination and treatment, including laboratories and treatment spaces.

**Imaging Room** is a diagnostic room and area for application and review of results from imaging technologies including x-ray, ultrasound, computerized tomography (CT), and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI).

**Medical Supply Room** is a room or area used for storing medical supplies.

**Nursery** is a room or area for providing medical care for newly born infants.

**Nurse's Station** is a room or area where health care staff work when not directly interacting with patients.

**Operating Room** is a room or area where surgical operations are carried out in a sterile environment. This category also applies to veterinary operating rooms.

**Patient Room** is a room or area that occupied by one or more patients during a stay in a healthcare facility or hospital.

**Physical Therapy Room** is a room or area for providing physical therapy treatment.

**Recovery Room** is a room or area which is equipped with apparatus for meeting postoperative emergencies and in which surgical patients are kept during the immediate postoperative period for care and recovery from anesthesia.

**Hotel Function Area** is a hotel room or area such as a hotel ballroom, meeting room, exhibit hall or conference room, together with pre-function areas and other spaces ancillary to its function.

**Kitchen/Food Preparation Area** is a room or area with cooking facilities or where food is prepared.

**Laundry Area** is a room or area primarily designed or used for laundering activities.

**Library Area** is a room or area primarily designed or used as a repository for literary materials, such as books, periodicals, newspapers, pamphlets and prints, kept for reading or reference.

**Reading Area** is a room or area in a library containing tables, chairs, or desks for patrons to use for the purpose of reading books and other reference documents. Library reading areas include reading, circulation, and checkout areas. Reading areas do not include private offices, meeting, photocopy, or other rooms not used specifically for reading by library patrons.

**Stack Area** is a room or area in a library with grouping of shelving sections. Stack aisles include pedestrian paths located in stack areas.

**Main Entry Lobby** is the contiguous area in buildings including hotel/motel that is directly located by the main entrance of the building through which persons must pass, including any ancillary reception, waiting and seating areas.

**Locker Room** is a room or area for changing clothing, sometimes equipped with lockers.

**Lounge/Breakroom or Waiting Area** is a room or area in which people sit, wait and relax.

**Mall** is a roofed or covered common pedestrian area within a mall building that serves as access for two or more tenants.

**Multipurpose Room** is a room which can be used for multipurpose activities such as meetings, instructional activities and social gatherings. Multipurpose rooms are typically found in offices, schools, convention centers, and assisted living facilities.

**Museum** Areas include the following:

**Exhibit/Display** is a room or area in a museum that has for its primary purpose exhibitions, having neither fixed seating nor fixed staging. An exhibit does not include a gallery or other place where art is for sale. An exhibit does not include a lobby, conference room, or other occupancies where the primary function is not exhibitions.

**Restoration Room** is a room or area in which the primary function is the care of works of artistic, historical, or scientific value. A restoration does not include a gallery or other place where art is for sale. A restoration does not include a lobby, conference room, or other occupancies where the primary function is not the care or exhibit of works of artistic, historical, or scientific value.

**Office Area** is a room, area in a building of CBC Group B Occupancy in which business, clerical or professional activities are conducted.

**Parking Garage Areas** include the following:

**Parking Zone** in a Parking Garage is used for the purpose of parking and maneuvering of vehicles on a single floor. Parking areas include sloping floors of a parking garage. Parking areas do not include Daylight Transition Zones, Dedicated Ramps, or the roof of a Parking Garage, which may be present in a Parking Garage.

**Daylight Adaptation Zone** in a Parking Garage is the interior path of travel for vehicles to enter a parking garage as needed to transition from exterior daylight levels to interior light levels. Daylight Transition Zones only include the path of vehicular travel and do not include adjacent Parking Areas.

**Dedicated Ramps** in Parking Garages are driveways specifically for the purpose of moving vehicles between floors of a parking garage and which have no adjacent parking. Dedicated ramps do not include sloping floors of a parking structure, which are considered Parking Areas.

**Pharmacy Area** is a room or area where medicinal drugs are dispensed and sold, usually in a retail store.

**Religious Worship Area** is a room or area in which the primary function is for an assembly of people to worship. Religious worship does not include classrooms, offices, or other areas in which the primary function is not for an assembly of people to worship.

**Restroom** is a room providing personal facilities such as toilets and washbasins.

**Retail Sales Areas** include the following:

**Grocery Sales** is a room or area that has as its primary purpose about the sale of foodstuffs requiring additional preparation prior to consumption.

**Retail Merchandise Sales** is a room or area in which the primary activity is the sale of merchandise.

**Fitting Room** is a room or area that the retail customers try out clothing before purchasing.

**Server Room** is a room smaller than 500 square feet, within a larger building, in which networking equipment and Information Technology (IT) server equipment is housed, and a minimum of five IT servers are installed in frame racks.

**Server Aisle** is an aisle of racks of Information Technology (IT) server equipment in a Server Room. While networking equipment may also be housed on these racks, it is largely a room to manage server equipment.

**Playing Area for Sports Arena** is an area where sports are played in front an audience.

**Scientific Laboratory Area** is a room or area where research, experiments, and measurement in medical and physical sciences are performed requiring examination of fine details. The area may include workbenches, countertops, scientific instruments, and associated floor spaces. Scientific laboratory does not refer to film, computer, and other laboratories where scientific experiments are not performed.

**Stairs** is a series of steps providing passage for persons from one level of a building to another, including escalators.

**Stairwell** is a vertical shaft in which stairs are located.

**Support Area** is a room or area used as a passageway, utility room, storage space, or other type of space associated with or secondary to the function of an occupancy that is listed in these regulations.

**Tenant Lease Area** is a room or area in a building intended for lease for which a specific tenant is not identified at the time of building permit application.

**Theater Areas** include the following:

**Motion Picture Theater** is an assembly room or area with rows of seats for the showing of motion pictures.

**Performance Theater** is an assembly room or area with rows of seats for the viewing of dramatic performances, lectures, musical events and similar live performances.

**Transportation Function Areas** include the following:

**Baggage Area** is a room or area in a transportation facility such as an airport where the travelers reclaim their baggage.

**Ticketing Area** is a room or area in a transportation facility such as an airport or a train station where travelers purchase tickets, check in baggage, or inquire about travel information. **Videoconferencing Studio** is a room or area with permanently installed videoconferencing cameras, audio equipment, and playback equipment for both audio-based and video-based two-way communication between local and remote sites.

**NONSTANDARD PART LOAD VALUE (NPLV)** is a single- number part-load efficiency figure of merit for chillers referenced to conditions other than IPLV conditions. (See "integrated part load value.")

**NORTH-FACING** (See "orientation.")

**OCCUPANCY** is the purpose for which a building or part thereof is used or intended to be used.

**OCCUPANCY, HUMAN** is any occupancy that is intended primarily for human activities.

**OCCUPANCY GROUP** is a classification of occupancy defined in Chapter 3 of the CBC (Title 24, Part 2).

**OCCUPANCY TYPE** is a description of occupancy than is more specific than occupancy group and that relates to determining the amount of lighting, ventilation, or other services needed for that portion of the building.

**OCCUPIABLE SPACE** is any enclosed space that is intended for human occupancy, including all habitable spaces as well as bathrooms, toilets, closets, halls, storage and utility areas, laundry areas, and similar areas. (See also "habitable space".)

**OCCUPIED STANDBY MODE** is when a zone is scheduled to be occupied and an occupant sensor indicates zero population within the zone.

**ONLINE CAPACITY** is the total combined capacity in actual cubic feet per minute of compressed air at a given pressure from all online compressors.

**ONLINE COMPRESSORS** are all the compressors that are physically connected to compressed air piping and are available to serve peak load. Online compressors do not include back up compressors whose only purpose is to be available when an online compressor fails.

**OPEN COOLING TOWER** is an open, or direct contact, cooling tower which exposes water directly to the cooling atmosphere, thereby transferring the source heat load from the water directly to the air by a combination of heat and mass transfer.

**OPENADR 2.0a** is the OpenADR Alliance document titled, "OpenADR 2.0 Profile Specification A Profile," 2011.

**OPENADR 2.0b** is the OpenADR Alliance document titled, "OpenADR 2.0 Profile Specification B Profile," 2015.

**OPERABLE FENESTRATION** is designed to be opened or closed.

**OPTIMUM START CONTROLS** are controls that are designed to automatically adjust the start time of a space conditioning system each day with the intent of bringing the space to desired occupied temperature levels at the beginning of scheduled occupancy.

**OPTIMUM STOP CONTROLS** are controls that are designed to setup or setback thermostat setpoints before scheduled unoccupied periods based upon the thermal lag and acceptable drift in space temperature that is within comfort limits.

**OSHPD** is the California Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development

**ORIENTATION, CARDINAL** is one of the four principal directional indicators, north, east, south, and west, which are marked on a compass, also called cardinal directions.

**ORIENTATION, EAST-FACING** is oriented to within 45 degrees of true east, including 45°00'00" south of east (SE), but excluding 45°00'00" north of east (NE).

**ORIENTATION, NORTH-FACING** is oriented to within 45 degrees of true north, including 45°00'00" east of north (NE), but excluding 45°00'00" west of north (NW).

**ORIENTATION, SOUTH-FACING** is oriented to within 45 degrees of true south including 45°00'00" west of south (SW), but excluding 45°00'00" east of south (SE).

**ORIENTATION, WEST-FACING** is oriented to within 45 degrees of true west, including 45°00'00" north of due west (NW), but excluding 45°00'00" south of west (SW).

**OUTDOOR AIR (Outside air)** is air taken from outdoors and not previously circulated in the building.

**OUTDOOR LIGHTING** is electrical lighting used to illuminate outdoor areas.

**OUTDOOR AREAS** are areas external to a building. These include but are not limited to the following areas:

**Building entrance way** is the external area of any operable doorway in or out of a building, including overhead doors. These areas serve any doorway, set of doors (including elevator doors such as in parking garages), turnstile, vestibule, or other form of portal that is ordinarily used to gain access to the building by its users and occupants. Where buildings have separate one-way doors to enter and to leave, this also includes any area serving any doors ordinarily used to leave the building.

**Building façade** is the exterior surfaces of a building, not including horizontal roofing, signs, and surfaces not visible from any public accessible viewing location.

**Canopy** is a permanent structure, other than a parking garage area, consisting of a roof and supporting building elements, with the area beneath at least partially open to the elements. A canopy may be freestanding or attached to surrounding structures. A canopy roof may serve as the floor of a structure above.

**Carport** is a covered, open-sided structure designed or used primarily for the purpose of parking vehicles, having a roof over the parking area. Typically, carports are free-standing or projected from the side of the building and are only two or fewer car lengths deep. A Carport is not a Garage.

**Hardscape** is the area of an improvement to a site that is paved or has other structural features such as curbs, plazas, entries, parking lots, site roadways, driveways, walkways, sidewalks, bikeways, water features and pools, storage or service yards, loading docks, amphitheaters, outdoor sales lots, and private monuments and statuary.

**Outdoor sales frontage** is the portion of the perimeter of an outdoor sales area immediately adjacent to a public street, road, or sidewalk.

**Outdoor sales lot** is an uncovered paved area used exclusively for the display of vehicles, equipment or other merchandise for sale. All internal and adjacent access drives, walkway areas, employee and customer parking areas, vehicle service or storage areas are not outdoor sales lot areas, but are considered hardscape.

**Parking lot** is an uncovered area for the purpose of parking vehicles. Parking lot is a type of hardscape.

**Paved area** is an area that is paved with concrete, asphalt, stone, brick, gravel, or other improved wearing surface, including the curb.

**Principal viewing location** is anywhere along the adjacent highway, street, road or sidewalk running parallel to an outdoor sales frontage.

**Public monuments** are statuary, buildings, structures, and/or hardscape on public land.

**Outdoor Sales canopy** is a canopy specifically to cover and protect an outdoor sales area.

**Stairways and Ramps.** Stairways are one or more flights of stairs with the necessary landings and platforms connecting them to form a continuous and uninterrupted passage from one level to another. An exterior stairway is open on at least one side, except for required structural columns, beams, handrails and guards. The adjoining open areas shall be either yards, courts or public ways. The other sides of the exterior stairway need not be open. Ramps are walking surfaces with a slope steeper than 5 percent.

**Vehicle service station** is a gasoline, natural gas, diesel, or other fuel dispensing station.

**OUTDOOR LIGHTING ZONE** is a geographic area designated by the California Energy Commission in accordance with Part 1, Section 10-114, that determines requirements for outdoor lighting, including lighting power densities and specific control, equipment or performance requirements. Lighting zones are numbered LZ0, LZ1, LZ2, LZ3 and LZ4.

**OVERHANG** is a contiguous opaque surface, oriented horizontally and projecting outward horizontally from an exterior vertical surface.

**OVERHANG PROJECTION** is the horizontal distance, measured outward horizontally from the surface of exposed exterior glazing at the head of a window to the outward edge of an overhang.

**OVERHANG RISE** is the vertical distance between the projected edge of an overhang and the sill of the vertical fenestration below it.

**PART 1** means Part 1 of Title 24 of the California Code of Regulations.

**PART 6** means Part 6 of Title 24 of the California Code of Regulations.

**PART LOAD OPERATION** occurs when a system or device is operating below its maximum rated capacity.

**PARTICLE SIZE EFFICIENCY** is the fraction (percentage) of particles that are captured on air filter equipment as determined during rating tests conducted in accordance with ASHRAE Standard 52.2 or AHRI Standard 680. Particle Size Efficiency is measured in three particle size ranges: 0.3-1.0, 1.0-3.0, 3.0-10 microns.

**POOLS, ANSI/NSPI-5** is the American National Standards Institute and National Spa and Pool Institute document titled "American National Standard for Residential Inground Swimming Pools" 2003 (ANSI/NSPI-5 2003).

**POOLS, AUXILIARY POOL LOADS** are features or devices that circulate pool water in addition to that required for pool filtration, including, but not limited to, solar pool heating systems, filter backwashing, pool cleaners, waterfalls, fountains, and spas.

**POOLS, BACKWASH VALVE** is a diverter valve designed to backwash filters located between the circulation pump and the filter, including, but not limited to, slide, push-pull, multi-port, and full-flow valves.

**POOLS, MULTISPEED PUMP** is a pump capable of operating at two or more speeds and includes two-speed and variable-speed pumps.

**POOLS, NSF/ANSI 50** is the NSF International (formerly National Sanitation Foundation) Standard and American National Standards Institute document titled “Circulation System Components and Related Materials for Swimming Pools, Spas/Hot Tubs” 2016 (NSF/ANSI 50 – 2016).

**POOLS, RESIDENTIAL** are permanently installed residential in-ground swimming pools intended for use by a single-family home for noncommercial purposes and with dimensions as defined in ANSI/NSPI-5.

**PRESSURE BOUNDARY** is the primary air enclosure boundary separating indoor and outdoor air. For example, a volume that has more leakage to the outside than to the conditioned space would be considered outside the pressure boundary. Exposed earth in a crawlspace or basement shall not be considered part of the pressure boundary.

**PRIMARY AIRFLOW** is the airflow (cfm or L/s) supplied to the zone from the air-handling unit at which the outdoor air intake is located. It includes outdoor intake air and recirculated air from that air-handling unit but does not include air transferred or air recirculated to the zone by other means.

**PRIMARY STORAGE** is compressed air storage located upstream of the distribution system and any pressure flow regulators.

**PROCESS** is an activity or treatment that is not related to the space conditioning, lighting, service water heating, or ventilating of a building as it relates to human occupancy.

**PROCESS BOILER** is a type of boiler with a capacity (rated maximum input) of 300,000 Btus per hour (Btu/h) or more that serves a process.

**PROCESS, COVERED** is a process that is regulated under Part 6, Section 120.6 and 140.9, which includes computer rooms, data centers, elevators, escalators and moving walkways, laboratories, enclosed parking garages, commercial kitchens, refrigerated warehouses, commercial refrigeration, compressed air systems, and process boilers.

**PROCESS, EXEMPT** is a process that is not a covered process regulated under Part 6.

**PROCESS LOAD** is an energy load resulting from a process.

**PROCESS SPACE** is a nonresidential space that is designed to be thermostatically controlled to maintain a process environment temperature less than 55° F or to maintain a process environment temperature greater than 90° F for the whole space that the system serves, or that is a space with a space-conditioning system designed and controlled to be incapable of operating at temperatures above 55° F or incapable of operating at temperatures below 90° F at design conditions.

**PROPOSED DESIGN BUILDING** is a building that is simulated by Commission-approved compliance software to determine the energy consumption resulting from all of the characteristics and energy consuming features that are actually proposed for a building, as specified by the Alternative Calculation Method (ACM) Approval Manual.

**PUBLIC AREAS** are spaces generally open to the public at large, customers or congregation members, or similar spaces where occupants need to be prevented from controlling lights for safety, security, or business reasons.

**R-VALUE** is the measure of the thermal resistance of insulation or any material or building component expressed in ft<sup>2</sup>-hr-°F/Btu.

**RADIANT BARRIER** is a highly reflective, low emitting material installed at the underside surface of the roof deck and the inside surface of gable ends or other exterior vertical surfaces in attics to reduce solar heat gain.

**RAISED FLOOR** is a floor (partition) over a crawl space, or an unconditioned space, or ambient air.

**READILY ACCESSIBLE** is capable of being reached quickly for operation, repair or inspection, without requiring climbing or removing obstacles, or resorting to access equipment.

**RECOOL** is the cooling of air that has been previously heated by space-conditioning equipment or systems serving the same building.

**RECOVERED ENERGY** is energy used in a building that (1) is recovered from space conditioning, service water heating, lighting, or process equipment after the energy has performed its original function; (2) provides space conditioning, service water heating, or lighting; and (3) would otherwise be wasted.

**REFERENCE APPENDICES** is the support document for the Building Energy Efficiency Standards and the ACM Approval Manuals. The document consists of three sections: the Reference Joint Appendices (JA), the Reference Residential Appendices (RA), and the Reference Nonresidential Appendices (NA).

**REFLECTANCE, SOLAR** is the ratio of the reflected solar flux to the incident solar flux.

**REFRIGERATED CASE** is a manufactured commercial refrigerator or freezer, including but not limited to display cases, reach-in cabinets, meat cases, and frozen food and soda fountain units.

**REFRIGERATED SPACE** is a space constructed for storage or handling of products, where mechanical refrigeration is used to maintain the space temperature at 55° F or less.

**REFRIGERATED WAREHOUSE** is a building or a space greater than or equal to 3,000 square feet constructed for storage or handling of products, where mechanical refrigeration is used to maintain the space temperature at 55° F or less.

**REHEAT** is the heating of air that has been previously cooled by cooling equipment or supplied by an economizer.

**RELOCATABLE PUBLIC SCHOOL BUILDING** is a relocatable building as defined by Title 24, Part 1, Section 4-314, which is subject to Title 24, Part 1, Chapter 4, Group 1.

**REPAIR** is the reconstruction or renewal for the purpose of maintenance of any component, system, or equipment of an existing building. Repairs shall not increase the preexisting energy consumption of the repaired component, system, or equipment. Replacement of any component, system, or equipment for which there are requirements in the Standards is considered an alteration and not a repair.

**RESIDENTIAL BUILDING** (See “high-rise residential building” and “low-rise residential building.”)

**RESIDENTIAL COMPLIANCE MANUAL** is the manual developed by the Commission, under Section 25402.1 of the Public Resources Code, to aid designers, builders, and contractors in meeting Energy Efficiency Standards for low-rise residential buildings.

**RESIDENTIAL SPACE TYPE** is one of the following:

**Bathroom** is a room or area containing a sink used for personal hygiene, toilet, shower, or a tub.

**Closet** is a nonhabitable room used for the storage of linens, household supplies, clothing, non-perishable food, or similar uses, and which is not a hallway or passageway.

**Garage** is a nonhabitable building or portion of building, attached to or detached from a residential dwelling unit, in which motor vehicles are parked.

**Kitchen** is a room or area used for cooking, food storage and preparation and washing dishes, including associated counter tops and cabinets, refrigerator, stove, ovens, and floor area.

**Laundry** is a nonhabitable room or space which contains plumbing and electrical connections for a washing machine or clothes dryer.

**Storage building** is a nonhabitable detached building used for the storage of tools, garden equipment, or miscellaneous items.

**Utility room** is a nonhabitable room or building which contains only HVAC, plumbing, or electrical controls or equipment; and which is not a bathroom, closet, garage, or laundry room.

**RESNET 380** is the Residential Energy Services Network document titled “Standard for Testing Airtightness of Building Enclosures, Airtightness of Heating and Cooling Air Distribution Systems, and Airflow of Mechanical Ventilation Systems” 2016 (ANSI/RESNET/ICC 380-2016).

**ROOF** is the outside cover of a building or structure including the structural supports, decking, and top layer that is exposed to the outside with a slope less than 60 degrees from the horizontal.

**ROOF, LOW-SLOPED** is a roof that has a ratio of rise to run of less than 2:12 (9.5 degrees from the horizontal).

**ROOF, STEEP-SLOPED** is a roof that has a ratio of rise to run of greater than or equal to 2:12 (9.5 degrees from the horizontal).

**ROOFING PRODUCT** is the top layer of the roof that is exposed to the outside, which has properties including but not limited to solar reflectance, thermal emittance, and mass.

**ROOF RECOVER BOARD** is a rigid type board, installed directly below a low-sloped roof membrane, with or without above deck thermal insulation, to: (a) improve a roof system's compressive strength, (b) physically separate

the roof membrane from the thermal insulation, or (c) physically separate a new roof covering from an underlying roof membrane as part of a roof overlay project.

**RUNOUT** is piping that is no more than 12 feet long and connects to a fixture or an individual terminal unit.

**SAE J1772** is the SAE International document titled “SAE Electric Vehicle and Plug in Hybrid Electric Vehicle Conductive Charge Coupler” (SAE J1772\_201710).

**SATURATED CONDENSING TEMPERATURE (also known as CONDENSING TEMPERATURE)** is: (a) for single component and azeotropic refrigerants, the saturation temperature corresponding to the refrigerant pressure at the condenser entrance, or (b) for zeotropic refrigerants, the arithmetic average of the Dew Point and Bubble Point temperatures corresponding to the refrigerant pressure at the condenser entrance.

**SCIENTIFIC EQUIPMENT** is measurement, testing or metering equipment used for scientific research or investigation, including but not limited to manufactured cabinets, carts and racks.

**SEASONAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY RATIO (SEER)** is the total cooling output of an air conditioner in Btu during its normal usage period for cooling divided by the total electrical energy input in watt-hours during the same period, as determined using the applicable test method in the Appliance Efficiency Regulations.

**SERVICE WATER HEATING** is heating of water for sanitary purposes for human occupancy, other than for comfort heating.

**SHADING** is the protection from heat gains because of direct solar radiation by permanently attached exterior devices or building elements, interior shading devices, glazing material, or adherent materials.

**SHADING COEFFICIENT (SC)** is the ratio of the solar heat gain through a fenestration product to the solar heat gain through an unshaded 1/8-inch-thick clear double strength glass under the same set of conditions. For nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel buildings, this shall exclude the effects of mullions, frames, sashes, and interior and exterior shading devices.

**SIDELIT DAYLIT ZONE, PRIMARY** is the area in plan view directly adjacent to each vertical glazing, one window head height deep into the area, and window width plus 0.5 times window head height wide on each side of the rough opening of the window, minus any area on a plan beyond a permanent obstruction that is 6 feet or taller as measured from the floor.

**SIDELIT DAYLIT ZONE, SECONDARY** is the area in plan view directly adjacent to each vertical glazing, two window head heights deep into the area, and window width plus 0.5 times window head height wide on each side of the rough opening of the window, minus any area on a plan beyond a permanent obstruction that is 6 feet or taller as measured from the floor.

**SIGN** definitions include the following:

**Electronic Message Center (EMC)** is a pixilated image producing electronically controlled sign formed by any light source. Bare lamps used to create linear lighting animation sequences through the use of chaser circuits, also known as “chaser lights” are not considered an EMC.

**Illuminated face** is a side of a sign that has the message on it. For an exit sign it is the side that has the word “EXIT” on it.

**Sign, cabinet** is an internally illuminated sign consisting of frame and face, with a continuous translucent message panel, also referred to as a panel sign.

**Sign, channel letter** is an internally illuminated sign with multiple components, each built in the shape of an individual three dimensional letters or symbol that are each independently illuminated, with a separate translucent panel over the light source for each element.

**Sign, double-faced** is a sign with two parallel opposing faces.

**Sign, externally illuminated** is any sign or a billboard that is lit by a light source that is external to the sign directed towards and shining on the face of the sign.

**Sign, internally illuminated** is a sign that is illuminated by a light source that is contained inside the sign where the message area is luminous, including cabinet signs and channel letter signs.

**Sign, traffic** is a sign for traffic direction, warning, and roadway identification.

**Sign, unfiltered** is a sign where the viewer perceives the light source directly as the message, without any colored filter between the viewer and the light source, including neon, cold cathode, and LED signs.

**SINGLE FAMILY RESIDENCE** is a building that is of Occupancy Group R-3.

**SINGLE PACKAGE VERTICAL AIR CONDITIONER (SPVAC):** Is a type of air-cooled small or large commercial package air-conditioning and heating equipment; factory assembled as a single package having its major components arranged vertically, which is an encased combination of cooling and optional heating components; is intended for exterior mounting on, adjacent interior to, or through an outside wall; and is powered by single or three-phase current. It may contain separate indoor grille, outdoor louvers, various ventilation options, indoor free air discharge, ductwork, wall plenum, or sleeve. Heating components may include electrical resistance, steam, hot water, gas, or no heat but may not include reverse cycle refrigeration as a heating means.

**SINGLE PACKAGE VERTICAL HEAT PUMP (SPVHP):** Is an SPVAC that utilizes reverse cycle refrigeration as its primary heat source, with secondary supplemental heating by means of electrical resistance, steam, hot water, or gas.

**SINGLE ZONE SYSTEM** is an air distribution system that supplies air to one thermal zone.

**SITE-BUILT** is fenestration designed to be field-glazed or field assembled units using specific factory cut or otherwise factory formed framing and glazing units that are manufactured with the intention of being assembled at the construction site. These include storefront systems, curtain walls and atrium roof systems.

**SITE SOLAR ENERGY** is thermal, chemical, or electrical energy derived from direct conversion of incident solar radiation at the building site.

**SKYLIGHT** is fenestration installed on a roof less than 60 degrees from the horizontal.

**SKYLIGHT AREA** is the area of the rough opening for the skylight.

**SKYLIGHT TYPE** is one of the following three types of skylights: glass mounted on a curb, glass not mounted on a curb or plastic (assumed to be mounted on a curb).

**SKYLIT DAYLIT ZONE** is the rough area in plan view under each skylight, plus 0.7 times the average ceiling height in each direction from the edge of the rough opening of the skylight, minus any area on a plan beyond a permanent obstruction that is taller than one-half the distance from the floor to the bottom of the skylight. The bottom of the skylight is measured from the bottom of the skylight well for skylights having wells, or the bottom of the skylight if no skylight well exists. For the purpose of determining the skylit daylit zone, the geometric shape of the skylit daylit zone shall be identical to the plan view geometric shape of the rough opening of the skylight; for example, for a rectangular skylight the skylit daylit zone plan area shall be rectangular, and for a circular skylight the skylit daylit zone plan area shall be circular. For skylight located in an atrium, the skylit daylit zone shall include the floor area directly under the atrium, and the area of the top floor that is directly under the skylight, plus 0.7 times the average ceiling height of the top floor, in each direction from the edge of the rough opening of the skylight, minus any area on a plan beyond a permanent obstruction that is taller than one-half the distance from the top floor to the bottom of the skylight.

**SMACNA** is the Sheet Metal and Air-Conditioning Contractors National Association.

**SMACNA HVAC DUCT CONSTRUCTION STANDARDS** is the Sheet Metal Contractors' National Association document "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible - 3rd Edition," 2006 (2006ANSI/SMACNA-006-2006 HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible 3rd Edition).

**SMACNA RESIDENTIAL COMFORT SYSTEM INSTALLATION STANDARDS** is the Sheet Metal Contractors' National Association document titled "Residential Comfort System Installation Standards, Eighth Edition." (2016).

**SOCIAL SERVICES BUILDING** is a space where public assistance and social services are provided to individuals or families.

**SOLAR ELECTRIC GENERATION SYSTEM** or **PHOTOVOLTAIC SYSTEM** is the complete set of all components for converting sunlight into electricity through the photovoltaic process, including the array of panels, inverter(s) and the balance of system components required to enable the system to effectively deliver power to reduce a building's consumption of electricity from the utility grid.

**SOLAR REFLECTANCE INDEX (SRI)** is a measure of the roof's ability to reject solar heat which includes both reflectance and emittance.

**SOLAR SAVINGS FRACTION (SSF)** is the fraction of domestic hot water demand provided by a solar water-heating system.

**SOLAR ZONE** is a section of the roof designated and reserved for the future installation of a solar electric or solar thermal system.

**SOUTH-FACING** (See "orientation.")

**SPA** is a vessel that contains heated water in which humans can immerse themselves, is not a pool, and is not a bathtub.

**SPACE-CONDITIONING SYSTEM** is a system that provides heating, or cooling within or associated with conditioned spaces in a building, and may incorporate use of components such as chillers/compressors, fluid distribution systems (e.g., air ducts, water piping, refrigerant piping), pumps, air handlers, cooling and heating coils, air or water cooled condensers, economizers, terminal units, and associated controls.

**STANDARD DESIGN BUILDING** is a building that is automatically simulated by Commission-approved compliance software to establish the Energy Budget that is the maximum energy consumption allowed by a Proposed Design Building to comply with the Title 24 Building Energy Efficiency Standards. The Standard Design building is simulated using the same location and having the same characteristics of the Proposed Design building, but assuming minimal compliance with the mandatory and prescriptive requirements that are applicable to the proposed building, as specified by the Alternative Calculation Methods Approval Manual.

**STORAGE, COLD**, is a storage area within a refrigerated warehouse where space temperatures are maintained at or above 32° F.

**STORAGE, FROZEN** is a storage area within a refrigerated warehouse where the space temperatures are maintained below 32° F.

**TENANT SPACE** is a portion of a building occupied by a tenant.

**THERMAL MASS** is solid or liquid material with a high overall heat capacity to store energy for heating or cooling requirements.

**THERMAL RESISTANCE (R)** is a measurement of the resistance over time of a material or building component to the passage of heating ( $\text{hr} \times \text{ft}^2 \times \text{°F}$ )/Btu.

**THERMOSTAT** is an automatic control device or system used to maintain temperature at a fixed or adjustable setpoint.

**THERMOSTATIC EXPANSION VALVE (TXV)** is a refrigerant metering valve, installed in an air conditioner or heat pump, which controls the flow of liquid refrigerant entering the evaporator in response to the superheat of the gas leaving it.

**TIME DEPENDENT VALUATION (TDV) ENERGY** is the time varying energy caused to be used by the building to provide space conditioning and water heating and for specified buildings lighting. TDV energy accounts for the energy used at the building site and consumed in producing and in delivering energy to a site, including, but not limited to, power generation, transmission and distribution losses.

**TINTED GLASS** is colored glass by incorporation of a mineral admixture resulting in a degree of tinting. Any tinting reduces both visible and radiant transmittance.

**TOTAL HEAT OF REJECTION (THR)** is the heat rejected by refrigeration system compressors at design conditions, consisting of the design cooling capacity plus the heat of compression added by the compressors.

**TOWNHOUSE** is a single-family dwelling unit constructed in a group of three or more attached units in which each unit extends from the foundation to roof and with open space on at least two sides.

**TRANSCRITICAL CO<sub>2</sub> REFRIGERATION SYSTEM** is a type of refrigeration system that uses CO<sub>2</sub> as the refrigerant where the ultimate heat rejection to ambient air can take place above the critical point.

**TRANSCRITICAL MODE** is a system operating condition for a refrigeration system wherein the refrigerant pressure and temperature leaving the compressor is such that the refrigerant is at or above the critical point. Typically used in reference to CO<sub>2</sub> refrigeration systems.

**SUBCRITICAL MODE** is a system operating condition for a refrigeration system wherein the refrigerant pressure and temperature leaving the compressor is such that the refrigerant is below the critical point. Typically used in reference to CO<sub>2</sub> refrigeration systems.

**TRIM COMPRESSOR** is a compressor that is designated for part-load operation, handling the short term variable trim load of end uses, in addition to the fully loaded base compressors.

**U-FACTOR** is the overall coefficient of thermal transmittance of a fenestration, wall, floor, or roof/ceiling component, in Btu/(hr x ft<sup>2</sup> x °F), including air film resistance at both surfaces.

**UL** is the Underwriters Laboratories.

**UL 181** is the Underwriters Laboratories document titled “Standard for Factory-Made Air Ducts and Air Connectors,” 2017.

**UL 181A** is the Underwriters Laboratories document titled “Standard Closure Systems for Use With Rigid Air Ducts,” 2017.

**UL 181B** is the Underwriters Laboratories document titled “Standard Closure Systems for Use With Flexible Air Ducts and Air Connectors,” 2017.

**UL 723** is the Underwriters Laboratories document titled “Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics,” 2017.

**UL 727** is the Underwriters Laboratories document titled “Standard for Oil-Fired Central Furnaces,” 2006. **UL 731** is the Underwriters Laboratories document titled “Standard for Oil-Fired Unit Heaters,” 2012.

**UL 1077** is the Underwriters Laboratories document titled “Standard for Supplementary Protectors for Use in Electrical Equipment”, 2015.

**UL 1574** is the Underwriters Laboratories document entitled "Track Lighting Systems," 2016.

**UL 1598** is the Underwriters Laboratories document titled “Luminaires,” 2012.

**UL 2108** is the Underwriters Laboratories document titled “Standard for Low Voltage Lighting Systems,” 2017.

**UL 8750** is the Underwriters Laboratories document titled “Standards for Light Emitting Diode (LED) Equipment for Use in Lighting Products,” 2018.

**UNCONDITIONED SPACE** is enclosed space within a building that is not directly conditioned, or indirectly conditioned.

**USDOE 10 CFR 430** is the regulation issued by Department of Energy and available in the Code of Federal Regulation - Title 10, Chapter II, Sub-chapter D, Part 430 – Energy Conservation Program for Consumer Products. Relevant testing methodologies are specified in “Appendix N to sub-part B of Part 430 – Uniform test method for measuring the energy consumption of furnaces and boilers.”

**USDOE 10 CFR 431** is the regulation issued by Department of Energy and available in the Code of Federal Regulation - Title 10, Chapter II, Sub-chapter D, Part 431 - Energy Conservation Program for Certain Commercial and Industrial equipment. Relevant testing methodologies are specified in “Subpart E to Part 431 – Uniform test method for the measurement of energy efficiency of commercial packaged boilers.”

**VAPOR RETARDER CLASS** is a measure of the ability of a material or assembly to limit the amount of moisture that passes through the material or assembly meeting Section 202 of the 2010 California Building Code.

**VARIABLE AIR VOLUME (VAV) SYSTEM** is a space-conditioning system that maintains comfort levels by varying the volume of supply air to the zones served.

**VENDING MACHINE** is a machine for vending and dispensing refrigerated or non-refrigerated food and beverages or general merchandise.

**VENTILATION SYSTEM, BALANCED** is a mechanical device intended to remove air from buildings, and simultaneously replace it with outdoor air.

**VENTILATION SYSTEM, CENTRAL FAN INTEGRATED, or CFI** is a central fan forced air space conditioning system that also intends to bring outdoor air into buildings, causing indoor air to flow out of the building through ventilation relief outlets or normal leakage paths through the building envelope.

**VENTILATION SYSTEM, ENERGY RECOVERY, or ERV** is a mechanical device intended to remove air from buildings, simultaneously replace it with outdoor air, and in the process transfer heat from the warmer to the colder of the simultaneous airflows and transfer moisture from the most humid to least humid of the simultaneous airflows.

**VENTILATION SYSTEM, EXHAUST** is a mechanical device intended to remove air from buildings, causing outdoor air to enter by ventilation inlets or normal leakage paths through the building envelope.

**VENTILATION SYSTEM, HEAT RECOVERY, or HRV** is a mechanical device intended to remove air from buildings, simultaneously replace it with outdoor air, and in the process transfer heat from the warmer to the colder of the simultaneous airflows.

**VENTILATION SYSTEM, SUPPLY** is a mechanical device intended to bring outdoor air into buildings, causing indoor air to flow out of the building through ventilation relief outlets or normal leakage paths through the building envelope.

**VERY VALUABLE MERCHANDISE** is rare or precious objects, including, but not limited to, jewelry, coins, small art objects, crystal, ceramics, or silver, the selling of which involves customer inspection of very fine detail from outside of a locked case.

**VIRTUAL END NODE (VEN)** is an interface with a demand responsive control system that accepts signals transmitted through OpenADR, consistent with the specifications in OpenADR 2.0a or 2.0b.

**WALL TYPE** is a type of wall assembly having a specific heat capacity, framing type, and U-factor.

**WATER BALANCE IN EVAPORATIVE COOLING TOWERS** The water balance of a cooling tower is:

$M = E + B$ , where:

M = makeup water (from the mains water supply)

E = losses due to evaporation

B = losses due to blowdown

**WEST-FACING** (See “orientation”)

**WINDOW FILM** is fenestration attachment products which consist of a flexible adhesive-backed polymer film which may be applied to the interior or exterior surface of an existing glazing system.

**WOOD HEATER** is an enclosed wood-burning appliance used for space heating and/or domestic water heating.

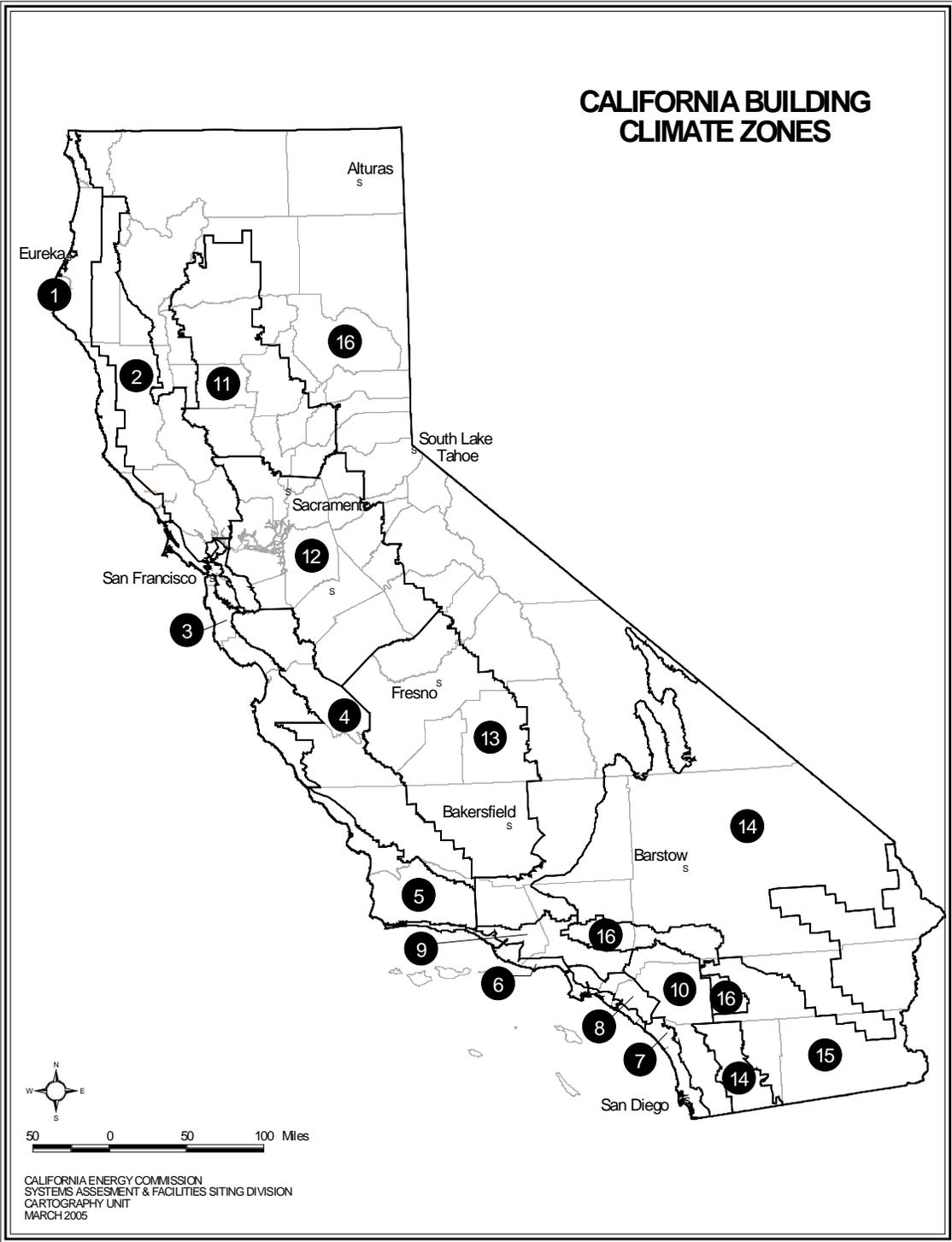
**WOOD STOVE** (See “wood heater.”)

**ZONE, CRITICAL** is a zone serving a process where reset of the zone temperature setpoint during a demand shed event might disrupt the process, including but not limited to computer rooms, data centers, telecom and private branch exchange (PBX) rooms, and laboratories.

**ZONE, NON-CRITICAL** is a zone that is not a critical zone.

**ZONE, SPACE-CONDITIONING**, is a space or group of spaces within a building with sufficiently similar comfort conditioning requirements so that comfort conditions, as specified in Section 140.4(b)3 or 150.0(h), as applicable, can be maintained throughout the zone by a single controlling device.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code



**FIGURE 100.1-A—CALIFORNIA CLIMATE ZONES**  
*Climate Zones for Residential and Nonresidential Occupancies*

---

## **SECTION 100.2 – CALCULATION OF TIME DEPENDENT VALUATION (TDV) ENERGY**

Time Dependent Valuation (TDV) energy shall be used to compare proposed designs to their energy budget when using the performance compliance approach. TDV energy is calculated by multiplying the site energy use (electricity kWh, natural gas therms, or fuel oil or LPG gallons) for each energy type times the applicable TDV multiplier. TDV multipliers vary for each hour of the year and by energy type (electricity, natural gas or propane), by Climate Zone and by building type (low-rise residential or nonresidential, high-rise residential or hotel/motel). TDV multipliers are summarized in Reference Joint Appendix JA3. TDV multipliers for propane shall be used for all energy obtained from depletable sources other than electricity and natural gas.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code

---

## SUBCHAPTER 2

# ALL OCCUPANCIES—MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR THE MANUFACTURE, CONSTRUCTION AND INSTALLATION OF SYSTEMS, EQUIPMENT AND BUILDING COMPONENTS

---

### SECTION 110.0 – SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT—GENERAL

Sections 110.1 through 110.12 specify requirements for manufacturing, construction, and installation of certain systems, equipment, appliances and building components that are installed in buildings within the scope of Section 100.0(a).

**NOTE:** The requirements of Sections 110.0 through 110.12 apply to newly constructed buildings. Sections 141.0 and 150.2 specify which requirements of Sections 110.1 through 110.12 also apply to additions and alterations to existing buildings.

- (a) **General Requirements.** Systems, equipment, appliances and building components shall only be installed in a building within the scope of Section 100.0(a) if:
1. The manufacturer has certified that the system, equipment, appliances or building component complies with the applicable manufacturing provisions of Sections 110.1 through 110.12, and
  2. The system, equipment, appliance or building component complies with all applicable installation provisions of Sections 110.1 through 110.12.
- (b) **Certification Requirements for Manufactured Systems, Equipment, Appliances and Building Components.**
1. Appliances that are within the scope of Section 1601 of the Appliance Efficiency Regulations shall only be installed if they have been certified to the Energy Commission by the manufacturer, pursuant to the provisions of Title 20 California Code of Regulations, Section 1606; or
  2. Systems, equipment, appliances and building components that are required by Part 6 or the Reference Appendices to be certified to the Energy Commission, which are not appliances that are within the scope of Section 1601 of the Appliance Efficiency Regulations, shall only be installed if they are certified by the manufacturer in a declaration, executed under penalty of perjury under the laws of the State of California, that:
    - A. all the information provided pursuant to the certification is true, complete, accurate and in compliance with all applicable requirements of Part 6; and
    - B. the equipment, product, or device was tested using the test procedure specified in Part 6 if applicable.
  3. The certification status of any system, equipment, appliance or building component shall be confirmed only by reference to:
    - A. A directory published or approved by the Commission; or
    - B. A copy of the application for certification from the manufacturer and the letter of acceptance from the Commission staff; or
    - C. Written confirmation from the publisher of a Commission-approved directory that a device has been certified; or
    - D. A Commission-approved label on the device.

**NOTE:** Part 6 does not require a builder, designer, owner, operator, or enforcing agency to test any certified device to determine its compliance with minimum specifications or efficiencies adopted by the Commission.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code

---

**SECTION 110.1 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR APPLIANCES**

- (a) Any appliance regulated by the Appliance Efficiency Regulations, Title 20 California Code of Regulations, Section 1601 et seq., may be installed only if the appliance fully complies with Section 1608(a) of those regulations.
- (b) Except for those circumstances described in Section 110.1(c), conformance with efficiency levels required to comply with Part 6 mandatory, prescriptive and performance standards shall be verified utilizing data from either:
  - 1. The Energy Commission's database of certified appliances maintained pursuant to Title 20 California Code of Regulations, Section 1606, and which is available at: [www.energy.ca.gov/appliances/database/](http://www.energy.ca.gov/appliances/database/); or
  - 2. An equivalent directory published by a federal agency; or
  - 3. An approved trade association directory as defined in Title 20 California Code of Regulations, Section 1606(h).
- (c) Conformance with efficiency levels required to comply with Part 6 mandatory, prescriptive and performance standards shall be demonstrated either by default to the mandatory efficiency levels specified in Part 6 or by following procedures approved by the Commission pursuant to Section 10-109 of Title 24, Part 1, when:
  - 1. Data to verify conformance with efficiency levels required to comply with Part 6 mandatory, prescriptive and performance standards is not available pursuant to subdivision (b); or
  - 2. Field verification and diagnostic testing is required for compliance with Part 6 and the Energy Commission has not approved a field verification and diagnostic test protocol that is applicable to the appliance; or
  - 3. The appliance meets the requirements of Section 110.1(a) but has been site-modified in a way that affects its performance; or
  - 4. The U.S. Department of Energy has approved a waiver from federal test procedures, pursuant to 10 CFR Section 430.27 or Section 431.401 and that waiver fails to specify how the efficiency of the system shall be determined.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code

---

## SECTION 110.2 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR SPACE-CONDITIONING EQUIPMENT

**Certification by Manufacturers.** Any space-conditioning equipment listed in this section may be installed only if the manufacturer has certified to the Commission that the equipment complies with all the applicable requirements of this section.

- (a) **Efficiency.** Equipment shall meet the applicable efficiency requirements in TABLE 110.2-A through TABLE 110.2-K subject to the following:
1. If more than one efficiency standard is listed for any equipment in TABLE 110.2-A through TABLE 110.2-K, the equipment shall meet all the applicable standards that are listed; and
  2. If more than one test method is listed in TABLE 110.2-A through TABLE 110.2-K, the equipment shall comply with the applicable efficiency standard when tested with each listed test method; and
  3. Where equipment serves more than one function, it shall comply with the efficiency standards applicable to each function; and
  4. Where a requirement is for equipment rated at its "maximum rated capacity" or "minimum rated capacity," the capacity shall be as provided for and allowed by the controls, during steady-state operation.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 110.2(a):** Water-cooled centrifugal water-chilling packages that are not designed for operation at ANSI/AHRI Standard 550/590 test conditions of 44°F leaving chilled water temperature and 85°F entering condenser water temperature with 3 gallons per minute per ton condenser water flow shall have a maximum full load kW/ton and NPLV ratings adjusted using the following equation:

Adjusted maximum full-load kW/ton rating = (fullload kW/ton from TABLE 110.2-D) / Kadj

Adjusted maximum NPLV rating = (IPLV from TABLE 110.2-D) / Kadj

Where:

$$K_{adj} = (A) \times (B)$$

$$A = 0.00000014592 \times (\text{LIFT})^4 - 0.0000346496 \times (\text{LIFT})^3 + 0.00314196 \times (\text{LIFT})^2 - 0.147199 \times (\text{LIFT}) + 3.9302$$

$$\text{LIFT} = \text{LvgCond} - \text{LvgEvap} \text{ (°F)}$$

$$\text{LvgCond} = \text{Full-load leaving condenser fluid temperature (°F)}$$

$$\text{LvgEvap} = \text{Full-load leaving evaporator fluid temperature (°F)}$$

$$B = (0.0015 \times \text{LvgEvap}) + 0.934$$

The adjusted full-load and NPLV values are only applicable for centrifugal chillers meeting all of the following full-load design ranges:

- Minimum Leaving Evaporator Fluid Temperature: 36°F
- Maximum Leaving Condenser Fluid Temperature: 115°F
- LIFT  $\geq$  20°F and  $\leq$  80°F

Centrifugal chillers designed to operate outside of these ranges are not covered by this exception.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 110.2(a):** Positive displacement (air-cooled and water-cooled) chillers with a leaving evaporator fluid temperature higher than 32°F shall show compliance with TABLE 110.2-D when tested or certified with water at standard rating conditions, per the referenced test procedure.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 110.2(a):** Equipment primarily serving refrigerated warehouses or commercial refrigeration.

- (b) **Controls for Heat Pumps with Supplementary Electric Resistance Heaters.** Heat pumps with supplementary electric resistance heaters shall have controls:

1. That prevent supplementary heater operation when the heating load can be met by the heat pump alone; and
2. In which the cut-on temperature for compression heating is higher than the cut-on temperature for supplementary heating, and the cut-off temperature for compression heating is higher than the cut-off temperature for supplementary heating.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 110.2(b):** The controls may allow supplementary heater operation during:

- A. Defrost; and
- B. Transient periods such as start-ups and following room thermostat setpoint advance, if the controls provide preferential rate control, intelligent recovery, staging, ramping or another control mechanism designed to preclude the unnecessary operation of supplementary heating.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 110.2(b):** Room air-conditioner heat pumps.

- (c) **Thermostats.** All heating or cooling systems not controlled by a central energy management control system (EMCS) shall have a setback thermostat.

1. **Setback Capabilities.** All thermostats shall have a clock mechanism that allows the building occupant to program the temperature setpoints for at least four periods within 24 hours. Thermostats for heat pumps shall meet the requirements of Section 110.2(b).

**EXCEPTION to Section 110.2(c):** Gravity gas wall heaters, gravity floor heaters, gravity room heaters, non-central electric heaters, fireplaces or decorative gas appliances, wood stoves, room air conditioners, and room air-conditioner heat pumps.

- (d) **Gas- and Oil-Fired Furnace Standby Loss Controls.** Gas-fired and oil-fired forced air furnaces with input ratings  $\geq 225,000$  Btu/h shall also have an intermittent ignition or interrupted device (IID), and have either power venting or a flue damper. A vent damper is an acceptable alternative to a flue damper for furnaces where combustion air is drawn from the conditioned space. All furnaces with input ratings  $\geq 225,000$  Btu/h, including electric furnaces, that are not located within the conditioned space shall have jacket losses not exceeding 0.75 percent of the input rating.

- (e) **Open and Closed Circuit Cooling Towers.** All open and closed circuit cooling tower installations shall comply with the following:

1. Be equipped with Conductivity or Flow-based Controls that maximize cycles of concentration based on local water quality conditions. Controls shall automate system bleed and chemical feed based on conductivity, or in proportion to metered makeup volume, metered bleed volume, recirculating pump run time, or bleed time. Conductivity controllers shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's specifications in order to maximize accuracy.
2. Documentation of Maximum Achievable Cycles of Concentration. Building owners shall document the maximum cycles of concentration based on local water supply as reported annually by the local water supplier, and using the calculator approved by the Energy Commission. The calculator is intended to determine maximum cycles based on a Langelier Saturation Index (LSI) of 2.5 or less. Building owner shall document maximum cycles of concentration on the mechanical compliance form which shall be reviewed and signed by the Professional Engineer (P.E.) of Record.
3. Be equipped with a Flow Meter with an analog output for flow either hardwired or available through a gateway on the makeup water line.
4. Be equipped with an Overflow Alarm to prevent overflow of the sump in case of makeup water valve failure. Overflow alarm shall send an audible signal or provide an alert via the Energy Management Control System to the tower operator in case of sump overflow.
5. Be equipped with Efficient Drift Eliminators that achieve drift reduction to 0.002 percent of the circulated water volume for counter-flow towers and 0.005 percent for cross-flow towers.

**EXCEPTION to Section 110.2(e):** Towers with rated capacity  $< 150$  tons.

- (f) **Low Leakage Air-Handling Units.** To qualify as a low leakage air-handling unit for use for meeting the requirements for applicable low leakage air-handling unit compliance credit(s) available in the performance

standards set forth in Sections 150.1(b) and 140.1, the manufacturer shall certify to the Energy Commission that the air-handling unit meets the specifications in Reference Joint Appendix JA9.

**TABLE 110.2-A AIR CONDITIONERS AND CONDENSING UNITS – MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS**

Equipment Type	Size Category	Efficiency <sup>a, b</sup>		Test Procedure <sup>c</sup>
Air conditioners, air cooled both split system and single package	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h		11.2 EER 12.9 IEER	ANSI/AHRI 340/360
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h		11.0 EER 12.4 IEER	ANSI/AHRI 340/360
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h and < 760,000 Btu/h		10.0 EER 11.6 IEER	
	≥ 760,000 Btu/h		9.7 EER 11.2 IEER	
Air conditioners, water cooled	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h		12.1 EER 13.9 IEER	ANSI/AHRI 340/360
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h		12.5 EER 13.9 IEER	ANSI/AHRI 340/360
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h and < 760,000 Btu/h		12.4 EER 13.6 IEER	ANSI/AHRI 340/360
	≥ 760,000 Btu/h		12.2 EER 13.5 IEER	ANSI/AHRI 340/360
Air conditioners, evaporatively cooled	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h		12.1 EER <sup>b</sup> 12.3 IEER <sup>b</sup>	ANSI/AHRI 340/360
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h		12.0 EER <sup>b</sup> 12.2 IEER <sup>b</sup>	ANSI/AHRI 340/360
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h and < 760,000 Btu/h		11.9 EER <sup>b</sup> 12.1 IEER <sup>b</sup>	ANSI/AHRI 340/360
	≥ 760,000 Btu/h		11.7 EER <sup>b</sup> 11.9 IEER <sup>b</sup>	ANSI/AHRI 340/360
Condensing units, air cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h		10.5 EER 11.8 IEER	ANSI/AHRI 365
Condensing units, water cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h		13.5 EER 14.0 IEER	
Condensing units, evaporatively cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h		13.5 EER 14.0 IEER	
<p><sup>a</sup> IEERs are only applicable to equipment with capacity control as specified by ANSI/AHRI 340/360 test procedures</p> <p><sup>b</sup> Deduct 0.2 from the required EERs and IEERs for units with a heating section other than electric resistance heat.</p> <p><sup>c</sup> Applicable test procedure and reference year are provided under the definitions.</p>				

**TABLE 110.2-B HEAT PUMPS, MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS**

Equipment Type	Size Category	Efficiency <sup>a,b</sup>		Test Procedure <sup>c</sup>
Air Cooled (Cooling Mode), both split system and single package	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h		11.0 EER 12.2 IEER	ANSI/AHRI 340/360
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h		10.6 EER 11.6 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h		9.5 EER 10.6 IEER	
Water source (cooling mode)	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	86°F entering water	13.0 EER	ISO-13256-1
Groundwater source (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	59°F entering water	18.0 EER	ISO-13256-1
Ground source (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	77°F entering water	14.1 EER	ISO-13256-1
Water source water-to- water (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	86°F entering water	10.6 EER	ISO-13256-2
Groundwater source water-to-water (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	59°F entering water	16.3 EER	ISO-13256-1
Ground source brine- to-water (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	77°F entering water	12.1 EER	ISO-13256-2
Air Cooled (Heating Mode) Split system and single package	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	47° F db/43° F wb outdoor air	3.3 COP	ANSI/AHRI 340/360
		17° F db/15° F wb outdoor air	2.25 COP	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	47° F db/43° F wb outdoor air	3.2 COP	
		17° F db/15° F wb outdoor air	2.05 COP	

CONTINUED: TABLE 110.2-B HEAT PUMPS, MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS

Equipment Type	Size Category	Subcategory or Rating Condition	Efficiency <sup>a</sup>	Test Procedure <sup>c</sup>
Water source (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	68°F entering water	4.3 COP	ISO-13256-1
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	68°F entering water	2.90 COP	
Groundwater source (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	50°F entering water	3.7 COP	ISO-13256-1
Ground source (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	32°F entering water	3.2 COP	ISO-13256-1
Water source water-to-water (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	68°F entering water	3.7 COP	ISO-13256-2
Groundwater source water-to-water (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	50°F entering water	3.1 COP	ISO-13256-2
Ground source brine-to-water (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	32°F entering water	2.5 COP	ISO-13256-2
<sup>a</sup> IEERs are only applicable to equipment with capacity control as as specified by ANSI/AHRI 340/360 test procedures. <sup>b</sup> Deduct 0.2 from the required EERs and IEERs for units with a heating section other than electric resistance heat. <sup>c</sup> Applicable test procedure and reference year are provided under the definitions.				

TABLE 110.2-C AIR-COOLED GAS-ENGINE HEAT PUMPS

Equipment Type	Size Category	Subcategory or Rating Condition	Efficiency	Test Procedure <sup>a</sup>
Air-Cooled Gas-Engine Heat Pump (Cooling Mode)	All Capacities	95° F db Outdoor Air	0.60 COP	ANSI Z21.40.4A
Air-Cooled Gas-Engine Heat Pump (Heating Mode)	All Capacities	47° F db/43° F wb Outdoor Air	0.72 COP	ANSI Z21.40.4A
<sup>a</sup> Applicable test procedure and reference year are provided under the definitions.				

**TABLE 110.2-D WATER CHILLING PACKAGES – MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS <sup>a,b</sup>**

Equipment Type	Size Category	Path A Efficiency <sup>a,b</sup>	Path B Efficiency <sup>a,b</sup>	Test Procedure <sup>c</sup>
Air Cooled, With Condenser Electrically Operated	< 150 Tons	≥ 10.100 EER ≥ 13.700 IPLV	≥ 9.700 EER ≥ 15.800 IPLV	AHRI 550/590
	≥ 150 Tons	≥ 10.100 EER ≥ 14.000 IPLV	≥ 9.700 EER ≥ 16.100 IPLV	
Air Cooled, Without Condenser Electrically Operated	All Capacities	Air-cooled chillers without condensers must be rated with matching condensers and comply with the air-cooled chiller efficiency requirements.		
Water Cooled, Electrically Operated, Reciprocating	All Capacities	Reciprocating units must comply with the water-cooled positive displacement efficiency requirements.		AHRI 550/590
Water Cooled, Electrically Operated Positive Displacement	< 75 Tons	≤ 0.750kW/ton ≤ 0.600 IPLV	≤ 0.780 kW/ton ≤ 0.500 IPLV	AHRI 550/590
	≥ 75 tons and < 150 tons	≤ 0.720 kW/ton ≤ 0.560 IPLV	≤ 0.750 kW/ton ≤ 0.490 IPLV	
	≥ 150 tons and < 300 tons	≤ 0.660 kW/ton ≤ 0.540 IPLV	≤ 0.680 kW/ton ≤ 0.440 IPLV	
	≥ 300 Tons and < 600 tons	≤ 0.610kW/ton ≤ 0.520 IPLV	≤ 0.625 kW/ton ≤ 0.410 IPLV	
	≥ 600 tons	≤ 0.560 kW/ton ≤ 0.500 IPLV	≤ 0.585 kW/ton ≤ 0.380 IPLV	
Water Cooled, Electrically Operated, Centrifugal	< 150 Tons	≤ 0.610 kW/ton ≤ 0.550IPLV	≤ 0.695 kW/ton ≤ 0.440 IPLV	
	≥ 150 tons and < 300 tons	≤ 0.610 kW/ton ≤ 0.550 IPLV	≤ 0.635 kW/ton ≤ 0.400 IPLV	
	≥ 300 tons and < 400 tons	≤ 0.560 kW/ton ≤ 0.520 IPLV	≤ 0.595 kW/ton ≤ 0.390 IPLV	
	≥ 400 tons and < 600 tons	≤ 0.560 kW/ton ≤ 0.500 IPLV	≤ 0.585 kW/ton ≤ 0.380 IPLV	
	≥ 600 tons	≤ 0.560 kW/ton ≤ 0.500 IPLV	≤ 0.585 kW/ton ≤ 0.380 IPLV	

**CONTINUED: TABLE 110.2-D WATER CHILLING PACKAGES – MINIMUM  
EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS <sup>a,b</sup>**

<b>Equipment Type</b>	<b>Size Category</b>	<b>Path A Efficiency <sup>a,b</sup></b>	<b>Path B Efficiency <sup>a,b</sup></b>	<b>Test Procedure <sup>c</sup></b>
Air Cooled Absorption, Single Effect	All Capacities	≥0.600 COP	N.A. <sup>d</sup>	ANSI/AHRI 560
Water Cooled Absorption, Single Effect	All Capacities	≥ 0.700 COP	N.A. <sup>d</sup>	
Absorption Double Effect, Indirect-Fired	All Capacities	≥ 1.000 COP ≥ 1.050 IPLV	N.A. <sup>d</sup>	
Absorption Double Effect, Direct-Fired	All Capacities	≥ 1.000 COP ≥1.000 IPLV	N.A. <sup>d</sup>	
Water Cooled Gas Engine Driven Chiller	All Capacities	≥ 1.2 COP ≥ 2.0 IPLV	N.A. <sup>d</sup>	ANSI Z21.40.4A
<p><sup>a</sup> No requirements for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Centrifugal chillers with design leaving evaporator temperature &lt; 36°F; or</li> <li>• Positive displacement chillers with design leaving fluid temperature ≤ 32°F; or</li> <li>• Absorption chillers with design leaving fluid temperature &lt; 40°F.</li> </ul> <p><sup>b</sup> Must meet the minimum requirements of Path A or Path B. However, both the full load (COP) and IPLV must be met to fulfill the requirements of the applicable Path.</p> <p><sup>c</sup> See Section 100.1 for definitions.</p> <p><sup>d</sup> NA means not applicable.</p>				

**TABLE 110.2-E PACKAGED TERMINAL AIR CONDITIONERS AND PACKAGED TERMINAL HEAT PUMPS –  
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS**

Equipment Type	Size Category (Input)	Subcategory or Rating Condition	Efficiency		Test Procedure <sup>c</sup>
PTAC (Cooling mode) Newly constructed or newly conditioned buildings or additions	All Capacities	95°F db Outdoor Air		14.0 - (0.300 x Cap/1000) <sup>a</sup> EER	ANSI/AHRI/CSA 310/380
PTAC (Cooling mode) Replacements <sup>b</sup>	All Capacities	95°F db Outdoor Air		10.9 - (0.213 x Cap/1000) <sup>a</sup> EER	
PTHP (Cooling mode) Newly constructed or newly conditioned buildings or additions	All Capacities	95°F db Outdoor Air		14.0 - (0.300 x Cap/1000) <sup>a</sup> EER	
PTHP (Cooling mode) Replacements <sup>b</sup>	All Capacities	95°F db Outdoor Air		10.8 - (0.213 x Cap/1000) <sup>a</sup> EER	
PTHP (Heating Mode) Newly constructed or newly conditioned buildings or additions	All Capacities	-		3.7 - (0.052 x Cap/1000) <sup>a</sup> COP	
PTHP (Heating mode) Replacements <sup>b</sup>	All Capacities	-		2.9 - (0.026 x Cap/1000) <sup>a</sup> COP	
SPVAC (Cooling Mode)	<65,000 Btu/h	95°F db / 75°F wb Outdoor Air		11.0 EER	ANSI/AHRI 390
	≥65,000 Btu/h and <135,000 Btu/h	95°F db / 75°F wb Outdoor Air		10.0 EER	
	≥135,000 Btu/h and <240,000 Btu/h	95°F db / 75°F wb Outdoor Air		10.0 EER	
SPVAC (Cooling Mode) nonweatherized space constrained	≤ 30,000 Btu/h	"95°F db / 75°F wb outdoor air"		9.20 EER	
	> 30,000 Btu/h and ≤ 36,000 Btu/h	"95°F db / 75°F wb outdoor air"		9.00 EER	
SPVHP (Cooling Mode)	<65,000 Btu/h	95°F db / 75°F wb Outdoor Air		11.0 EER	
	≥65,000 Btu/h and <135,000 Btu/h	95°F db / 75°F wb Outdoor Air		10.0 EER	
	≥135,000 Btu/h and <240,000 Btu/h	95°F db / 75°F wb Outdoor Air		10.0 EER	
SPVHP (Cooling Mode) nonweatherized space constrained	≤ 30,000 Btu/h	95°F db / 75°F wb Outdoor Air		9.20 EER	
	> 30,000 Btu/h and ≤ 36,000 Btu/h	95°F db / 75°F wb Outdoor Air		9.00 EER	
SPVHP (Heating Mode)	<65,000 Btu/h	47°F db / 43°F wb Outdoor Air		3.3 COP	
	≥65,000 Btu/h and <135,000 Btu/h	47°F db / 43°F wb Outdoor Air		3.0 COP	
	≥135,000 Btu/h and <240,000 Btu/h	47°F db / 43°F wb Outdoor Air		3.0 COP	
SPVHP (Heating Mode) nonweatherized space constrained	≤ 30,000 Btu/h	47°F db / 43°F wb Outdoor Air		3.00 COP	
	> 30,000 Btu/h and ≤ 36,000 Btu/h	47°F db / 43°F wb Outdoor Air		3.00 COP	

<sup>a</sup> Cap means the rated cooling capacity of the product in Btu/h. If the unit's capacity is less than 7000 Btu/h, use 7000 Btu/h in the calculation. If the unit's capacity is greater than 15,000 Btu/h, use 15,000 Btu/h in the calculation.

<sup>b</sup> Replacement units must be factory labeled as follows: "MANUFACTURED FOR REPLACEMENT APPLICATIONS ONLY; NOT TO BE INSTALLED IN NEWLY CONSTRUCTED BUILDINGS." Replacement efficiencies apply only to units with existing sleeves less than 16 inches high or less than 42 inch wide and having a cross-sectional area less than 670 square inches.

<sup>c</sup> Applicable test procedure and reference year are provided under the definitions.

*TABLE 110.2-F HEAT TRANSFER EQUIPMENT*

<b>Equipment Type</b>	<b>Subcategory</b>	<b>Minimum Efficiency<sup>a</sup></b>	<b>Test Procedure <sup>b</sup></b>
Liquid-to-liquid heat exchangers	Plate type	NR	ANSI/AHRI 400
<sup>a</sup> NR means no requirement. <sup>b</sup> Applicable test procedure and reference year are provided under the definitions.			

**TABLE 110.2-G PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR HEAT REJECTION EQUIPMENT**

<b>Equipment Type</b>	<b>Total System Heat Rejection Capacity at Rated Conditions</b>	<b>Subcategory or Rating Condition</b>	<b>Performance Required <sup>a, b, c, d</sup></b>	<b>Test Procedure <sup>e</sup></b>
Propeller or axial fan Open-circuit cooling towers	All	95°F entering water 85°F leaving water 75°F entering air wb	≥ 42.1 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105 and CTI STD-201 RS
Centrifugal fan Open-circuit cooling towers	All	95°F entering water 85°F leaving water 75°F entering air wb	≥ 20.0 gpm/hp	
Propeller or axial fan closed-circuit cooling towers	All	102°F entering water 90°F leaving water 75°F entering air wb	≥ 16.1 gpm/hp	
Centrifugal fan closed-circuit cooling towers	All	102°F entering water 90°F leaving water 75°F entering air wb	≥ 7.0 gpm/hp	
Propeller or axial fan evaporative condensers	All	R-507A test fluid 165°F entering gas temp 105°F condensing temp 75°F entering air wb	≥ 157,000 Btu/h • hp	CTI ATC-106
	All	Ammonia test fluid 140°F entering gas temp 96.3°F condensing temp 75°F entering air wb	≥ 134,000 Btu/h • hp	
Centrifugal fan evaporative condensers	All	R-507A test fluid 165°F entering gas temp 105°F condensing temp 75°F entering air wb	≥ 135,000 Btu/h • hp	
	All	Ammonia test fluid 140°F entering gas temp 96.3°F condensing temp 75°F entering air wb	≥ 110,000 Btu/h • hp	
Air cooled condensers	All	125°F condensing temperature R22 test fluid 190°F entering gas temperature 15°F subcooling 95°F entering drybulb	≥ 176,000 Btu/h • hp	ANSI/AHRI 460

<sup>a</sup> For purposes of this table, open-circuit cooling tower performance is defined as the water flow rating of the tower at the given rated conditions divided by the fan motor nameplate power.

<sup>b</sup> For purposes of this table, closed-circuit cooling tower performance is defined as the process water flow rating of the tower at the given rated conditions divided by the sum of the fan motor nameplate rated power and the integral spray pump motor nameplate power.

<sup>c</sup> For purposes of this table air-cooled condenser performance is defined as the heat rejected from the refrigerant divided by the fan motor nameplate power.

<sup>d</sup> Open cooling towers shall be tested using the test procedures in CTI ATC-105. Performance of factory assembled open cooling towers shall be either certified as base models as specified in CTI STD-201 or verified by testing in the field by a CTI approved testing agency. Open factory assembled cooling towers with custom options added to a CTI certified base model for the purpose of safe maintenance or to reduce environmental or noise impact shall be rated at 90 percent of the CTI certified performance of the associated base model or at the manufacturer’s stated performance, whichever is less. Base models of open factory assembled cooling towers are open cooling towers configured in exact accordance with the Data of Record submitted to CTI as specified by CTI STD-201. There are no certification requirements for field erected cooling towers.

<sup>e</sup> Applicable test procedure and reference year are provided under the definitions.

For refrigerated warehouses or commercial refrigeration applications, condensers shall comply with requirements specified by Section 120.6(a) or Section 120.6(b).

*TABLE 110.2-H Electrically Operated Variable Refrigerant Flow (VRF) Air Conditioners  
Minimum Efficiency Requirements*

<b>Equipment Type</b>	<b>Size Category</b>	<b>Heating Section Type</b>	<b>Sub-Category or Rating Condition</b>	<b>Minimum Efficiency</b>	<b>Test Procedure<sup>a</sup></b>
VRF Air Conditioners, Air Cooled	<65,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split System	13.0 SEER	ANSI/AHRI 1230
	≥65,000 Btu/h and <135,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or none)	VRF Multi-split System	11.2 EER 15.5 IEER <sup>b</sup>	
	≥135,000 Btu/h and <240,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or none)	VRF Multi-split System	11.0 EER 14.9 IEER <sup>b</sup>	
	≥240,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or none)	VRF Multi-split System	10.0 EER 13.9 IEER <sup>b</sup>	
<sup>a</sup> Applicable test procedure and reference year are provided under the definitions. <sup>b</sup> IEERs are only applicable to equipment with capacity control as specified by ANSI/AHRI 1230 test procedures.					

TABLE 110.2-1 Electrically Operated Variable Refrigerant Flow Air-to-Air and Applied Heat Pumps - Minimum Efficiency Requirements

Equipment Type	Size Category	Heating Section Type	Sub-Category or Rating Condition	Minimum Efficiency	Test Procedure <sup>b</sup>
VRF Air Cooled, (cooling mode)	<65,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split System	13.0 SEER	AHRI 1230
	≥65,000 Btu/h and <135,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or none)	VRF Multi-split System <sup>a</sup>	11.0 EER 14.6 IEER <sup>c</sup>	
	≥135,000 Btu/h and <240,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or none)	VRF Multi-split System <sup>a</sup>	10.6 EER 13.9 IEER <sup>c</sup>	
	≥240,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or none)	VRF Multi-split System <sup>a</sup>	9.5 EER 12.7 IEER <sup>c</sup>	
VRF Water source (cooling mode)	<65,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split systems <sup>a</sup> 86°F entering water	12.0 EER 15.8 IEER <sup>c</sup>	AHRI 1230
	≥65,000 Btu/h and <135,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split System <sup>a</sup> 86°F entering water	12.0 EER 15.8 IEER <sup>c</sup>	
	≥135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000	All	VRF Multi-split System <sup>a</sup> 86°F entering water	10.0 EER 13.8 IEER <sup>c</sup>	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split System <sup>a</sup> 86°F entering water	10.0 EER 12.0 IEER	
VRF Groundwater source (cooling mode)	<135,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split System <sup>a</sup> 59°F entering water	16.2 EER	AHRI 1230
	≥135,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split System <sup>a</sup> 59°F entering water	13.8 EER	
VRF Ground source (cooling mode)	<135,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split System <sup>a</sup> 77°F entering water	13.4 EER	AHRI 1230
	≥135,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split System <sup>a</sup> 77°F entering water	11.0 EER	

CONTINUED: TABLE 110.2-I Electrically Operated Variable Refrigerant Flow Air-to-Air and Applied Heat Pumps  
- Minimum Efficiency Requirements

Equipment Type	Size Category	Heating Section Type	Sub-Category or Rating Condition	Minimum Efficiency	Test Procedure <sup>b</sup>
VRF Air Cooled (heating mode)	<65,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	---	VRF Multi-split System	7.7 HSPF	AHRI 1230
	≥65,000 Btu/h and <135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	---	VRF Multi-split system 47°F db/ 43°F wb outdoor air	3.3 COP	
			VRF Multi-split system 17°F db/15°F wb outdoor air	2.25 COP	
	≥135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	---	VRF Multi-split system 47°F db/ 43°F wb outdoor air	3.2 COP	
			VRF Multi-split system 17°F db/15°F wb outdoor air	2.05 COP	
VRF Water source (heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	---	VRF Multi-split System 68°F entering water	4.3 COP	AHRI 1230
	≥65,000 Btu/h and <135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	---	VRF Multi-split System 68°F entering water	4.3 COP	
	≥135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	---	VRF Multi-split System 68°F entering water	4.0 COP	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	---	VRF Multi-split System 68°F entering water	3.9 COP	
VRF Groundwater source (heating mode)	<135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	---	VRF Multi-split System 50°F entering water	3.6 COP	AHRI 1230
	≥135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	---	VRF Multi-split System 50°F entering water	3.3 COP	
VRF Ground source (heating mode)	<135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	---	VRF Multi-split System 32°F entering water	3.1 COP	AHRI 1230
	≥135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	---	VRF Multi-split System 32°F entering water	2.8 COP	

<sup>a</sup> Deduct 0.2 from the required EERs and IEERs for Variable Refrigerant Flow (VRF) Multi-split system units with a heating recovery section.

<sup>b</sup> Applicable test procedure and reference year are provided under the definitions.

<sup>c</sup> IEERs are only applicable to equipment with capacity control as specified by ANSI/AHRI 1230 test procedures.

TABLE 110.2-J Warm-Air Furnaces and Combination Warm-Air Furnaces/Air-Conditioning Units, Warm-Air Duct Furnaces, and Unit Heaters

Equipment Type	Size Category (Input)	Subcategory or Rating Condition <sup>b</sup>	Minimum Efficiency <sup>d,e</sup>	Test Procedure <sup>a</sup>
Warm-Air Furnace, Gas-Fired	≥ 225,000 Btu/h	Maximum Capacity <sup>b</sup>	80% E <sub>t</sub>	Section 2.39, Thermal Efficiency, ANSI Z21.47
Warm-Air Furnace, oil-Fired	≥ 225,000 Btu/h	Maximum Capacity <sup>b</sup>	81% E <sub>t</sub>	Section 42, Combustion, UL 727
Warm-Air Duct Furnaces, Gas-Fired	All Capacities	Maximum Capacity <sup>b</sup>	80% E <sub>c</sub>	Section 2.10, Efficiency, ANSI Z83.8
Warm-Air Unit Heaters, Gas-Fired	All Capacities	Maximum Capacity <sup>b</sup>	80% E <sub>c</sub>	Section 2.10, Efficiency, ANSI Z83.8
Warm-Air Unit Heaters, Oil-Fired	All Capacities	Maximum Capacity <sup>b</sup>	81% E <sub>c</sub>	Section 40, Combustion, UL 731

<sup>a</sup> Applicable test procedure and reference year are provided under the definitions.

<sup>b</sup> Compliance of multiple firing rate units shall be at maximum firing rate.

<sup>c</sup> Combustion units not covered by the U.S. Department of Energy Code of Federal Regulations 10 CFR 430 (3-phase power or cooling capacity greater than or equal to 19 kW) may comply with either rating.

<sup>d</sup> E<sub>t</sub>= thermal efficiency. Units must also include an interrupted or intermittent ignition device (IID), have jacket losses not exceeding 0.75% of the input rating, and have either power venting or a flue damper. A vent damper is an acceptable alternative to a flue damper for those furnaces where combustion air is drawn from the conditioned space.

<sup>e</sup> E<sub>c</sub>= combustion efficiency (100% less flue losses). See test procedure for detailed discussion.

<sup>f</sup> As of August 8, 2008, according to the Energy Policy Act of 2005, units must also include interrupted or intermittent ignition device (IID) and have either power venting or an automatic flue damper.

TABLE 110.2-K Gas- and Oil-Fired Boilers, Minimum Efficiency requirements

Equipment Type	Sub Category	Size Category (Input)	Minimum Efficiency <sup>b,c</sup>		Test Procedure <sup>a</sup>
			Before 3/2/2020	After 3/2/2020	
Boiler, hot water	Gas-Fired	< 300,000 Btu/h	82% AFUE	82% AFUE	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
		$\geq 300,000$ Btu/h and $\leq 2,500,000$ Btu/h <sup>d</sup>	80% E <sub>t</sub>	80% E <sub>t</sub>	DOE 10 CFR Part 431
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h <sup>e</sup>	82% E <sub>c</sub>	82% E <sub>c</sub>	
	Oil-Fired	< 300,000 Btu/h	84% AFUE	84% AFUE	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
		$\geq 300,000$ Btu/h and $\leq 2,500,000$ Btu/h <sup>d</sup>	82% E <sub>t</sub>	82% E <sub>t</sub>	DOE 10 CFR Part 431
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h <sup>e</sup>	84% E <sub>c</sub>	84% E <sub>c</sub>	
Boiler, steam	Gas-Fired	< 300,000 Btu/h	80% AFUE	80% AFUE	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
	Gas-Fired all, except natural draft	$\geq 300,000$ Btu/h and $\leq 2,500,000$ Btu/h <sup>d</sup>	79% E <sub>t</sub>	79% E <sub>t</sub>	DOE 10 CFR Part 431
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h <sup>e</sup>	79% E <sub>t</sub>	79% E <sub>t</sub>	DOE 10 CFR Part 431
	Gas-Fired, natural draft	$\geq 300,000$ Btu/h and $\leq 2,500,000$ Btu/h <sup>d</sup>	77% E <sub>t</sub>	79% E <sub>t</sub>	DOE 10 CFR Part 431
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h <sup>e</sup>	77% E <sub>t</sub>	79% E <sub>t</sub>	DOE 10 CFR Part 431
	Oil-Fired	< 300,000 Btu/h	82% AFUE	82% AFUE	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
		$\geq 300,000$ Btu/h and $\leq 2,500,000$ Btu/h <sup>d</sup>	81% E <sub>t</sub>	81% E <sub>t</sub>	DOE 10 CFR Part 431
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h <sup>e</sup>	81% E <sub>t</sub>	81% E <sub>t</sub>	DOE 10 CFR Part 431
	<sup>a</sup> Applicable test procedure and reference year are provided under the definitions.				
<sup>b</sup> E <sub>c</sub> = combustion efficiency (100% less flue losses). See reference document for detailed information.					
<sup>c</sup> E <sub>t</sub> = thermal efficiency. See test procedure for detailed information.					
<sup>d</sup> Maximum capacity - minimum and maximum ratings as provided for and allowed by the unit's controls.					
<sup>e</sup> Included oil-fired (residual).					

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code

---

## SECTION 110.3 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR SERVICE WATER-HEATING SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

(a) **Certification by Manufacturers.** Any service water-heating system or equipment may be installed only if the manufacturer has certified that the system or equipment complies with all of the requirements of this subsection for that system or equipment.

1. **Temperature controls for service water heating systems.** Service water-heating systems shall be equipped with automatic temperature controls capable of adjustment from the lowest to the highest acceptable temperature settings for the intended use as listed in Table 3, Chapter 50 of the ASHRAE Handbook, HVAC Applications Volume or Table 613.1 of the California Plumbing Code for healthcare facilities.

**EXCEPTION to Section 110.3(a)1:** Residential occupancies.

(b) **Efficiency.** Equipment shall meet the applicable requirements of the Appliance Efficiency Regulations as required by Section 110.1, subject to the following:

1. If more than one standard is listed in the Appliance Efficiency Regulations, the equipment shall meet all the standards listed; and
2. If more than one test method is listed in the Appliance Efficiency Regulations, the equipment shall comply with the applicable standard when tested with each test method; and
3. Where equipment can serve more than one function, such as both heating and cooling, or both space heating and water heating, it shall comply with all the requirements applicable to each function; and
4. Where a requirement is for equipment rated at its "maximum rated capacity" or "minimum rated capacity," the capacity shall be as provided for and allowed by the controls, during steady-state operation.

(c) **Installation.** Any service water-heating system or equipment may be installed only if the system or equipment complies with all of the applicable requirements of this subsection for the system or equipment.

1. **Outlet temperature controls.** On systems that have a total capacity greater than 167,000 Btu/hr, outlets that require higher than service water temperatures as listed in the ASHRAE Handbook, Applications Volume, shall have separate remote heaters, heat exchangers, or boosters to supply the outlet with the higher temperature.

**EXCEPTION to section 110.3(c)1:** Systems covered by California Plumbing Code Section 613.0 shall instead follow the requirements of that section.

2. **Controls for hot water distribution systems.** Service hot water systems with circulating pumps or with electrical heat trace systems shall be capable of automatically turning off the system.

**EXCEPTION to Section 110.3(c)2:** Systems serving healthcare facilities.

3. **Insulation.** Unfired service water heater storage tanks and backup tanks for solar water-heating systems shall have:
  - A. External insulation with an installed R-value of at least R-12; or
  - B. Internal and external insulation with a combined R-value of at least R-16; or
  - C. The heat loss of the tank surface based on an 80°F water-air temperature difference shall be less than 6.5 Btu per hour per square foot.
4. **Water Heating Recirculation Loops Serving Multiple Dwelling Units, High-Rise Residential, Hotel/Motel, and Nonresidential Occupancies.** A water heating recirculation loop is a type of hot water distribution system that reduces the time needed to deliver hot water to fixtures that are distant from the water heater, boiler or other water heating equipment. The recirculation loop is comprised of a supply portion, connected to branches that serve multiple dwelling units, guest rooms, or fixtures and a return

portion that completes the loop back to the water heating equipment. A water heating recirculation loop shall meet the following requirements:

- A. **Air release valve or vertical pump installation.** An automatic air release valve shall be installed on the recirculation loop piping on the inlet side of the recirculation pump and no more than 4 feet from the pump. This valve shall be mounted on top of a vertical riser at least 12" in length and shall be accessible for replacement and repair. Alternatively, the pump shall be installed on a vertical section of the return line.
  - B. **Recirculation loop backflow prevention.** A check valve or similar device shall be located between the recirculation pump and the water heating equipment to prevent water from flowing backwards through the recirculation loop.
  - C. **Equipment for pump priming.** A hose bibb shall be installed between the pump and the water heating equipment. An isolation valve shall be installed between the hose bibb and the water heating equipment. This hose bibb is used for bleeding air out of the pump after pump replacement.
  - D. **Pump isolation valves.** Isolation valves shall be installed on both sides of the pump. These valves may be part of the flange that attaches the pump to the pipe. One of the isolation valves may be the same isolation valve as in Item C.
  - E. **Cold water supply and recirculation loop connection to hot water storage tank.** Storage water heaters and boilers shall be plumbed in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications. The cold water piping and the recirculation loop piping shall not be connected to the hot water storage tank drain port.
  - F. **Cold water supply backflow prevention.** A check valve shall be installed on the cold water supply line between the hot water system and the next closest tee on the cold water supply line. The system shall comply with the expansion tank requirements as described in the California Plumbing Code Section 608.3.
5. **Service water heaters in state buildings.** Any newly constructed building constructed by the State shall derive its service water heating from a system that provides at least 60 percent of the energy needed for service water heating from site solar energy or recovered energy, per the statutory requirement of California Public Resources Code Section 25498.
- EXCEPTION to Section 110.3(c)5:** Buildings for which the state architect determines that service water heating from site solar energy or recovered energy is economically or physically infeasible.
6. **Isolation valves.** Instantaneous water heaters with an input rating greater than 6.8 kBTU/hr (2 kW) shall have isolation valves on both the cold water supply and the hot water pipe leaving the water heater, and hose bibbs or other fittings on each valve for flushing the water heater when the valves are closed.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code

---

## SECTION 110.4 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR POOL AND SPA SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

- (a) **Certification by Manufacturers.** Any pool or spa heating system or equipment may be installed only if the manufacturer has certified that the system or equipment has all of the following:
1. **Efficiency.** A thermal efficiency that complies with the Appliance Efficiency Regulations; and
  2. **On-off switch.** A readily accessible on-off switch, mounted on the outside of the heater that allows shutting off the heater without adjusting the thermostat setting; and
  3. **Instructions.** A permanent, easily readable, and weatherproof plate or card that gives instruction for the energy efficient operation of the pool or spa heater and for the proper care of pool or spa water when a cover is used; and
  4. **Electric resistance heating.** No electric resistance heating.
- EXCEPTION 1 to Section 110.4(a)4:** Listed package units with fully insulated enclosures, and with tight-fitting covers that are insulated to at least R-6.
- EXCEPTION 2 to Section 110.4(a)4:** Pools or spas deriving at least 60 percent of the annual heating energy from site solar energy or recovered energy.
- (b) **Installation.** Any pool or spa system or equipment shall be installed with all of the following:
1. **Piping.** At least 36 inches of pipe shall be installed between the filter and the heater or dedicated suction and return lines, or built-in or built-up connections shall be installed to allow for the future addition of solar heating equipment;
  2. **Covers.** A cover for outdoor pools or outdoor spas that have a heat pump or gas heater; and
  3. **Directional inlets and time switches for pools.** If the system or equipment is for a pool:
    - i. The pool shall have directional inlets that adequately mix the pool water; and
    - ii. A time switch or similar control mechanism shall be installed as part of a pool water circulation control system that will allow all pumps to be set or programmed to run only during the off-peak electric demand period and for the minimum time necessary to maintain the water in the condition required by applicable public health standards.

---

**SECTION 110.5 – NATURAL GAS CENTRAL FURNACES, COOKING EQUIPMENT, POOL AND SPA HEATERS, AND FIREPLACES: PILOT LIGHTS PROHIBITED**

Any natural gas system or equipment listed below may be installed only if it does not have a continuously burning pilot light:

- (a) Fan-type central furnaces.
- (b) Household cooking appliances.

**EXCEPTION to Section 110.5(b):** Household cooking appliances without an electrical supply voltage connection and in which each pilot consumes less than 150 Btu/hr.

- (c) Pool heaters.
- (d) Spa heaters.
- (e) Indoor and outdoor fireplaces.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code

---

## SECTION 110.6 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR FENESTRATION PRODUCTS AND EXTERIOR DOORS

(a) **Certification of Fenestration Products and Exterior Doors other than Field-fabricated.** Any fenestration product and exterior door, other than field-fabricated fenestration products and field-fabricated exterior doors, may be installed only if the manufacturer has certified to the Commission, or if an independent certifying organization approved by the Commission has certified that the product complies with all of the applicable requirements of this subsection.

1. **Air leakage.** Manufactured fenestration products and exterior doors shall have air infiltration rates not exceeding 0.3 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup> of window area, 0.3 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup> of door area for residential doors, 0.3 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup> of door area for nonresidential single doors (swinging and sliding), and 1.0 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup> for nonresidential double doors (swinging), when tested according to NFRC-400 or ASTM E283 at a pressure differential of 75 pascals (or 1.57 pounds/ft<sup>2</sup>), incorporated herein by reference.

**NOTES TO SECTION 110.6(a)1:** Pet doors must meet 0.3 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup> when tested according to ASTM E283 at 75 pascals (or 1.57 pounds/ft<sup>2</sup>). AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440-2011 specification is equivalent to ASTM E283 at a pressure differential of 75 pascals (or 1.57 pounds/ft<sup>2</sup>) and satisfies the air leakage certification requirements of this section.

**EXCEPTION to Section 110.6(a)1:** Field-fabricated fenestration and field-fabricated exterior doors.

2. **U-factor.** The fenestration product and exterior door's U-factor shall be rated in accordance with NFRC 100, or use the applicable default U-factor set forth in TABLE 110.6-A.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 110.6(a)2:** If the fenestration product is a skylight or a vertical site-built fenestration product in a building covered by the nonresidential standards with less than 200 square feet of site-built fenestration, the default U-factor may be calculated as set forth in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA6.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 110.6(a)2:** If the fenestration product is an alteration consisting of any area replacement of glass in a skylight product or in a vertical site-built fenestration product, in a building covered by the nonresidential standards, the default U-factor may be calculated as set forth in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA6.

3. **Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC).** The fenestration product's SHGC shall be rated in accordance with NFRC 200, or use the applicable default SHGC set forth in TABLE 110.6-B.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 110.6(a)3:** If the fenestration product is a skylight or a vertical site-built fenestration product in a building covered by the nonresidential standards with less than 200 square feet of site-built fenestration, the default SHGC may be calculated as set forth in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA6.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 110.6(a)3:** If the fenestration product is an alteration consisting of any area replacement of glass in a skylight product or in a vertical site-built fenestration product, in a building covered by the nonresidential standards, the default SHGC may be calculated as set forth in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA6.

4. **Visible Transmittance (VT).** The fenestration product's VT shall be rated in accordance with NFRC 200 or ASTM E972, for tubular daylighting devices VT shall be rated using NFRC 203.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 110.6(a)4:** If the fenestration product is a skylight or a vertical site-built fenestration product in a building covered by the nonresidential standards with less than 200 square feet of site-built fenestration, the default VT may be calculated as set forth in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA6.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 110.6(a)4:** If the fenestration product is an alteration consisting of any area; replacement of glass in a skylight product or in a vertical site-built fenestration product in a building covered by the nonresidential standards, the default VT may be calculated as set forth in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA6.

5. **Labeling.** Fenestration products and exterior doors shall:
- A. Have a temporary label for manufactured fenestration products and exterior doors or a label certificate when the Component Modeling Approach (CMA) is used and for site-built fenestration meeting the requirements of Section 10-111(a)1. The temporary label shall not be removed before inspection by the enforcement agency; and
  - B. Have a permanent label or a label certificate when the Component Modeling Approach (CMA) is used and for site-built fenestration meeting the requirements of Section 10-111(a)2 if the product is rated using NFRC procedures.

6. **Fenestration Acceptance Requirements.** Before an occupancy permit is granted, site-built fenestration products in other than low-rise residential buildings shall be certified as meeting the Acceptance Requirements for Code Compliance, as specified in the Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7 to ensure that site-built fenestration meet Standards requirements, including a matching label certificate for product(s) installed and be readily accessible at the project location. A Certificate of Acceptance certifying that the fenestration product meets the acceptance requirements shall be completed, signed and submitted to the enforcement agency.

**EXCEPTION to Section 110.6(a):** Fenestration products removed and reinstalled as part of a building alteration or addition.

- (b) **Installation of Field-fabricated Fenestration and Exterior Doors.** Field-fabricated fenestration and field-fabricated exterior doors may be installed only if the compliance documentation has demonstrated compliance for the installation using U-factors from Table 110.6-A and SHGC values from Table 110.6-B. Field-fabricated fenestration and field-fabricated exterior doors shall be caulked between the fenestration products or exterior door and the building, and shall be weatherstripped.

**EXCEPTION to Section 110.6(b):** Unframed glass doors and fire doors need not be weather stripped or caulked.

TABLE 110.6-A DEFAULT FENESTRATION PRODUCT U-FACTORS

FRAME	PRODUCT TYPE	SINGLE PANE <sup>3,4</sup> U-FACTOR	DOUBLE PANE <sup>1,3,4</sup> U-FACTOR	GLASS BLOCK <sup>2,3</sup> U-FACTOR
Metal	Operable	1.28	0.79	0.87
	Fixed	1.19	0.71	0.72
	Greenhouse/garden window	2.26	1.40	N.A.
	Glazed Doors	1.25	0.77	N.A.
	Skylight	1.98	1.30	N.A.
Metal, Thermal Break	Operable	N.A.	0.66	N.A.
	Fixed	N.A.	0.55	N.A.
	Greenhouse/garden window	N.A.	1.12	N.A.
	Glazed Doors	N.A.	0.59	N.A.
	Skylight	N.A.	1.11	N.A.
Nonmetal	Operable	0.99	0.58	0.60
	Fixed	1.04	0.55	0.57
	Glazed Doors	0.99	0.53	N.A.
	Greenhouse/garden windows	1.94	1.06	N.A.
	Skylight	1.47	0.84	N.A.

1. For all dual-glazed fenestration products, adjust the listed U-factors as follows:
  - a. Add 0.05 for products with dividers between panes if spacer is less than 7/16 inch wide.
  - b. Add 0.05 to any product with true divided lite (dividers through the panes).
2. Translucent or transparent panels shall use glass block values when not rated by NFRC 100.
3. Visible Transmittance (VT) shall be calculated by using Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA6.
4. Windows with window film applied that is not rated by NFRC 100 shall use the default values from this table.

TABLE 110.6-B DEFAULT SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT (SHGC)

FRAME TYPE	PRODUCT	GLAZING	FENESTRATION PRODUCT SHGC		
			Single Pane <sup>2,3</sup> SHGC	Double Pane <sup>2,3</sup> SHGC	Glass Block <sup>1,2</sup> SHGC
Metal	Operable	Clear	0.80	0.70	0.70
	Fixed	Clear	0.83	0.73	0.73
	Operable	Tinted	0.67	0.59	N.A.
	Fixed	Tinted	0.68	0.60	N.A.
Metal, Thermal Break	Operable	Clear	N.A.	0.63	N.A.
	Fixed	Clear	N.A.	0.69	N.A.
	Operable	Tinted	N.A.	0.53	N.A.
	Fixed	Tinted	N.A.	0.57	N.A.
Nonmetal	Operable	Clear	0.74	0.65	0.70
	Fixed	Clear	0.76	0.67	0.67
	Operable	Tinted	0.60	0.53	N.A.
	Fixed	Tinted	0.63	0.55	N.A.
<p>1 Translucent or transparent panels shall use glass block values when not rated by NFRC 200.</p> <p>2. Visible Transmittance (VT) shall be calculated by using Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA6.</p> <p>3. Windows with window film applied that is not rated by NFRC 200 shall use the default values from this table.</p>					

---

**SECTION 110.7 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS TO LIMIT AIR LEAKAGE**

All joints, penetrations and other openings in the building envelope that are potential sources of air leakage shall be caulked, gasketed, weather stripped, or otherwise sealed to limit infiltration and exfiltration.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code

---

## SECTION 110.8 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR INSULATION, ROOFING PRODUCTS AND RADIANT BARRIERS

- (a) **Insulation Certification by Manufacturers.** All insulation shall be certified by Department of Consumer Affairs, Bureau of Electronic and Appliance Repair, Home Furnishing and Thermal Insulation that the insulation conductive thermal performance is approved pursuant to the California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 12, Chapters 12-13, Article 3, “Standards for Insulating Material.”
- (b) **Installation of Urea Formaldehyde Foam Insulation.** Urea formaldehyde foam insulation may be applied or installed only if:
1. It is installed in exterior side walls; and
  2. A four-mil-thick plastic polyethylene vapor retarder or equivalent plastic sheathing vapor retarder is installed between the urea formaldehyde foam insulation and the interior space in all applications.
- (c) **Flame Spread Rating of Insulation.** All insulating material shall be installed in compliance with the flame spread rating and smoke density requirements of the CBC.
- (d) **Installation of Insulation in Existing Buildings.** Insulation installed in an existing attic, or on an existing duct or water heater, shall comply with the applicable requirements of Subsections 1, 2, and 3 below. If a contractor installs the insulation, the contractor shall certify to the customer, in writing, that the insulation meets the applicable requirements of Subsections 1, 2, and 3 below.
1. **Attics.** If insulation is installed in the existing attic of a low-rise residential building, the R-value of the total amount of insulation (after addition of insulation to the amount, if any, already in the attic) shall meet the requirements of Section 150.0(a).  
**EXCEPTION to Section 110.8(d)1:** Where the accessible space in the attic is not large enough to accommodate the required R-value, the entire accessible space shall be filled with insulation provided such installation does not violate Section 1203.2 of Title 24, Part 2.
  2. **Water heaters.** If external insulation is installed on an existing unfired water storage tank or on an existing back-up tank for a solar water-heating system, it shall have an R-value of at least R-12, or the heat loss of the tank surface based on an 80°F water-air temperature difference shall be less than 6.5 Btu per hour per square foot.
  3. **Ducts.** If insulation is installed on an existing space-conditioning duct, it shall comply with Section 604.0 of the CMC.
- (e) RESERVED
- (f) RESERVED
- (g) **Insulation Requirements for Heated Slab Floors.** Heated slab floors shall be insulated according to the requirements in TABLE 110.8-A.
1. Insulation materials in ground contact must:
    - A. Comply with the certification requirements of Section 110.8(a); and
    - B. Have a water absorption rate for the insulation material alone without facings that are no greater than 0.3 percent when tested in accordance with Test Method A – 24 Hour-Immersion of ASTM C272.
    - C. Water vapor permeance no greater than 2.0 perm/inch when tested in accordance with ASTM E96.
  2. Insulation installation must:
    - A. Be covered with a solid guard that protects against damage from ultraviolet radiation, moisture, landscaping operation, equipment maintenance, and wind; and

- B. Include a rigid plate, which penetrates the slab and blocks the insulation from acting as a conduit for insects from the ground to the structure above the foundation.

**TABLE 110.8-A SLAB INSULATION REQUIREMENTS FOR HEATED SLAB FLOOR**

Insulation Location	Insulation Orientation	Installation Requirements	Climate Zone	Insulation R-Value
Outside edge of heated slab, either inside or outside the foundation wall	Vertical	From the level of the top of the slab, down 16 inches or to the frost line, whichever is greater. Insulation may stop at the top of the footing where this is less than the required depth. For below grade slabs, vertical insulation shall be extended from the top of the foundation wall to the bottom of the foundation (or the top of the footing) or to the frost line, whichever is greater.	1 – 15	5
			16	10
Between heated slab and outside foundation wall	Vertical and Horizontal	Vertical insulation from top of slab at inside edge of outside wall down to the top of the horizontal insulation. Horizontal insulation from the outside edge of the vertical insulation extending 4 feet toward the center of the slab in a direction normal to the outside of the building in plan view.	1 – 15	5
			16	10 vertical and 7 horizontal

(h) **Wet Insulation Systems.** When insulation is installed on roofs above the roofing membrane or layer used to seal the roof from water penetration, the effective R-value of the insulation shall be as specified in Reference Joint Appendix JA4.

(i) **Roofing Products Solar Reflectance and Thermal Emittance.**

1. In order to meet the requirements of Sections 140.1, 140.2, 140.3(a)1, 141.0(b)2B, 150.1(c)11, 150.2(b)1H or 150.2(b)2, a roofing product’s thermal emittance and an aged solar reflectance shall be certified and labeled according to the requirements of Section 10-113.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 110.8(i)1:** Roofing products that are not certified according to Section 10-113 shall assume the following default aged solar reflectance/thermal emittance values:

- A. For asphalt shingles: 0.08/0.75
- B. For all other roofing products: 0.10/0.75

2. If CRRC testing for an aged solar reflectance is not available for any roofing products, the aged value shall be derived from the CRRC initial value using the equation  $\rho_{aged} = [0.2 + \beta[\rho_{initial} - 0.2]]$ , where  $\rho_{initial}$  = the initial solar reflectance and soiling resistance  $\beta$  is listed by product type in TABLE 110.8-B.

**TABLE 110.8-B VALUES OF SOILING RESISTANCE  $\beta$  BY PRODUCT TYPE**

Product Type	CRRC Product Category	$\beta$
Field-Applied Coating	Field-Applied Coating	0.65
Other	Not A Field-Applied Coating	0.70

3. Solar Reflectance Index (SRI), calculated as specified by ASTM E 1980-01, may be used as an alternative to thermal emittance and an aged solar reflectance when complying with the requirements of Sections 140.2, 140.3(a)1, 141.0(b)2B, 150.1(c)11, 150.2(b)1H, or 150.2(b)2. SRI calculations shall be based on moderate wind velocity of 2-6 meters per second. The SRI shall be calculated based on the aged solar reflectance value of the roofing products.
4. Liquid applied roof coatings applied to low-sloped roofs in the field as the top surface of a roof covering shall:

- A. Be applied across the entire roof surface to meet the dry mil thickness or coverage recommended by the coating manufacturer, taking into consideration the substrate on which the coating is applied; and
- B. Meet the minimum performance requirements listed in TABLE 110.8-C or the minimum performance requirements of ASTM C836, D3468, or D6694, whichever are appropriate to the coating material.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 110.8(i)4B:** Aluminum-pigmented asphalt roof coatings shall meet the requirements of ASTM D2824 and be installed as specified by ASTM D3805.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 110.8(i)4B:** Cement-based roof coatings shall contain a minimum of 20 percent cement and shall meet the requirements of ASTM C1583, ASTM D822, and ASTM D5870.

TABLE 110.8-C MINIMUM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR LIQUID APPLIED ROOF COATINGS

Physical Property	ASTM Test Procedure	Requirement
Initial percent elongation (break)	D 2370	Minimum 200% @ 73° F (23° C)
Initial percent elongation (break) OR Initial Flexibility	D 2370 D522, Test B	Minimum 60% @ 0° F (-18° C) Minimum pass 1" mandrel @ 0° F (-18° C)
Initial tensile strength (maximum stress)	D 2370	Minimum 100 psi (1.38 Mpa) @ 73° F (23° C)
Initial tensile strength (maximum stress) OR Initial Flexibility	D 2370 D522, Test B	Minimum 200 psi (2.76 Mpa) @ 0° F (-18° C) Minimum pass 1" mandrel @ 0° F (-18° C)
Final percent elongation (break) after accelerated weathering 1000 h	D2370	Minimum 100% @ 73° F (23° C)
Final percent elongation (break) after accelerated weathering 1000 h OR Flexibility after accelerated weathering 1000 h	D2370 D522, Test B	Minimum 40% @ 0° F (-18° C) Minimum pass 1" mandrel @ 0° F (-18° C)
Permeance	D 1653	Maximum 50 perms
Accelerated weathering 1000 h	D 4798	No cracking or checking <sup>1</sup>
1. Any cracking or checking visible to the eye fails the test procedure.		

(j) **Radiant Barrier.** A radiant barrier shall have an emittance of 0.05 or less, tested in accordance with ASTM C1371 or ASTM E408, and shall be certified to the Department of Consumer Affairs as required by Title 24, Part12, Chapter 12-13, Standards for Insulating Material.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code

---

## SECTION 110.9 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR LIGHTING CONTROLS

- (a) All lighting control devices and systems and all light sources subject to the requirements of Section 110.9 shall meet the following requirements:
1. Shall be installed only if the lighting control or light source complies with all of the applicable requirements of Section 110.9.
  2. Lighting controls may be individual devices or systems consisting of two or more components.
  4. Shall meet the Lighting Control Installation requirements in Section 130.4.
- (b) **All Lighting Controls.** Lighting controls listed in Section 110.9(b) shall comply with the requirements listed below; and all components of the system considered together as installed shall meet all applicable requirements for the application for which they are installed as required in Sections 130.0 through 130.5, Sections 140.6 through 140.8, Section 141.0, and Section 150.0(k).
1. **Time-Switch Lighting Controls.** All controls that provide time-switch functionality, including all automatic and astronomical time-switch controls, shall have program backup capabilities that prevent the loss of the device's schedule for at least 7 days, and the device's date and time for at least 72 hours if power is interrupted. In addition:
    - A. Time-Switch Controls installed in nonresidential buildings shall
      - i. For each connected load, be capable of providing manual override to each connected load and of resuming normally scheduled operation after a manual override is initiated within 2 hours; and
      - ii. Provide an automatic holiday shutoff feature that turns off all connected loads for at least 24 hours and then resumes normally scheduled operation.
    - B. Astronomical Time-Switch Controls shall:
      - i. Have sunrise and sunset prediction accuracy within plus-or-minus 15 minutes and timekeeping accuracy within 5 minutes per year;
      - ii. Be capable of displaying date, current time, sunrise time, sunset time, and switching times for each step during programming;
      - iii. Be capable of automatically adjusting for daylight savings time; and
      - iv. Have the ability to independently offset the on and off for each channel by at least 90 minutes before and after sunrise or sunset.
    - C. Multi-Level Time-Switch Controls shall include at least 2 separately programmable steps per zone.
    - D. Time-Switch Controls installed outdoors shall have setback functions that allow the lighting on each controlled channel to be switched or dimmed to lower levels. The set back functions shall be capable of being programmed by the user for at least one specific time of day.
  2. **Daylighting Controls.** Controls that provide automatic daylighting functionality shall:
    - A. Automatically return to its most recent time delay settings within 60 minutes of the last received input when left in calibration mode;
    - B. Have a set point control that easily distinguishes settings to within 10 percent of full scale adjustment;
    - C. Provide a linear response within 5 percent accuracy over the range of illuminance measured by the light sensor; and
    - D. Be capable of being calibrated in a manner that the person initiating the calibration is remote from the sensor during calibration to avoid influencing calibration accuracy, for example by having a light sensor that is physically separated from where the calibration adjustments are made.

3. **Dimmers.** Controls that provide dimming functionality shall:
  - A. Be capable of reducing lighting power consumption by a minimum of 65% when at its lowest setting;
  - B. Provide reduced flicker operation, meaning that directly controlled light sources shall be provided electrical power such that the light output has an amplitude modulation of less than 30 percent for frequencies less than 200 Hz without causing premature lamp failure;
  - C. Provide an off setting which produces a zero lumen output; and
  - D. For wall box dimmers and associated switches designed for use in three way circuits, be capable of turning lights off, and on to the level set by the dimmer if the lights are off.
4. **Occupant Sensing Controls.** Occupant sensing controls include occupant sensors, motion sensors, and vacancy sensors, including those with a Partial-ON or Partial-OFF function. Occupant sensing controls shall:
  - A. Be capable of automatically turning the controlled lights in the area either off or down no more than 20 minutes after the area has been vacated;
  - B. For manual-on controls, have a grace period of no less than 15 seconds and no more than 30 seconds to turn on lighting automatically after the sensor has timed out; and
  - C. Provide a visible status signal that indicates that the device is operating properly, or that it has failed or malfunctioned. The visible status signal may have an override that turns off the signal.

**EXCEPTION to Section 110.9(b)4:** Occupant Sensing Control systems may consist of a combination of single or multi-level Occupant, Motion, or Vacancy Sensor Controls, provided that components installed to comply with manual-on requirements shall not be capable of conversion by occupants from manual-on to automatic-on functionality.
5. **Part-Night Outdoor Lighting Controls,** as defined in Section 100.1, shall meet all of the following requirements:
  - A. Have sunrise and sunset prediction accuracy within +/- 15 minutes, using both light sensing and time measurement; and
  - B. Have the ability to reduce or turn off outdoor luminaire power at night as required in Section 130.2(c) ; and
  - C. Shall be programmable to reduce or turn off outdoor luminaire power at any time as determined by the user. Time-based scheduling control is allowed to be relative to both sunset and sunrise, and to the midpoint between sunset and sunrise.
6. **Sensors used to detect occupants.** Sensors that are used by occupant sensing controls to detect occupants shall meet all of the following requirements:
  - A. Sensors shall not incorporate switches or mechanical devices that allow the sensor to be disabled without changing the settings of the control.
  - B. Sensors that utilize ultrasonic radiation for detection of occupants shall:
    - i. comply with 21 C.F.R. part 1002.12;
    - ii. not emit audible sound; and
    - iii. not emit ultrasound in excess of the decibel levels shown in Table 110.9-A measured no more than five feet from the source, on axis.
  - C. Sensors that utilize microwave radiation for detection of occupants shall:
    - i. comply with 47 C.F.R. parts 2 and 15; and
    - ii. not emit radiation in excess of 1 milliwatt per square centimeter measured at no more than 5 centimeters from the emission surface of the device.
7. **Indicator Lights.** Indicator lights integral to lighting controls shall consume no more than one watt of power per indicator light.

- (c) **Track Lighting Integral Current Limiter.** An integral current limiter for line-voltage track lighting shall be recognized for compliance with Part 6 only if it meets all of the following requirements:
1. Shall have the identical volt-ampere (VA) rating of the current limiter, as installed and rated for compliance with Part 6 clearly marked as follows; and:
    - A. So that it is visible for the enforcement agency's field inspection without opening coverplates, fixtures, or panels; and
    - B. Permanently marked on the circuit breaker; and
    - C. On a factory-printed label that is permanently affixed to a non-removable base-plate inside the wiring compartment.
  2. Shall have a conspicuous factory installed label permanently affixed to the inside of the wiring compartment warning against removing, tampering with, rewiring, or bypassing the device; and
  3. Each electrical panel from which track lighting integral current limiters are energized shall have a factory printed label permanently affixed and prominently located, stating the following: "NOTICE: Current limiting devices installed in track lighting integral current limiters connected to this panel shall only be replaced with the same or lower amperage. Adding track or replacement of existing current limiters with higher continuous ampere rating will void the track lighting integral current limiter certification, and will require re-submittal of compliance documentation to the enforcement agency responsible for compliance with the California Title 24, Part 6 Building Energy Efficiency Standards."
- (d) **Track Lighting Supplementary Overcurrent Protection Panel.** A Track Lighting Supplementary Overcurrent Protection Panel shall be used only for line-voltage track lighting and shall be recognized for compliance with Part 6 only if it meets all of the following requirements:
1. Shall be listed as defined in Section 100.1; and
  2. Shall have a permanently installed label that is prominently located stating the following: "NOTICE: This Panel for Track Lighting Energy Code Compliance Only. The overcurrent protection devices in this panel shall only be replaced with the same or lower amperage. No other overcurrent protective device shall be added to this panel. Adding to, or replacement of existing overcurrent protective device(s) with higher continuous ampere rating, will void the panel listing and require re-submittal of compliance documentation to the enforcement agency responsible for compliance with the California Title 24, Part 6 Building Energy Efficiency Standards."

TABLE 110.9-A - ULTRASOUND MAXIMUM DECIBEL VALUES

Mid-frequency of Sound Pressure Third-Octave Band (in kHz)	Maximum db Level within Third-Octave Band (in dB reference 20 micropascals)
Less than 20	80
20 or more to less than 25	105
25 or more to less than 31.5	110
31.5 or more	115

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 52943, Public Resources Code

---

## SECTION 110.10 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR SOLAR READY BUILDINGS

### (a) Covered Occupancies.

1. **Single Family Residences.** Single family residences located in subdivisions with ten or more single family residences and where the application for a tentative subdivision map for the residences has been deemed complete approved by the enforcement agency, which do not have a photovoltaic system installed, shall comply with the requirements of Section 110.10(b) through 110.10(e).
2. **Low-rise Multifamily Buildings.** Low-rise multi-family buildings that do not have a photovoltaic system installed shall comply with the requirements of Section 110.10(b) through 110.10(d).
3. **Hotel/Motel Occupancies and High-rise Multifamily Buildings.** Hotel/motel occupancies and high-rise multifamily buildings with ten habitable stories or fewer shall comply with the requirements of Section 110.10(b) through 110.10(d).
4. **Nonresidential Buildings.** Nonresidential buildings with three habitable stories or fewer, other than healthcare facilities, shall comply with the requirements of Section 110.10(b) through 110.10(d).

### (b) Solar Zone.

1. **Minimum Solar Zone Area.** The solar zone shall have a minimum total area as described below. The solar zone shall comply with access, pathway, smoke ventilation, and spacing requirements as specified in Title 24, Part 9 or other Parts of Title 24 or in any requirements adopted by a local jurisdiction. The solar zone total area shall be comprised of areas that have no dimension less than five feet and are no less than 80 square feet each for buildings with roof areas less than or equal to 10,000 square feet or no less than 160 square feet each for buildings with roof areas greater than 10,000 square feet.

- A. **Single Family Residences.** The solar zone shall be located on the roof or overhang of the building and have a total area no less than 250 square feet.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 110.10(b)1A:** Single family residences with a permanently installed domestic solar water-heating system meeting the installation criteria specified in the Reference Residential Appendix RA4 and with a minimum solar savings fraction of 0.50.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 110.10(b)1A:** Single family residences with three habitable stories or more and with a total floor area less than or equal to 2000 square feet and having a solar zone total area no less than 150 square feet.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 110.10(b)1A:** Single family residences located in the Wildland-Urban Interface Fire Area as defined in Title 24, Part 2 and having a whole house fan and having a solar zone total area no less than 150 square feet.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 110.10(b)1A:** Buildings with a designated solar zone area that is no less than 50 percent of the potential solar zone area. The potential solar zone area is the total area of any low-sloped roofs where the annual solar access is 70 percent or greater and any steep-sloped roofs oriented between 90 degrees and 300 degrees of true north where the annual solar access is 70 percent or greater. Solar access is the ratio of solar insolation including shade to the solar insolation without shade. Shading from obstructions located on the roof or any other part of the building shall not be included in the determination of annual solar access.

**EXCEPTION 5 to Section 110.10(b)1A:** Single family residences having a solar zone total area no less than 150 square feet and where all thermostats are demand responsive controls and comply with Section 110.12(a), and are capable of receiving and responding to Demand Response Signals prior to granting of an occupancy permit by the enforcing agency.

**EXCEPTION 6 to Section 110.10(b)1A:** Single family residences meeting the following conditions:

- A. All thermostats are demand responsive controls that comply with Section 110.12(a), and are capable of receiving and responding to Demand Response Signals prior to granting of an occupancy permit by the enforcing agency.

- B. Comply with one of the following measures:
- i. Install a dishwasher that meets or exceeds the ENERGY STAR Program requirements with a refrigerator that meets or exceeds the ENERGY STAR Program requirements, a whole house fan driven by an electronically commutated motor, or an SAE J1772 Level 2 Electric Vehicle Supply Equipment (EVSE or EV Charger) with a minimum of 40 amperes; or
  - ii. Install a home automation system capable of, at a minimum, controlling the appliances and lighting of the dwelling and responding to demand response signals; or
  - iii. Install alternative plumbing piping to permit the discharge from the clothes washer and all showers and bathtubs to be used for an irrigation system in compliance with the *California Plumbing Code* and any applicable local ordinances; or
  - iv. Install a rainwater catchment system designed to comply with the *California Plumbing Code* and any applicable local ordinances, and that uses rainwater flowing from at least 65 percent of the available roof area.

- B. Low-rise and High-rise Multifamily Buildings, Hotel/Motel Occupancies, and Nonresidential Buildings.** The solar zone shall be located on the roof or overhang of the building or on the roof or overhang of another structure located within 250 feet of the building or on covered parking installed with the building project, and shall have a total area no less than 15 percent of the total roof area of the building excluding any skylight area. The solar zone requirement is applicable to the entire building, including mixed occupancy.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 110.10(b)1B:** High-rise Multifamily Buildings, Hotel/Motel Occupancies, and Nonresidential Buildings with a permanently installed solar electric system having a nameplate DC power rating, measured under Standard Test Conditions, of no less than one watt per square foot of roof area.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 110.10(b)1B:** High-rise Multifamily Buildings, Hotel/Motel Occupancies with a permanently installed domestic solar water-heating system complying with Section 150.1(c)8Biii.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 110.10(b)1B:** Buildings with a designated solar zone area that is no less than 50 percent of the potential solar zone area. The potential solar zone area is the total area of any low-sloped roofs where the annual solar access is 70 percent or greater and any steep-sloped roofs oriented between 90 degrees and 300 degrees of true north where the annual solar access is 70 percent or greater. Solar access is the ratio of solar insolation including shade to the solar insolation without shade. Shading from obstructions located on the roof or any other part of the building shall not be included in the determination of annual solar access.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 110.10(b)1B:** Low-rise and high-rise multifamily buildings with all thermostats in each dwelling unit are demand response controls that comply with Section 110.12(a), and are capable of receiving and responding to Demand Response Signals prior to granting of an occupancy permit by the enforcing agency. In addition, either A or B below:

- A. In each dwelling unit, comply with one of the following measures:
- i. Install a dishwasher that meets or exceeds the ENERGY STAR Program requirements with either a refrigerator that meets or exceeds the ENERGY STAR Program requirements or a whole house fan driven by an electronically commutated motor; or
  - ii. Install a home automation system that complies with Section 110.12(a) and is capable of, at a minimum, controlling the appliances and lighting of the dwelling and responding to demand response signals; or
  - iii. Install alternative plumbing piping to permit the discharge from the clothes washer and all showers and bathtubs to be used for an irrigation system in compliance with the *California Plumbing Code* and any applicable local ordinances; or
  - iv. Install a rainwater catchment system designed to comply with the *California Plumbing Code* and any applicable local ordinances, and that uses rainwater flowing from at least 65 percent of the available roof area.

B. Meet the Title 24, Part 11, Section A4.106.8.2 requirements for electric vehicle charging spaces.

**EXCEPTION 5 to Section 110.10(b)1B:** Buildings where the roof is designed and approved to be used for vehicular traffic or parking or for a heliport.

2. **Azimuth.** All sections of the solar zone located on steep-sloped roofs shall be oriented between 90 degrees and 300 degrees of true north.
3. **Shading.**
  - A. No obstructions, including but not limited to, vents, chimneys, architectural features, and roof mounted equipment, shall be located in the solar zone.
  - B. Any obstruction, located on the roof or any other part of the building that projects above a solar zone shall be located at least twice the distance, measured in the horizontal plane, of the height difference between the highest point of the obstruction and the horizontal projection of the nearest point of the solar zone, measured in the vertical plane.

**EXCEPTION to Section 110.10(b)3:** Any roof obstruction, located on the roof or any other part of the building, that is oriented north of all points on the solar zone.

4. **Structural Design Loads on Construction Documents.** For areas of the roof designated as solar zone, the structural design loads for roof dead load and roof live load shall be clearly indicated on the construction documents.

**NOTE:** Section 110.10(b)4 does not require the inclusion of any collateral loads for future solar energy systems.

(c) **Interconnection Pathways.**

1. The construction documents shall indicate a location reserved for inverters and metering equipment and a pathway reserved for routing of conduit from the solar zone to the point of interconnection with the electrical service.
2. For single family residences and central water-heating systems, the construction documents shall indicate a pathway for routing of plumbing from the solar zone to the water-heating system.

(d) **Documentation.** A copy of the construction documents or a comparable document indicating the information from Sections 110.10(b) through 110.10(c) shall be provided to the occupant.

(e) **Main Electrical Service Panel.**

1. The main electrical service panel shall have a minimum busbar rating of 200 amps.
2. The main electrical service panel shall have a reserved space to allow for the installation of a double pole circuit breaker for a future solar electric installation. The reserved space shall be permanently marked as "For Future Solar Electric".

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402, 25402.1, and 25605, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.8, 25605, and 25943, Public Resources Code

---

## **SECTION 110.11 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL POWER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM**

**Certification by Manufacturers.** Any electrical power distribution system equipment listed in this section may be installed only if the manufacture has certified to the Commission that the equipment complies with all the applicable requirements of this section.

- (a) **Low-voltage dry-type distribution transformer** shall be certified by the Manufacturer as required by the Title 20 Appliance Efficiency Regulations.

**EXCEPTION to Section 110.11(a):**

1. autotransformer;
2. drive (isolation) transformer;
3. grounding transformer;
4. machine-tool (control) transformer;
5. non-ventilated transformer;
6. rectifier transformer;
7. regulating transformer;
8. sealed transformer;
9. special-impedance transformer;
10. testing transformer;
11. transformer with tap range of 20 percent or more;
12. uninterruptible power supply transformer; or
13. welding transformer.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code

---

## SECTION 110.12 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR DEMAND MANAGEMENT

Buildings, other than healthcare facilities, shall comply with the applicable demand responsive control requirements of Sections 110.12(a) through 110.12(d).

**(a) Demand responsive controls.**

1. All demand responsive controls shall be either:
  - A. A certified OpenADR 2.0a or OpenADR 2.0b Virtual End Node (VEN), as specified under Clause 11, Conformance, in the applicable OpenADR 2.0 Specification; or
  - B. Certified by the manufacturer as being capable of responding to a demand response signal from a certified OpenADR 2.0b Virtual End Node by automatically implementing the control functions requested by the Virtual End Node for the equipment it controls.
2. All demand responsive controls shall be capable of communicating using one or more of the following: Wi-Fi, ZigBee, BACnet, Ethernet, or hard-wiring.
3. Demand responsive controls may incorporate and use additional protocols beyond those specified in Sections 110.12(a)1 and 2.
4. When communications are disabled or unavailable, all demand responsive controls shall continue to perform all other control functions provided by the control.
5. Demand responsive control thermostats shall comply with Reference Joint Appendix 5 (JA5), Technical Specifications For Occupant Controlled Smart Thermostats.

**(b) Demand Responsive Zonal HVAC Controls.** Nonresidential HVAC systems with DDC to the Zone level shall be programmed to allow centralized demand shed for non-critical zones as follows:

1. The controls shall have a capability to remotely increase the operating cooling temperature set points by 4 degrees or more in all non-critical zones on signal from a centralized contact or software point within an Energy Management Control System (EMCS).
2. The controls shall have a capability to remotely decrease the operating heating temperature set points by 4 degrees or more in all non-critical zones on signal from a centralized contact or software point within an EMCS.
3. The controls shall have capabilities to remotely reset the temperatures in all non-critical zones to original operating levels on signal from a centralized contact or software point within an EMCS.
4. The controls shall be programmed to provide an adjustable rate of change for the temperature increase, decrease, and reset.
5. The controls shall have the following features:
  - A. Disabled. Disabled by authorized facility operators; and
  - B. Manual control. Manual control by authorized facility operators to allow adjustment of heating and cooling set points globally from a single point in the EMCS; and
  - C. Automatic Demand Shed Control. Upon receipt of a demand response signal, the space-conditioning systems shall conduct a centralized demand shed, as specified in Sections 110.12(b)1 and 110.12(b)2, for non-critical zones during the demand response period.

**(c) Demand Responsive Lighting Controls.** Lighting controls in nonresidential buildings larger than 10,000 square feet shall be capable of automatically reducing lighting power in response to a Demand Response Signal. General lighting shall be reduced in a manner consistent with the uniform level of illumination requirements in TABLE 130.1-A.

1. For compliance testing, the lighting controls shall demonstrate a lighting power reduction in controlled spaces of a minimum of 15 percent below the total installed lighting power. The controls may provide additional demand responsive functions or abilities.

**EXCEPTION 1 to 110.12(c):** Spaces with a lighting power density of 0.5 watts per square foot or less are not required to install demand responsive controls and do not count toward the 10,000 square foot threshold.

**EXCEPTION 2 to 110.12(c):** Spaces where a health or life safety statute, ordinance, or regulation does not permit the lighting to be reduced are not required to install demand responsive controls and do not count toward the 10,000 square foot threshold.

- (d) **Demand Responsive Electronic Message Center Control.** Controls for electronic message centers greater than 15 kW shall be capable of reducing the lighting power by a minimum of 30 percent when receiving a demand response signal.

**EXCEPTION to Section 110.12(d):** Electronic message centers that are not permitted by a health or life safety statute, ordinance, or regulation to be reduced.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

(This page intentionally left blank.)

## **SUBCHAPTER 3**

# **NONRESIDENTIAL, HIGH-RISE RESIDENTIAL, HOTEL/MOTEL OCCUPANCIES, AND COVERED PROCESSES—MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS**

---

### **SECTION 120.0— GENERAL**

Sections 120.1 through 120.9 establish requirements for the design and installation of building envelopes, ventilation, space-conditioning and service water-heating systems and equipment in nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel buildings as well as covered processes that are within the scope of Section 100.0(a).

**NOTE:** The requirements of Sections 120.1 through 120.9 apply to newly constructed buildings. Section 141.0 specifies which requirements of Sections 120.1 through 120.9 also apply to additions or alterations to existing buildings.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

## SECTION 120.1 – REQUIREMENTS FOR VENTILATION AND INDOOR AIR QUALITY

### (a) General Requirements.

1. All occupiable spaces in high-rise residential buildings, hotel/motel buildings, and nonresidential buildings other than healthcare facilities shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 120.1(a) through 120.1(g). Healthcare facilities shall be ventilated in accordance with Chapter 4 of the California Mechanical Code.
2. The required outdoor air-ventilation rate and the air-distribution system design shall be clearly identified on the plans in accordance with Section 10-103 of Title 24, Part 1.

### (b) High-rise Residential Buildings.

Attached dwellings units shall comply with the requirements of subsections 1 and 2 below. Occupiable spaces other than attached dwelling units shall comply with the requirements of section 120.1(c).

#### 1. Air Filtration.

**A.** System types specified in subsections i, ii, and iii shall be provided with air filters in accordance with Sections 120.1(b)1B through 1D. System types specified in subsection i shall also comply with Section 120.1(b)1E.

- i.** Mechanical space conditioning systems that supply air to an occupiable space through ductwork exceeding 10 ft (3 m) in length.
- ii.** Mechanical supply-only ventilation systems that provide outside air to an occupiable space.
- iii.** The supply side of mechanical balanced ventilation systems, including heat recovery ventilation systems and energy recovery ventilation systems that provide outside air to an occupiable space.

#### **B.** System Design and Installation.

- i.** The system shall be designed to ensure that all recirculated air or outdoor air supplied to the occupiable space is filtered before passing through any system thermal conditioning components.

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.1(b)1Bi:** For heat recovery ventilators and energy recovery ventilators the location of the filters required by Section 120.1(b) may be downstream of a system thermal conditioning component, provided the system is equipped with ancillary filtration upstream of the system's thermal conditioning component.

- ii.** All systems shall be designed to accommodate the clean-filter pressure drop imposed by the system air filter(s). The design airflow rate, and maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop at the design airflow rate applicable to each air filter shall be determined and reported on labels according to subsection iv below.

Systems specified in Section 120.1(b)1Ai shall be equipped with air filters that meet either subsection a or b below:

- a.** Nominal two-inch minimum depth filter(s) shall be sized by the system designer; or
- b.** Nominal one-inch minimum depth filters(s) shall be allowed if the filter(s) are sized according to Equation 120.1-A, based on a maximum face velocity of 150 ft per minute and according to the maximum allowable clean filter pressure drop specified in Section 120.1(b)1Dii

$$A_{\text{face}} = Q_{\text{filter}} / V_{\text{face}} \quad (\text{Equation 120.1-A})$$

Where,

$A_{\text{face}}$  = air filter face area, the product of air filter nominal length x nominal width, ft<sup>2</sup>

$Q_{\text{filter}}$  = design airflow rate for the air filter, ft<sup>3</sup>/min

$V_{\text{face}}$  = air filter face velocity  $\leq 150$ , ft/min

- iii. All system air filters shall be located and installed in such a manner as to be accessible for regular service by the system owner.
  - iv. All system air filter installation locations shall be labeled to disclose the applicable design airflow rate and the maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop. The labels shall be permanently affixed to the air filter installation location, readily legible, and visible to a person replacing the air filter.
- C. Air Filter Efficiency. The system shall be provided with air filter(s) having a designated efficiency equal to or greater than MERV 13 when tested in accordance with ASHRAE Standard 52.2, or a particle size efficiency rating equal to or greater than 50 percent in the 0.30-1.0  $\mu\text{m}$  range and equal to or greater than 85 percent in the 1.0-3.0  $\mu\text{m}$  range, when tested in accordance with AHRI Standard 680.
- D. Air Filter Pressure Drop. All systems shall be provided with air filter(s) that conform to the applicable maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop specified by i, ii or iii below, when tested using ASHRAE Standard 52.2, or as rated using AHRI Standard 680, for the applicable design airflow rate(s) for the system air filter(s).
- i. The maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop determined by the system design for the nominal two inch minimum depth air filter required by Section 120.1(b)1Biia; or
  - ii. A maximum of 25 PA (0.1 in. of water) clean-filter pressure drop shall be allowed for a nominal one-inch depth air filter sized according to Section 120.1(b)1Biib; or
  - iii. For system specified in 120.1(b)1Aii, and 120.1(b)1Aiii, the maximum allowable clean filter pressure drop determined by the system design.
- E. Air Filter Product Labeling. Systems described in 120.1(b)1Ai shall be equipped with air filters that have been labeled by the manufacturer to disclose the efficiency and pressure drop ratings that demonstrate conformance with Sections 120.1(b)1.

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.1(b)1:** Evaporative coolers are not subject to the air filtration requirements of Section 120.1(b)1.

2. **Attached dwelling units.** All dwelling units shall meet the requirements of ASHRAE Standard 62.2, Ventilation and Acceptable Indoor Air Quality in Residential Buildings, subject to the amendments specified in subsection A below. All dwelling units shall comply with the Acceptance requirements specified in subsection B below.

**A. Amendments to ASHRAE 62.2 requirements.**

- i. Window operation is not a permissible method of providing the dwelling unit ventilation airflow specified in subsections iv or v below.
- ii. Continuous operation of central forced air system air handlers used in central fan integrated ventilation systems is not a permissible method of providing the dwelling unit ventilation airflow required in Section 4 of ASHRAE Standard 62.2.

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.1(b)2Aii:** The Energy Commission may approve continuous operation of central fan integrated ventilation systems pursuant to Section 10-109(h).

- iii. Air filtration shall conform to the specifications in Section 120.1(b)1. Compliance with ASHRAE 62.2 Sections 6.7 (Minimum Filtration) and 6.7.1 (Filter Pressure Drop) shall not be required.
- iv. Multifamily attached dwelling units shall comply with subsections a and b.
  - a. Mechanical ventilation airflow shall be provided at rates determined in accordance with Equation 120.1-B.

Total Required Ventilation Rate [ASHRAE 62.2.4.1.1]

$$Q_{\text{tot}} = 0.03A_{\text{floor}} + 7.5(N_{\text{br}} + 1) \quad (\text{Equation 120.1-B})$$

Where,

$Q_{\text{tot}}$  = total required ventilation rate, cfm

$A_{floor}$  = dwelling-unit floor area, ft<sup>2</sup>

$N_{br}$  = number of bedrooms (not to be less than 1)

- b. The mechanical ventilation system shall comply with one of the following subsections 1 or 2 below. When subsection 2 is utilized for compliance, all dwelling units in the multifamily building shall use the same ventilation system type.
  1. A balanced mechanical ventilation system shall provide the required dwelling-unit ventilation airflow.
  2. Continuously operating supply ventilation systems or continuous operating exhaust ventilation systems shall be allowed to be used to provide the required dwelling unit ventilation airflow if the dwelling-unit envelope leakage is less than or equal to 0.3 cubic feet per minute at 50 Pa (0.2 in. of water) per ft<sup>2</sup> of dwelling unit envelope surface area as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.18.2.
- v. Multifamily building central ventilation systems that serve multiple dwelling-units shall be balanced to provide ventilation airflow to each dwelling-unit served at a rate equal to or greater than the rate specified by Equation 120.1-B, but not more than twenty percent greater than the specified rate. These systems shall utilize balancing means to ensure the dwelling unit airflows can be adjusted to meet this balancing requirement. These system balancing means may include but not be limited to constant air regulation devices, orifice plates, and variable speed central fans.
- vi. Kitchen range hoods shall be rated for sound in accordance with Section 7.2 of ASHRAE 62.2.
 

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.1(b)2Avii:** Kitchen range hoods may be rated for sound at a static pressure determined at working speed as specified in HVI 916 Section 7.2.
- vii. Compliance with ASHRAE 62.2 Section 6.5.2 (Space Conditioning System Ducts) shall not be required.
- viii. Compliance with ASHRAE 62.2 Section 4.4 (Control and Operation) shall require manual switches associated with dwelling unit ventilation systems to have a label clearly displaying the following text, or equivalent text: "This switch controls the indoor air quality ventilation for the home. Leave it on unless the outdoor air quality is very poor."

**B. High-Rise Residential Dwelling Unit Acceptance.**

- i. **Airflow Performance.** The dwelling-unit ventilation airflow required by Section 120.1(b)2Aiv or 120.1(b)2Av shall be confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.18.1.
- ii. **Kitchen Range Hoods.** The installed kitchen range hood shall be field verified in accordance with Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.18.1 to confirm the model is rated by HVI to comply with the following requirements:
  - a. The minimum ventilation airflow rate as specified in Section 5 of ASHRAE 62.2.
  - b. The maximum sound rating as specified in Section 120.1(b)2Avi.

(c) **Nonresidential and Hotel/Motel Buildings.** All occupiable spaces shall meet the requirements of subsection 1 and either 2 or 3:

**1. Air Filtration.**

- A. Mechanical system types described in Section 120.1(b)1A shall be provided with air filters to clean the outside and return air prior to its introduction into occupied spaces.
- B. **Air Filter Efficiency.** The filters shall have a designated efficiency equal to or greater than MERV 13 when tested in accordance with ASHRAE Standard 52.2, or a particle size efficiency rating equal to or greater than 50 percent in the 0.30-1.0 μm range, and equal to or greater than 85 percent in the 1.0-3.0 μm range when tested in accordance with AHRI Standard 680; and
- C. Systems shall be equipped with air filters that meet either subsection i or ii below.

- i. Nominal two inch minimum depth filter(s); or
  - ii. Nominal one inch minimum depth filter(s) shall be allowed if the filter(s) are sized according to Equation 120.1-A, based on a maximum face velocity of 150 ft per minute.
2. **Natural Ventilation.** Naturally ventilated spaces shall be designed in accordance with 120.1(c)2A through 120.1(c)2C and include a mechanical ventilation system designed in accordance with 120.2(c)3:
- A. Floor area to be ventilated. Spaces or portions of spaces to be naturally ventilated shall be located within a distance based on the ceiling height, as specified in i, ii and iii. The ceiling height (H) to be used in i, ii or iii shall be the minimum ceiling height in the space, or for ceilings that are increasing in height as distance from the operable openings is increased, the ceiling height shall be determined as the average height of the ceiling within 20 ft from the operable opening. [ASHRAE 62.1:6.4.1]
    - i. Single Side Opening. For spaces with operable opening on one side of the space, the maximum distance from the operable opening shall be not more than 2H. [ASHRAE 62.1:6.4.1.1]
    - ii. Double Side Opening. For spaces with operable openings on two opposite sides of the space, the maximum distance from the operable opening shall be not more than 5H. [ASHRAE 62.1:6.4.1.2]
    - iii. Corner Opening. For spaces with operable openings on two adjacent sides of a space, the maximum distance from the operable openings shall be not more than 5H along a line drawn between the two openings that are the farthest apart. Floor area outside that line shall comply with i or ii. [ASHRAE 62.1:6.4.1.3]
    - iv. Ceiling Height. The ceiling height (h) to be used in Section 120.1(c)2Ai through 120.1(c)2Aiii shall be the minimum ceiling height in the space.
 

EXCEPTION to Section 120.1(c)2Aiv: For ceilings that are increasing in height as distance from the opening is increased, the ceiling height shall be determined as the average height of the ceiling within 20 feet from the operable openings. [ASHRAE 62.1:6.4.1.4]
  - B. Location and Size of Openings. Spaces or portions of spaces to be naturally ventilated shall be permanently open to operable wall openings directly to the outdoors. The openable area shall be not less than 4 percent of the net occupiable floor area. Where openings are covered with louvers or otherwise obstructed, the openable area shall be based on the net free unobstructed area through the opening. Where interior rooms, or portions of rooms, without direct openings to the outdoors are ventilated through adjoining rooms, the opening between rooms shall be permanently unobstructed and have a free area of not less than 8 percent of the area of the interior room or less than 25 square feet. [ASHRAE 62.1:6.4.2]
  - C. Control and Accessibility. The means to open the required operable opening shall be readily accessible to building occupants whenever the space is occupied. Controls shall be designed to coordinate operation of the natural and mechanical ventilation systems. [ASHRAE 62.1:6.4.3]

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 120.1(c)2:** The mechanical ventilation system shall not be required where natural ventilation openings complying with 120.1(c)2 are either permanently open or have controls that prevent the openings from being closed during periods of expected occupancy.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 120.1(c)2:** The mechanical ventilation system shall not be required where the zone is not served by a space conditioning system.

3. **Mechanical Ventilation.** Occupiable spaces shall be ventilated with a mechanical ventilation system capable of providing an outdoor airflow rate ( $V_z$ ) to the zone no less than the larger of A or B as described below:

- A. The outdoor airflow rate to the zone ( $V_z$ ) shall be determined in accordance with Equation 120.1-F; or

$$V_z = R_a \times A_z \quad \text{(Equation 120.1-F)}$$

Where:

$R_a$  = Outdoor airflow rate required per unit area as determined from Table 120.1-A.

$A_z$  = Zone floor area is the net occupiable floor area of the ventilation zone in square feet. B.

For spaces designed for an expected number of occupants or spaces with fixed seating, the outdoor airflow rate to the zone ( $V_z$ ) shall be determined in accordance with Equation 120.1-G;

$$V_z = R_p \times P_z \quad (\text{Equation 120.1-G})$$

Where:

$R_p$  = 15 cubic feet per minute of outdoor airflow per person

$P_z$  = The expected number of occupants. The expected number of occupants shall be the expected number specified by the building designer. For spaces with fixed seating, the expected number of occupants shall be determined in accordance with the California Building Code.

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.1(c)3: Transfer air.** The rate of outdoor air required by Section 120.1(c)3 may be provided with air transferred from other ventilated space if:

- A. Use of transfer air is in accordance with Section 120.1(g); and
  - B. The outdoor air that is supplied to all spaces combined, is sufficient to meet the requirements of Section 120.1(c)3 for each space individually.
4. Exhaust Ventilation. The design exhaust airflow shall be determined in accordance with the requirements in Table 120.1-B. Exhaust makeup air shall be permitted to be any combination of outdoor air, recirculated air, or transfer air. [ASHRAE 62.1:6.5.1]

**(d) Operation and Control Requirements for Minimum Quantities of Outdoor Air.**

1. **Times of occupancy.** The minimum rate of outdoor air required by Section 120.1(c) shall be supplied to each space at all times when the space is usually occupied.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 120.1(d)1:** Demand control ventilation. In intermittently occupied spaces that do not have processes or operations that generate dusts, fumes, mists, vapors or gasses and are not provided with local exhaust ventilation (such as indoor operation of internal combustion engines or areas designated for unvented food service preparation), the rate of outdoor air may be reduced if the ventilation system serving the space is controlled by a demand control ventilation device complying with Section 120.1(d)4 or by an occupant sensor ventilation control device complying with Section 120.1(d)5.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 120.1(d)1:** Temporary reduction. The rate of outdoor air provided to a space may be reduced below the level required by Section 120.1(c) for up to 30 minutes at a time if the average rate for each hour is equal to or greater than the required ventilation rate.

2. **Pre-occupancy.** The lesser of the minimum rate of outdoor air required by Section 120.1(c) or three complete air changes shall be supplied to the entire building during the 1-hour period immediately before the building is normally occupied.
3. **Required Demand Control Ventilation.** Demand ventilation controls complying with 120.1(d)4 are required for a space with a design occupant density, or a maximum occupant load factor for egress purposes in the CBC, greater than or equal to 25 people per 1000 square feet (40 square feet or less per person) if the system serving the space has one or more of the following:
  - A. an air economizer; or
  - B. modulating outside air control; or
  - C. design outdoor airflow rate > 3,000 cfm.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 120.1(d)3:** Where space exhaust is greater than the design ventilation rate specified in Section 120.1(c)3 minus 0.2 cfm per ft<sup>2</sup> of conditioned area.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 120.1(d)3:** Spaces that have processes or operations that generate dusts, fumes, mists, vapors, or gases and are not provided with local exhaust ventilation, such as indoor operation of internal combustion engines or areas designated for unvented food service preparation, daycare sickrooms, science labs, barber shops or beauty and nail salons shall not install demand control ventilation.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 120.1(d)3:** Spaces with an area of less than 150 square feet, or a design occupancy of less than 10 people as specified by Section 120.1(c)3.

**4. Demand Control Ventilation Devices.**

- A. For each system with demand control ventilation (DCV), CO<sub>2</sub> sensors shall be installed in each room that meets the criteria of Section 120.1(d)3 with no less than one sensor per 10,000 ft<sup>2</sup> of floor space. When a zone or a space is served by more than one sensor, a signal from any sensor indicating that CO<sub>2</sub> is near or at the setpoint within the zone or space shall trigger an increase in ventilation.
- B. CO<sub>2</sub> sensors shall be located in the room between 3 ft and 6 ft above the floor or at the anticipated height of the occupants' heads.
- C. Demand ventilation controls shall maintain CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations less than or equal to 600 ppm plus the outdoor air CO<sub>2</sub> concentration in all rooms with CO<sub>2</sub> sensors.

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.1(d)4C:** The outdoor air ventilation rate is not required to be larger than the design outdoor air ventilation rate required by Section 120.1(c)3 regardless of CO<sub>2</sub> concentration.

- D. Outdoor air CO<sub>2</sub> concentration shall be determined by one of the following:
  - i. CO<sub>2</sub> concentration shall be assumed to be 400 ppm without any direct measurement; or
  - ii. CO<sub>2</sub> concentration shall be dynamically measured using a CO<sub>2</sub> sensor located within 4 ft of the outdoor air intake.
- E. When the system is operating during hours of expected occupancy, the controls shall maintain system outdoor air ventilation rates no less than the rate listed in Table 120.1-A for DCV, times the conditioned floor area for spaces with CO<sub>2</sub> sensors, plus the rate required by Section 120.1(c)3 for other spaces served by the system, or the exhaust air rate whichever is greater.
- F. CO<sub>2</sub> sensors shall be certified by the manufacturer to be accurate within plus or minus 75 ppm at a 600 and 1000 ppm concentration when measured at sea level and 25°C, factory calibrated, and certified by the manufacturer to require calibration no more frequently than once every 5 years. Upon detection of sensor failure, the system shall provide a signal which resets to supply the minimum quantity of outside air to levels required by Section 120.1(c)3 to the zone serviced by the sensor at all times that the zone is occupied.
- G. The CO<sub>2</sub> sensor(s) reading for each zone shall be displayed continuously, and shall be recorded on systems with DDC to the zone level.

**5. Occupant Sensor Ventilation Control Devices.** When occupancy sensor ventilation devices are required by Section 120.2(e)3, occupant sensors shall be used to reduce the rate of outdoor air flow when occupants are not present in accordance with the following:

- A. Occupant sensors shall meet the requirements in Section 110.9(b)4 and shall have suitable coverage and placement to detect occupants in the entire space ventilated. If occupant sensors controlling lighting are used for ventilation, the ventilation signal shall be independent of daylighting, manual lighting overrides or manual control of lighting. When a single zone damper or a single zone system serves multiple rooms, there shall be an occupancy sensor in each room and the zone is not considered vacant until all rooms in the zone are vacant.
- B. One hour prior to normal scheduled occupancy, the occupancy sensor ventilation control shall allow pre-occupancy purge as described in Section 120.1(d)2.

**(e) Ducting for Zonal Heating and Cooling Units.** Where a return plenum is used to distribute outdoor air to a zonal heating or cooling unit which then supplies the air to a space in order to meet the requirements of Section 120.1(c)3, the outdoor air shall be ducted to discharge either:

- 1. Within 5 feet of the unit; or
- 2. Within 15 feet of the unit, substantially toward the unit, and at a velocity not less than 500 feet per minute.

**(f) Design and Control Requirements for Quantities of Outdoor Air.**

- 1. All mechanical ventilation and space-conditioning systems shall be designed with and have installed ductwork, dampers, and controls to allow outside air rates to be operated at the larger of (1) the minimum levels specified in Section 120.1(c)3 or (2) the rate required for make-up of exhaust systems that are

required for an exempt or covered process, for control of odors, or for the removal of contaminants within the space.

2. All variable air volume mechanical ventilation and space-conditioning systems shall include dynamic controls that maintain measured outside air ventilation rates within 10 percent of the required outside air ventilation rate at both full and reduced supply airflow conditions. Fixed minimum damper position is not considered to be dynamic and is not an allowed control strategy.
3. Measured outdoor air rates of constant volume mechanical ventilation and space-conditioning systems shall be within 10 percent of the required outside air rate.

(g) **Air Classification and Recirculation Limitations.** Air classification and recirculation limitations of air shall be based on the air classification as listed in Table 120.1-A or Table 120.1-C, and in accordance with the requirements of 120.1(g)1 through 4.

1. Class 1 Air. Recirculation or transfer of Class 1 air to any space shall be permitted; [ASHRAE 62.1:5.16.3.1]
2. Class 2 Air. Recirculation or transfer of Class 2 air shall be permitted in accordance with 120.1(g)A through 120.1(g)E:
  - A. Recirculation of Class 2 air within the space of origin shall be permitted [ASHRAE 62.1:5.16.3.2.1];
  - B. Recirculation or transfer of Class 2 to other Class 2 or Class 3 spaces shall be permitted, provided that the other spaces are used for the same or similar purpose or task and involve the same or similar pollutant sources as the Class 2 space [ASHRAE 62.1:5.16.3.2.2]; or
  - C. Transfer of Class 2 air to toilet rooms [ASHRAE 62.1:5.16.3.2.3]; or
  - D. Recirculation or transfer of Class 2 air to Class 4 spaces [ASHRAE 62.1:5.16.3.2.4]; or
  - E. Class 2 air shall not be recirculated or transferred to Class 1 spaces. [ASHRAE 62.1:5.16.3.2.5]

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.1(g)2E:** When using any energy recovery device, recirculation from leakage, carryover, or transfer from the exhaust side of the energy recovery device is permitted. Recirculated Class 2 air shall not exceed 10% of the outdoor air intake flow.

3. Class 3 Air. Recirculation or transfer of Class 3 air shall be permitted in accordance with 120.1(g)A and 120.1(g)B:
  - A. Recirculation of Class 3 air within the space of origin shall be permitted. [ASHRAE 62.1:5.16.3.3.1]
  - B. Class 3 air shall not be recirculated or transferred to any other space. [ASHRAE 62.1:5.16.3.3.2].

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.1(g)3B:** When using any energy recovery device, recirculation from leakage, carryover, or transfer from the exhaust side of the energy recovery device is permitted. Recirculated Class 3 air shall not exceed 5% of the outdoor air intake flow.

4. Class 4 Air. Class 4 air shall not be recirculated or transferred to any space or recirculated within the space of origin. [ASHRAE 62.1:5.16.3.4]
5. Ancillary spaces. Redesignation of Class 1 air to Class 2 air shall be permitted for Class 1 spaces that are ancillary to Class 2 spaces. [ASHRAE 62.1:5.16.2.3]
6. Transfer. A mixture of air that has been transferred through or returned from spaces or locations with different air classes shall be redesignated with the highest classification among the air classes mixed. [ASHRAE 62.1:5.16.2.2]
7. Classification. Air leaving each space or location shall be designated at an expected air-quality classification not less than that shown in Tables 120.1-A, 120.1-B or 120.1-C. Air leaving spaces or locations that are not listed in Tables 120.1-A, 120.1-B or 120.1-C shall be designated with the same classification as air from the most similar space or location listed in terms of occupant activities and building construction.

Table 120.1-A – Minimum Ventilation Rates

Occupancy Category	Area Outdoor Air Rate <sup>1</sup> R <sub>a</sub>	Min Air Rate for DCV <sup>2</sup>	Air Class	Notes
	cfm/ft <sup>2</sup>	cfm/ft <sup>2</sup>		
<b>Educational Facilities</b>				
Daycare (through age 4)	0.21	0.15	2	
Daycare sickroom	0.15		3	
Classrooms (ages 5-8)	0.38	0.15	1	
Classrooms (age 9 -18)	0.38	0.15	1	
Lecture/postsecondary classroom	0.38	0.15	1	F
Lecture hall (fixed seats)	-	0.15	1	F
Art classroom	0.15		2	
Science laboratories	0.15		2	
University/college laboratories	0.15		2	
Wood/metal shop	0.15		2	
Computer lab	0.15		1	
Media center	0.15		1	A
Music/theater/dance	1.07	0.15	1	F
Multiuse assembly	0.50	0.15	1	F
<b>Food and Beverage Service</b>				
Restaurant dining rooms	0.50	0.15	2	
Cafeteria/fast-food dining	0.50	0.15	2	
Bars, cocktail lounges	0.50	0.20	2	
Kitchen (cooking)	0.15		2	
<b>General</b>				
Break rooms	0.50	0.15	1	F
Coffee Stations	0.50	0.15	1	F
Conference/meeting	0.50	0.15	1	F
Corridors	0.15		1	F
Occupiable storage rooms for liquids or gels	0.15		2	B
<b>Hotels, Motels, Resorts, Dormitories</b>				
Bedroom/living room	0.15		1	F
Barracks sleeping areas	0.15		1	F
Laundry rooms, central	0.15		2	
Laundry rooms within dwelling units	0.15		1	
Lobbies/pre-function	0.50	0.15	1	F
Multipurpose assembly	0.50		1	F

Table 120.1-A – Minimum Ventilation Rates [Continued]

Occupancy Category	Area Outdoor Air Rate R <sub>a</sub>	Min Air Rate for DCV <sup>b</sup>	Air Class	Notes
	cfm/ft <sup>2</sup>	cfm/ft <sup>2</sup>		
<b>Office Buildings</b>				
Breakrooms	0.50	0.15	1	
Main entry lobbies	0.50	0.15	1	F
Occupiable storage rooms for dry materials	0.15		1	
Office space	0.15		1	F
Reception areas	0.15		1	F
Telephone/data entry	0.15		1	F
<b>Miscellaneous Spaces</b>				
Bank vaults/safe deposit	0.15		2	F
Banks or bank lobbies	0.15		1	F
Computer (not printing)	0.15		1	F
Freezer and refrigerated spaces (<50°F)	-		2	E
General manufacturing (excludes heavy industrial and process using chemicals)	0.15		3	
Pharmacy (prep. Area)	0.15		2	
Photo studios	0.15		1	
Shipping/receiving	0.15		2	B
Sorting, packing, light assembly	0.15		2	
Telephone closets	0.15		1	
Transportation waiting	0.50	0.15	1	F
Warehouses	0.15		2	B
All others	0.15		2	
<b>Public Assembly Spaces</b>				
Auditorium seating area	1.07	0.15	1	F
Places of religious worship	1.07	0.15	1	F
Courtrooms	0.19	0.15	1	F
Legislative chambers	0.19	0.15	1	F
Libraries (reading rooms and stack areas)	0.15		1	
Lobbies	0.50	0.15	1	F
Museums (children's)	0.25	0.15	1	
Museums/galleries	0.25	0.15	1	F

Table 120.1-A – Minimum Ventilation Rates [Continued]

Occupancy Category	Area Outdoor Air Rate $R_a$	Min Air Rate for DCV <sup>b</sup>	Air Class	Notes
	cfm/ft <sup>2</sup>	cfm/ft <sup>2</sup>		
<b>Residential</b>				
Common corridors	0.15		1	F
<b>Retail</b>				
Sales (except as below)	0.25	0.20	2	
Mall common areas	0.25	0.15	1	F
Barbershop	0.40		2	
Beauty and nail salons	0.40		2	
Pet shops (animal areas)	0.25	0.15	2	
Supermarket	0.25	0.20	1	F
Coin-operated laundries	0.30		2	
<b>Sports and Entertainment</b>				
Gym, sports arena (play area)	0.50	0.15	2	E
Spectator areas	0.50	0.15	1	F
Swimming (pool)	0.15		2	C
Swimming (deck)	0.50	0.15	2	C
Disco/dance floors	1.50	0.15	2	F
Health club/aerobics room	0.15		2	
Health club/weight rooms	0.15		2	
Bowling alley (seating)	1.07	0.15	1	
Gambling casinos	0.68	0.15	1	
Game arcades	0.68	0.15	1	
Stages, studios	0.50	0.15	1	D, F
General:				
<sup>1</sup> $R_a$ was determined as being the larger of the area method and the default per person method. The occupant density used in the per person method was assumed to be one half of the maximum occupant load assumed for egress purposes in the CBC.				
<sup>2</sup> If this column specifies a minimum cfm/ft <sup>2</sup> then it shall be used to comply with Section 120.1(d)4E.				
Specific Notes:				
A – For high-school and college libraries, the values shown for “Public Assembly Spaces – Libraries” shall be used.				
B – Rate may not be sufficient where stored materials include those having potentially harmful emissions.				
C – Rate does not allow for humidity control. “Deck area” refers to the area surrounding the pool that is capable of being wetted during pool use or when the pool is occupied. Deck area that is not expected to be wetted shall be designated as an occupancy category.				
D – Rate does not include special exhaust for stage effects such as dry ice vapors and smoke.				
E – Where combustion equipment is intended to be used on the playing surface or in the space, additional dilution ventilation, source control, or both shall be provided.				
F – Ventilation air for this occupancy category shall be permitted to be reduced to zero when the space is in occupied-standby mode				

Table 120.1-B – Minimum Exhaust Rates

[ASHRAE 62.1: TABLE 6.5]

Occupancy Category	Exhaust Rete, cfm/unit	Exhaust Rate, cfm/ft <sup>2</sup>	Air Class	Notes
Arenas	-	0.50	1	B
Art classrooms	-	0.70	2	
Auto repair rooms	-	1.5	2	A
Barber shops	-	0.50	2	
Beauty and nail salons	-	0.60	2	
Cells with toilet	-	1.00	2	
Copy, printing rooms	-	0.50	2	
Darkrooms	-	1.00	2	
Educational science laboratories	-	1.00	2	
Janitor closets, trash rooms, recycling	-	1.00	3	
Kitchenettes	-	0.30	2	
Kitchens – commercial	-	0.70	2	
Locker rooms for athletic or industrial facilities	-	0.50	2	
All other locker rooms	-	0.25	2	
Shower rooms	20/50	-	2	G,H
Paint spray booths	-	-	4	F
Parking garages	-	0.75	2	C
Pet shops (animal areas)	-	0.90	2	
Refrigerating machinery rooms	-	-	3	F
Soiled laundry storage rooms	-	1.00	3	F
Storage rooms, chemical	-	1.50	4	F
Toilets – private	25/50	-	2	E
Toilets – public	50/70	-	2	D
Woodwork shop/classrooms	-	0.50	2	
Notes: A – Stands where engines are run shall have exhaust systems that directly connect to the engine exhaust and prevent escape of fumes. B – Where combustion equipment is intended to be used on the playing surface, additional dilution ventilation, source control, or both shall be provided. C – Exhaust shall not be required where two or more sides comprise walls that are at least 50% open to the outside. D – Rate is per water closet, urinal, or both. Provide the higher rate where periods of heavy use are expected to occur. The lower rate shall be permitted to be used otherwise. E – Rate is for a toilet room intended to be occupied by one person at a time. For continuous systems operation during hours of use, the lower rate shall be permitted to be used. Otherwise the higher rate shall be used. F – See other applicable standards for exhaust rate. G – For continuous system operation, the lower rate shall be permitted to be used. Otherwise the higher rate shall be used. H – Rate is per showerhead				

Table 120.1-C – Airstreams or Sources

[ASHRAE 62.1:Table 5.16.1]

Description	Air Class
Diazo printing equipment discharge	4
Commercial kitchen grease hoods	4
Commercial kitchen hoods other than grease	3
Laboratory hoods	4 <sup>a</sup>
Hydraulic elevator machine room	2
a. Air Class 4 unless determined otherwise by the Environmental Health and Safety professional responsible to the owner or to the owner's designee.	

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

## SECTION 120.2 – REQUIRED CONTROLS FOR SPACE-CONDITIONING SYSTEMS

Nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel buildings shall comply with the applicable requirements of Sections 120.2(a) through 120.2(k).

- (a) **Thermostatic Controls for Each Zone.** The supply of heating and cooling energy to each space-conditioning zone or dwelling unit shall be controlled by an individual thermostatic control that responds to temperature within the zone and that meets the applicable requirements of Section 120.2(b). An Energy Management Control System (EMCS) may be installed to comply with the requirements of one or more thermostatic controls if it complies with all applicable requirements for each thermostatic control.

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.2(a):** An independent perimeter heating or cooling system may serve more than one zone without individual thermostatic controls if:

1. All zones are also served by an interior cooling system; and
2. The perimeter system is designed solely to offset envelope heat losses or gains; and
3. The perimeter system has at least one thermostatic control for each building orientation of 50 feet or more; and
4. The perimeter system is controlled by at least one thermostat located in one of the zones served by the system.

- (b) **Criteria for Zonal Thermostatic Controls.** The individual thermostatic controls required by Section 120.2(a) shall meet the following requirements as applicable:

1. Where used to control comfort heating, the thermostatic controls shall be capable of being set, locally or remotely, down to 55°F or lower.
2. Where used to control comfort cooling, the thermostatic controls shall be capable of being set, locally or remotely, up to 85°F or higher.
3. Where used to control both comfort heating and comfort cooling, the thermostatic controls shall meet Items 1 and 2 and shall be capable of providing a temperature range or dead band of at least 5°F within which the supply of heating and cooling energy to the zone is shut off or reduced to a minimum.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 120.2(b)3:** Systems with thermostats that require manual changeover between heating and cooling modes.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 120.2(b)3:** Systems serving healthcare facilities.

4. Thermostatic controls for all single zone air conditioners and heat pumps, shall comply with the requirements of Section 110.2(c) and 110.12(a) and, if equipped with DDC to the Zone level, with the Automatic Demand Shed Controls of Section 110.12(b).

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 120.2(b)4:** Systems serving exempt process loads that must have constant temperatures to prevent degradation of materials, a process, plants or animals.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 120.2(b)4:** Package terminal air conditioners, package terminal heat pumps, room air conditioners, and room air-conditioner heat pumps.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 120.2(b)4:** Systems serving healthcare facilities.

- (c) **Hotel/Motel Guest Room and High-rise Residential Dwelling Unit Thermostats.**

1. Hotel/motel guest room thermostats shall:
  - A. Have numeric temperature setpoints in °F and °C; and
  - B. Have setpoint stops, which are accessible only to authorized personnel, such that guest room occupants cannot adjust the setpoint more than ±5°F (±3°C); and
  - C. Meet the requirements of Section 110.2(c).

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.2(c)1:** Thermostats that are integrated into the room heating and cooling equipment.

2. High-rise residential dwelling unit thermostats shall meet the requirements of Section 110.2(c).
- (d) **Heat Pump Controls.** All heat pumps with supplementary electric resistance heaters shall be installed with controls that comply with Section 110.2(b).
- (e) **Shut-off and Reset Controls for Space-conditioning Systems.** Each space-conditioning system shall be installed with controls that comply with the following:
1. The control shall be capable of automatically shutting off the system during periods of nonuse and shall have:
    - A. An automatic time switch control device complying with Section 110.9, with an accessible manual override that allows operation of the system for up to 4 hours; or
    - B. An occupancy sensor; or
    - C. A 4-hour timer that can be manually operated.

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.2(e)1:** Mechanical systems serving retail stores and associated malls, restaurants, grocery stores, churches, and theaters equipped with 7-day programmable timers.

2. The control shall automatically restart and temporarily operate the system as required to maintain:
  - A. A setback heating thermostat setpoint if the system provides mechanical heating; and

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.2(e)2A:** Thermostat setback controls are not required in nonresidential buildings in areas where the Winter Median of Extremes outdoor air temperature determined in accordance with Section 140.4(b)3 is greater than 32°F.

- B. A setup cooling thermostat setpoint if the system provides mechanical cooling.

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.2(e)2B:** Thermostat setup controls are not required in nonresidential buildings in areas where the Summer Design Dry Bulb 0.5 percent temperature determined in accordance with Section 140.4(b)3 is less than 100°F.

3. Occupancy Sensing Zone Controls. Space conditioning systems serving room(s) that are required to have occupant sensing controls in accordance with Section 130.1(c), and where the Table 120.1-A occupancy category permits ventilation air to be reduced to zero when the space is in occupied-standby mode, shall meet the following:
  - A. The zone shall be placed in occupied standby mode when all room(s) served by the zone are unoccupied for more than 5 minutes; and
  - B. During occupied standby mode.
    - i. Automatically setup the operating cooling temperature set point by 2°F or more and setback the operating heating temperature set point by 2°F or more; or
    - ii. For multiple zone systems with Direct Digital Controls (DDC) to the zone level, setup the operating cooling temperature setpoint by 0.5°F or more and setback the operating heating temperature setpoint by 0.5°F or more.
  - C. During occupied-standby mode, all airflow to the zone shall be shut off whenever the space temperature is between the active heating and cooling setpoints.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Sections 120.2(e)1, 2, and 3:** Where it can be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the enforcing agency that the system serves an area that must operate continuously.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Sections 120.2(e)1, 2, and 3:** Systems with full load demands of 2 kW or less, if they have a readily accessible manual shut-off switch.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Sections 120.2(e)1 and 2:** Systems serving hotel/motel guest rooms, if they have a readily accessible manual shut-off switch.

4. Hotel and motel guest rooms shall have captive card key controls, occupancy sensing controls, or automatic controls such that, no longer than 30 minutes after the guest room has been vacated, setpoints are setup at least +5°F (+3°C) in cooling mode and set-down at least -5°F (-3°C) in heating mode.

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.2(e):** Systems serving healthcare facilities.

- (f) **Dampers for Air Supply and Exhaust Equipment.** Outdoor air supply and exhaust equipment shall be installed with dampers that automatically close upon fan shutdown.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 120.2(f):** Equipment that serves an area that must operate continuously.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 120.2(f):** Gravity and other nonelectrical equipment that has readily accessible manual damper controls.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 120.2(f):** At combustion air intakes and shaft vents.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 120.2(f):** Where prohibited by other provisions of law.

- (g) **Isolation Area Devices.** Each space-conditioning system serving multiple zones with a combined conditioned floor area of more than 25,000 square feet shall be designed, installed, and controlled to serve isolation areas.
  1. Each zone, or any combination of zones not exceeding 25,000 square feet, shall be a separate isolation area.
  2. Each isolation area shall be provided with isolation devices, such as valves or dampers that allow the supply of heating or cooling to be reduced or shut-off independently of other isolation areas.
  3. Each isolation area shall be controlled by a device meeting the requirements of Section 120.2(e)1.

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.2(g):** Zones designed to be conditioned continuously.

- (h) **Automatic Demand Shed Controls.** See Section 110.12 for requirements for Automatic Demand Shed Controls.

- (i) **Economizer Fault Detection and Diagnostics (FDD).** All newly installed air handlers with a mechanical cooling capacity greater than 54,000 Btu/hr and an installed air economizer shall include a stand-alone or integrated Fault Detection and Diagnostics (FDD) system in accordance with Subsections 120.2(i)1 through 120.2(i)8.

1. The following temperature sensors shall be permanently installed to monitor system operation: outside air, supply air, and when required for differential economizer operation, a return air sensor; and
2. Temperature sensors shall have an accuracy of  $\pm 2^\circ\text{F}$  over the range of 40°F to 80°F; and
3. The controller shall have the capability of displaying the value of each sensor; and
4. The controller shall provide system status by indicating the following conditions:
  - A. Free cooling available;
  - B. Economizer enabled;
  - C. Compressor enabled;
  - D. Heating enabled, if the system is capable of heating; and
  - E. Mixed air low limit cycle active.
5. The unit controller shall allow manual initiation of each operating mode so that the operation of cooling systems, economizers, fans, and heating systems can be independently tested and verified; and
6. Faults shall be reported in one of the following ways:
  - A. Reported to an Energy Management Control System regularly monitored by facility personnel.
  - B. Annunciated locally on one or more zone thermostats, or a device within five (5) feet of zone thermostat(s), clearly visible, at eye level, and meeting the following requirements:
    - i. On the thermostat, device, or an adjacent written sign, display instructions to contact appropriate building personnel or an HVAC technician; and

- ii. In buildings with multiple tenants, the annunciation shall either be within property management offices or in a common space accessible by the property or building manager.
  - C. Reported to a fault management application which automatically provides notification of the fault to remote HVAC service provider.
7. The FDD system shall detect the following faults:
- A. Air temperature sensor failure/fault;
  - B. Not economizing when it should;
  - C. Economizing when it should not;
  - D. Damper not modulating; and
  - E. Excess outdoor air.
8. The FDD System shall be certified by the Energy Commission as meeting requirements of Sections 120.2(i)1 through 120.2(i)7 in accordance with Section 110.0 and JA6.3.

**EXCEPTION to 120.2(i)8:** FDD algorithms based in Direct Digital Control systems are not required to be certified to the Energy Commission.

- (j) Direct Digital Controls (DDC).** Direct Digital Controls to the zone shall be provided as specified by Table 120.2-A.

The provided DDC system shall meet the control logic requirements of Sections 120.1(d) and 120.2(h), and be capable of the following:

1. Monitoring zone and system demand for fan pressure, pump pressure, heating and cooling;
2. Transferring zone and system demand information from zones to air distribution system controllers and from air distribution systems to heating and cooling plant controllers;
3. Automatically detecting the zones and systems that may be excessively driving the reset logic and generate an alarm or other indication to the system operator;
4. Readily allow operator removal of zones(s) from the reset algorithm;
5. For new buildings, trending and graphically displaying input and output points; and
6. Resetting heating and cooling setpoints in all non-critical zones upon receipt of a signal from a centralized contact or software point as described in Section 120.2(h).

TABLE 120.2-A DDC Applications and Qualifications

Building Status	Applications	Qualifications
Newly Constructed Buildings	Air handling system and all zones served by the system	Individual systems supplying more than three zones and with design heating or cooling capacity of 300 kBtu/h and larger
Newly Constructed Buildings	Chilled water plant and all coils and terminal units served by the system	Individual plants supplying more than three zones and with design cooling capacity of 300 kBtu/h (87.9 kW) and larger
Newly Constructed Buildings	Hot water plant and all coils and terminal units served by the system	Individual plants supplying more than three zones and with design heating capacity of 300 kBtu/h (87.9 kW) and larger
Additions or Alterations	Zone terminal unit such as VAV box	Where existing zones served by the same air handling, chilled water, or hot water systems that have DDC
Additions or Alterations	Air handling system or fan coil	Where existing air handling system(s) and fan coil(s) served by the same chilled or hot water plant have DDC
Additions or Alterations	New air handling system and all new zones served by the system	Individual systems with design heating or cooling capacity of 300 kBtu/h and larger and supplying more than three zones and more than 75 percent of zones are new
Additions or Alterations	New or upgraded chilled water plant	Where all chillers are new and plant design cooling capacity is 300 kBtu/h (87.9 kW) and larger
Additions or Alterations	New or upgraded hot water plant	Where all boilers are new and plant design heating capacity is 300 kBtu/h (87.9 kW) and larger

- (k) **Optimum Start/Stop Controls.** Space conditioning systems with DDC to the zone level shall have optimum start/stop controls. The control algorithm shall, as a minimum, be a function of the difference between space temperature and occupied setpoint, the outdoor air temperature, and the amount of time prior to scheduled occupancy. Mass radiant floor slab systems shall incorporate floor temperature onto the optimum start algorithm.

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.2(k):** Systems that must operate continuously.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code

---

## SECTION 120.3 – REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPE INSULATION

Nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel buildings shall comply with the applicable requirements of Sections 120.3(a) through 120.3(c).

- (a) **General Requirements.** The piping conditions listed below for space-conditioning and service water-heating systems with fluid normal operating temperatures listed in TABLE 120.3-A, shall have at least the amount of insulation specified in Subsection (c):
1. **Space Cooling Systems.** All refrigerant suction, chilled water, and brine fluid distribution systems.
  2. **Space Heating Systems.** All refrigerant, steam, steam condensate and hot water fluid distribution systems.
  3. **Service water-heating systems.**
    - A. Recirculating system piping, including the supply and return piping to the water heater.
    - B. The first 8 feet of hot and cold outlet piping, including piping between a storage tank and a heat trap, for a nonrecirculating storage system.
    - C. Pipes that are externally heated.

Insulation conductivity shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C335 at the mean temperature listed in TABLE 120.3-A, and shall be rounded to the nearest 1/100 Btu-inch per hour per square foot per °F. Fluid distribution systems include all elements that are in series with the fluid flow, such as pipes, pumps, valves, strainers, coil u-bends, and air separators, but not including elements that are not in series with the fluid flow, such as expansion tanks, fill lines, chemical feeders, and drains.

- (b) **Insulation Protection.** Pipe Insulation shall be protected from damage due to sunlight, moisture, equipment maintenance, and wind. Protection shall, at minimum, include the following:
1. Pipe insulation exposed to weather shall be protected by a cover suitable for outdoor service. The cover shall be water retardant and provide shielding from solar radiation that can cause degradation of the material. Adhesive tape shall not be used to provide this protection.
  2. Pipe insulation covering chilled water piping and refrigerant suction piping located outside the conditioned space shall include, or be protected by, a Class I or Class II vapor retarder. All penetrations and joints shall be sealed.
  3. Pipe insulation buried below grade must be installed in a water proof and non-crushable casing or sleeve.
- (c) **Insulation Thickness**
1. For insulation with a conductivity in the range shown in TABLE 120.3-A for the applicable fluid temperature range, the insulation shall have the applicable minimum thickness or R-value shown in TABLE 120.3-A.
  2. For insulation with a conductivity outside the range shown in TABLE 120.3-A for the applicable fluid temperature range, the insulation shall have a minimum R-value shown in TABLE 120.3-A or thickness as calculated with:

*MINIMUM INSULATION THICKNESS EQUATION*

$$T = PR \left[ \left( 1 + \frac{t}{PR} \right)^{\frac{K}{k}} - 1 \right]$$

*WHERE:*

*T* = Minimum insulation thickness for material with conductivity *K*, inches.

*PR* = Pipe actual outside radius, inches.

*t* = Insulation thickness from TABLE 120.3-A, inches.

*K* = Conductivity of alternate material at the mean rating temperature indicated in TABLE 120.3-A for the applicable fluid temperature range, in Btu-inch per hour per square foot per °F.

*k* = The lower value of the conductivity range listed in TABLE 120.3-A for the applicable fluid temperature range, Btu-inch per hour per square foot per °F.

TABLE 120.3-A PIPE INSULATION THICKNESS

Fluid Operating Temperature Range (°F)	Insulation Conductivity			Nominal Pipe Diameter (in inches)						
	Conductivity (in Btu-in/h-ft <sup>2</sup> -°F)	Mean Rating Temperature (°F)		< 1	1 to <1.5	1.5 to < 4	4 to < 8	8 and larger		
<b>Space heating and Service Water Heating Systems (Steam, Steam Condensate, Refrigerant, Space Heating, Service Hot Water)</b>				<b>Minimum Pipe Insulation Required (Thickness in inches or R-value)</b>						
Above 350	0.32-0.34	250	Inches	4.5	5.0	5.0	5.0	5.0		
			R-value	R 37	R 41	R 37	R 27	R 23		
251-350	0.29-0.32	200	Inches	3.0	4.0	4.5	4.5	4.5		
			R-value	R 24	R 34	R 35	R 26	R 22		
201-250	0.27-0.30	150	Inches	2.5	2.5	2.5	3.0	3.0		
			R-value	R 21	R 20	R 17.5	R 17	R 14.5		
141-200	0.25-0.29	125	Inches	1.5	1.5	2.0	2.0	2.0		
			R-value	R 11.5	R 11	R 14	R 11	R 10		
105-140	0.22-0.28	100	Inches	1.0	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5		
			R-value	R 7.7	R 12.5	R 11	R 9	R 8		
				<b>Nominal Pipe Diameter (in inches)</b>						
				< 1	1 to <1.5	1.5 to < 4	4 to < 8	8 and larger		
<b>Space cooling systems (chilled water, refrigerant and brine)</b>				<b>Minimum Pipe Insulation Required (Thickness in inches or R-value)<sup>1</sup></b>						
40-60	0.21-0.27	75	Inches	Nonres 0.5	Res 0.75	Nonres 0.5	Res 0.75	1.0	1.0	1.0
			R-value	Nonres R 3	Res R 6	Nonres R 3	Res R 5	R 7	R 6	R 5
Below 40	0.20-0.26	50	Inches	1.0	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5		
			R-value	R 8.5	R 14	R 12	R 10	R 9		
Footnote to TABLE 120.3-A:										
1. These thickness are based on energy efficiency considerations only. Issues such as water vapor permeability or surface condensation sometimes require vapor retarders or additional insulation.										

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 120.3:** Factory-installed piping within space-conditioning equipment certified under Section 110.1 or 110.2.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 120.3:** Piping that conveys fluids with a design operating temperature range between 60°F and 105°F.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 120.3:** Where the heat gain or heat loss to or from piping without insulation will not increase building source energy use.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 120.3:** Piping that penetrates framing members shall not be required to have pipe insulation for the distance of the framing penetration. Metal piping that penetrates metal framing shall use grommets, plugs, wrapping or other insulating material to assure that no contact is made with the metal framing.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

## SECTION 120.4 – REQUIREMENTS FOR AIR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM DUCTS AND PLENUMS

Nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel buildings shall comply with the applicable requirements of Sections 120.4(a) through 120.4(f).

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.4:** Systems serving healthcare facilities shall comply with the applicable requirements of the California Mechanical Code.

- (a) **CMC Compliance.** All air distribution system ducts and plenums, including, but not limited to, building cavities, mechanical closets, air-handler boxes and support platforms used as ducts or plenums, shall meet the requirements of the CMC Sections 601.0, 602.0, 603.0, 604.0, 605.0, and ANSI/SMACNA-006-2006 HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible 3rd Edition, incorporated herein by reference. Connections of metal ducts and the inner core of flexible ducts shall be mechanically fastened. Openings shall be sealed with mastic, tape, aerosol sealant, or other duct-closure system that meets the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A, or UL 181B. If mastic or tape is used to seal openings greater than 1/4 inch, the combination of mastic and either mesh or tape shall be used.

Portions of supply-air and return-air ducts conveying heated or cooled air located in one or more of the following spaces shall be insulated to a minimum installed level of R-8:

1. Outdoors; or
2. In a space between the roof and an insulated ceiling; or
3. In a space directly under a roof with fixed vents or openings to the outside or unconditioned spaces; or
4. In an unconditioned crawlspace; or
5. In other unconditioned spaces.

Portions of supply-air ducts that are not in one of these spaces, including ducts buried in concrete slab, shall be insulated to a minimum installed level of R-4.2 or be enclosed in directly conditioned space.

- (b) **Duct and Plenum Materials.**

1. **Factory-fabricated duct systems.**

- A. All factory-fabricated duct systems shall comply with UL 181 for ducts and closure systems, including collars, connections, and splices, and be labeled as complying with UL 181. UL 181 testing may be performed by UL laboratories or a laboratory approved by the Executive Director.
- B. All pressure-sensitive tapes, heat-activated tapes, and mastics used in the manufacture of rigid fiberglass ducts shall comply with UL 181 and UL 181A.
- C. All pressure-sensitive tapes and mastics used with flexible ducts shall comply with UL 181 and UL 181B.
- D. Joints and seams of duct systems and their components shall not be sealed with cloth back rubber adhesive duct tapes unless such tape is used in combination with mastic and drawbands.

2. **Field-fabricated duct systems.**

- A. Factory-made rigid fiberglass and flexible ducts for field-fabricated duct systems shall comply with UL 181. All pressure-sensitive tapes, mastics, aerosol sealants, or other closure systems used for installing field-fabricated duct systems shall meet the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A, and UL 181B.
- B. Mastic sealants and mesh.
  - i. Sealants shall comply with the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A, and UL 181B, and be nontoxic and water resistant.

- ii. Sealants for interior applications shall pass ASTM C731 (extrudability after aging) and D2202 (slump test on vertical surfaces), incorporated herein by reference.
  - iii. Sealants for exterior applications shall pass ASTM C731, C732 (artificial weathering test), and D2202, incorporated herein by reference.
  - iv. Sealants and meshes shall be rated for exterior use.
- C. Pressure-sensitive tape. Pressure-sensitive tapes shall comply with the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A, and UL 181B.
- D. Joints and seams of duct systems and their components shall not be sealed with cloth back rubber adhesive duct tapes unless such tape is used in combination with mastic and drawbands.
- E. Drawbands used with flexible duct.
- i. Drawbands shall be either stainless-steel worm-drive hose clamps or UV-resistant nylon duct ties.
  - ii. Drawbands shall have a minimum tensile strength rating of 150 pounds.
  - iii. Drawbands shall be tightened as recommended by the manufacturer with an adjustable tensioning tool.
- F. Aerosol-sealant closures.
- i. Aerosol sealants shall meet the requirements of UL 723 and be applied according to manufacturer specifications.
  - ii. Tapes or mastics used in combination with aerosol sealing shall meet the requirements of this section.
- (c) All duct insulation product R-values shall be based on insulation only (excluding air films, vapor retarders, or other duct components) and tested C-values at 75°F mean temperature at the installed thickness, in accordance with ASTM C518 or ASTM C177, incorporated herein by reference, and certified pursuant to Section 110.8.
- (d) The installed thickness of duct insulation used to determine its R-value shall be determined as follows:
- 1. For duct board, duct liner, and factory-made rigid ducts not normally subjected to compression, the nominal insulation thickness shall be used.
  - 2. For duct wrap, installed thickness shall be assumed to be 75 percent (25 percent compression) of nominal thickness.
  - 3. For factory-made flexible air ducts, the installed thickness shall be determined by dividing the difference between the actual outside diameter and nominal inside diameter by two.
- (e) Insulated flexible duct products installed to meet this requirement must include labels, in maximum intervals of 3 feet, showing the thermal performance R-value for the duct insulation itself (excluding air films, vapor retarder, or other duct components), based on the tests in Section 120.4(c) and the installed thickness determined by Section 120.4(d)3.
- (f) **Protection of Insulation.** Insulation shall be protected from damage, including that due to sunlight, moisture, equipment maintenance, and wind but not limited to the following: Insulation exposed to weather shall be suitable for outdoor service e.g., protected by aluminum, sheet metal, painted canvas, or plastic cover. Cellular foam insulation shall be protected as above or painted with a coating that is water retardant and provides shielding from solar radiation that can cause degradation of the material.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

## SECTION 120.5 – REQUIRED NONRESIDENTIAL MECHANICAL SYSTEM ACCEPTANCE

Nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel buildings shall comply with the applicable requirements of Sections 120.5(a) and 120.5(b).

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.5:** Systems serving healthcare facilities.

(a) Before an occupancy permit is granted the following equipment and systems shall be certified as meeting the Acceptance Requirements for Code Compliance, as specified by the Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7. A Certificate of Acceptance shall be submitted to the enforcement agency that certifies that the equipment and systems meet the acceptance requirements:

1. Outdoor air ventilation systems shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.1
2. Constant volume, single zone air conditioning and heat pump unit controls shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.2.
3. Duct systems shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.3 where either:
  - A. They are new duct systems that meet the criteria of Sections 140.4(l)1, 140.4(l)2, and 140.4(l)3; or
  - B. They are part of a system that meets the criteria of Section 141.0(b)2D.

4. Air economizers shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.4.

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.5(a)4:** Air economizers installed by the HVAC system manufacturer and certified to the Commission as being factory calibrated and tested are exempt from the Functional Testing section of the Air Economizer Controls acceptance test as described in NA7.5.4.2.

5. Demand control ventilation systems required by Section 120.1(c)3 shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.5
6. Supply fan variable flow controls shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.6
7. Hydronic system variable flow controls shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.7 and NA7.5.9
8. Boiler or chillers that require isolation controls as specified by Section 140.4(k)2 or 140.4(k)3 shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.7
9. Hydronic systems with supply water temperature reset controls shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.8
10. Automatic demand shed controls shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.10.
11. Fault Detection and Diagnostics (FDD) for Packaged Direct-Expansion Units shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.11.
12. Automatic Fault Detection and Diagnostics (FDD) for air handling units and zone terminal units shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.12.
13. Distributed Energy Storage DX AC Systems shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.13.
14. Thermal Energy Storage (TES) Systems shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.14.
15. Supply air temperature reset controls shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.15.
16. Water-cooled chillers served by cooling towers with condenser water reset controls shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.16.
17. When an Energy Management Control System is installed, it shall functionally meet all of the applicable requirements of Part 6.
18. Occupant Sensing Zone Controls shall be tested in accordance with NA7.5.17.

- (b) When certification is required by Title 24, Part 1, Section 10-103.2, the acceptance testing specified by Section 120.5(a) shall be performed by a Certified Mechanical Acceptance Test Technician (CMATT). If the CMATT is operating as an employee, the CMATT shall be employed by a Certified Mechanical Acceptance Test Employer. The CMATT shall disclose on the Certificate of Acceptance a valid CMATT certification identification number issued by an approved Acceptance Test Technician Certification Provider. The CMATT shall complete all Certificate of Acceptance documentation in accordance with the applicable requirements in Section 10-103(a)4.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25402, 25402.1, and 25213, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, , 25402.8, 25943, Public Resources Code.

## SECTION 120.6 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR COVERED PROCESSES

Nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel buildings shall comply with the applicable requirements of Sections 120.6(a) through 120.6(g).

### (a) Mandatory Requirements for Refrigerated Warehouses

Refrigerated Warehouses that are greater than or equal to 3,000 square feet and refrigerated spaces with a sum total of 3,000 square feet or more that are served by the same refrigeration system shall meet the requirements of Section 120.6(a).

Refrigerated Spaces that are less than 3,000 square feet shall meet the requirements of the Appliance Efficiency Regulations for walk-in coolers or freezers contained in the Appliance Efficiency Regulations (California Code of Regulations, Title 20, Sections 1601 through 1608).

1. **Insulation Requirements.** Exterior surfaces of refrigerated warehouses shall be insulated at least to the R-values in TABLE 120.6-A.

TABLE 120.6-A REFRIGERATED WAREHOUSE INSULATION

SPACE	SURFACE	MINIMUM R-VALUE (°F·hr·sf/Btu)
Freezers	Roof/Ceiling	R-40
	Wall	R-36
	Floor	R-35
	Floor with all heating from productive refrigeration capacity <sup>1</sup>	R-20
Coolers	Roof/Ceiling	R-28
	Wall	R-28

<sup>1</sup> All underslab heating is provided by a heat exchanger that provides refrigerant subcooling or other means that result in productive refrigeration capacity on the associated refrigerated system.

2. **Underslab heating.** Electric resistance heat shall not be used for the purposes of underslab heating.

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.6(a)2:** Underslab heating systems controlled such that the electric resistance heat is thermostatically controlled and disabled during the summer on-peak period defined by the local electric utility.

3. **Evaporators.** New fan-powered evaporators used in coolers and freezers shall conform to the following:

- A. Single phase fan motors less than 1 hp and less than 460 Volts in newly installed evaporators shall be electronically commutated motors or shall have a minimum motor efficiency of 70 percent when rated in accordance with NEMA Standard MG 1-2006 at full load rating conditions.
- B. Evaporator fans served either by a suction group with multiple compressors, or by a single compressor with variable capacity capability shall be variable speed and the speed shall be controlled in response to space temperature or humidity.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 120.6(a)3B:** Addition, alteration or replacement of less than all of the evaporators in an existing refrigerated space that does not have speed-controlled evaporators.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 120.6(a)3B:** Coolers within refrigerated warehouses that maintain a Controlled Atmosphere for which a licensed engineer has certified that the types of products stored will require constant operation at 100 percent of the design airflow.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 120.6(a)3B:** Areas within refrigerated warehouses that are designed solely for the purpose of quick chilling/freezing of products, including but not limited to spaces with design cooling capacities of greater than 240 Btu/hr-ft<sup>2</sup> (2 tons per 100 ft<sup>2</sup>).

- C. Evaporator fans served by a single compressor that does not have variable capacity shall utilize controls to reduce airflow by at least 40 percent for at least 75 percent of the time when the compressor is not running.

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.6(a)3C:** Areas within refrigerated warehouses that are designed solely for the purpose of quick chilling/freezing of products (space with design cooling capacities of greater than 240 Btu/hr-ft<sup>2</sup> (2 tons per 100 ft<sup>2</sup>)).

4. **Condensers.** New fan-powered condensers on new refrigeration systems shall conform to the following:

- A. Design saturated condensing temperatures for evaporative-cooled condensers and water-cooled condensers served by fluid coolers or cooling towers shall be less than or equal to:
- i. The design wetbulb temperature plus 20°F in locations where the design wetbulb temperature is less than or equal to 76°F; or
  - ii. The design wetbulb temperature plus 19°F in locations where the design wetbulb temperature is between 76°F and 78°F; or
  - iii. The design wetbulb temperature plus 18°F in locations where the design wetbulb temperature is greater than or equal to 78°F.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 120.6(a)4A:** Compressors and condensers on a refrigeration system for which more than 20 percent of the total design refrigeration cooling load is for quick chilling or freezing, or process refrigeration cooling for other than a refrigerated space.

- B. Design saturated condensing temperatures for air-cooled condensers shall be less than or equal to:
- i. The design drybulb temperature plus 10°F for systems serving freezers;
  - ii. The design drybulb temperature plus 15°F for systems serving coolers.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 120.6(a)4B:** Condensing units with a total compressor horsepower less than 100 HP.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 120.6(a)4B:** Compressors and condensers on a refrigeration system for which more than 20 percent of the total design refrigeration cooling load is for quick chilling or freezing, or process refrigeration cooling for other than a refrigerated space.

- C. The saturated condensing temperature necessary for adiabatic condensers to reject the design total heat of rejection of a refrigeration system assuming dry mode performance shall be less than or equal to:
- i. The design drybulb temperature plus 20°F for systems serving freezers;
  - ii. The design drybulb temperature plus 30°F for systems serving coolers.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 120.6(a)4C:** Compressors and condensers on a refrigeration system for which more than 20 percent of the total design refrigeration cooling load is for quick chilling or freezing, or process refrigeration cooling for other than a refrigerated space.

- D. All condenser fans for air-cooled condensers, evaporative-cooled condensers, adiabatic condensers, gas coolers, air or water fluid coolers or cooling towers shall be continuously variable speed, with the speed of all fans serving a common condenser high side controlled in unison.
- E. The minimum condensing temperature setpoint shall be less than or equal to 70°F for air-cooled condensers, evaporative-cooled condensers, adiabatic condensers, gas coolers, air or water-cooled fluid coolers or cooling towers.
- F. Condensing temperature reset. The condensing temperature set point of systems served by air-cooled condensers shall be reset in response to ambient drybulb temperature. The condensing temperature set point of systems served by evaporative-cooled condensers or water-cooled condensers (via cooling towers or fluid coolers) shall be reset in response to ambient wetbulb temperatures. The condensing temperature set point for systems served by adiabatic condensers shall be reset in response to ambient drybulb temperature while operating in dry mode.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 120.6(a)4F:** Condensing temperature control strategies approved by the Executive Director that have been demonstrated to provide at least equal energy savings.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 120.6(a)4F:** Systems served by adiabatic condensers in Climate Zones 1, 3, 5, 12, 14 and 16.

- G. Fan-powered condensers shall meet the condenser efficiency requirements listed in TABLE 120.6-B. Condenser efficiency is defined as the Total Heat of Rejection (THR) capacity divided by all electrical input power including fan power at 100 percent fan speed, and power of spray pumps for evaporative condensers.

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.6(a)4G:** Adiabatic condensers with ammonia as refrigerant.

- H. Air-cooled condensers shall have a fin density no greater than 10 fins per inch.

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.6(a)4H:** Micro-channel condensers.

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.6(a)1A, 1B, 1C, 1E, 1F and 1G:** Transcritical CO<sub>2</sub> refrigeration systems.

TABLE 120.6-B FAN-POWERED CONDENSERS – MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS

CONDENSER TYPE	REFRIGERANT TYPE	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	RATING CONDITION
Outdoor Evaporative-Cooled with THR Capacity > 8,000 MBH	All	350 Btuh/Watt	100°F Saturated Condensing Temperature (SCT), 70°F Outdoor Wetbulb Temperature
Outdoor Evaporative-Cooled with THR Capacity < 8,000 MBH and Indoor Evaporative-Cooled	All	160 Btuh/Watt	
Outdoor Air-Cooled	Ammonia	75 Btuh/Watt	105°F Saturated Condensing Temperature (SCT), 95°F Outdoor Drybulb Temperature
	Halocarbon	65 Btuh/Watt	
Adiabatic Dry Mode	Halocarbon	45 Btuh/W	105°F Saturated Condensing Temperature (SCT), 95°F Outdoor Drybulb Temperature
Indoor Air-Cooled	All	Exempt	

5. **Compressors.** Compressor systems utilized in refrigerated warehouses shall conform to the following:

- A. Compressors shall be designed to operate at a minimum condensing temperature of 70°F or less.
- B. New open-drive screw compressors in new refrigeration systems with a design saturated suction temperature (SST) of 28°F or lower that discharges to the system condenser pressure shall control compressor speed in response to the refrigeration load.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 120.6(a)5B:** Refrigeration plants with more than one dedicated compressor per suction group.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 120.6(a)5B:** Compressors and condensers on a refrigeration system for which more than 20 percent of the total design refrigeration cooling load is for quick chilling or freezing, or process refrigeration cooling for other than a refrigerated space.

- C. New screw compressors with nominal electric motor power greater than 150 HP shall include the ability to automatically vary the compressor volume ratio (Vi) in response to operating pressures.
6. **Infiltration Barriers.** Passageways between freezers and higher-temperature spaces, and passageways between coolers and nonrefrigerated spaces, shall have an infiltration barrier consisting of strip curtains, an automatically-closing door, or an air curtain designed by the manufacturer for use in the passageway and temperature for which it is applied.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 120.6(a)6:** Openings with less than 16 square feet of opening area.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 120.6(a)6:** Dock doorways for trailers.

7. **Refrigeration System Acceptance.** Before an occupancy permit is granted for a new refrigerated warehouse, or before a new refrigeration system serving a refrigerated warehouse is operated for normal use, the following equipment and systems shall be certified as meeting the Acceptance Requirements for Code Compliance, as specified by the Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7. A Certificate of Acceptance shall be submitted to the enforcement agency that certifies that the equipment and systems meet the acceptance requirements:
- A. Electric resistance underslab heating systems shall be tested in accordance with NA7.10.1.
  - B. Evaporators fan motor controls shall be tested in accordance with NA7.10.2.
  - C. Evaporative condensers shall be tested in accordance with NA7.10.3.1.
  - D. Air-cooled condensers shall be tested in accordance with NA7.10.3.2.
  - E. Adiabatic condensers shall be tested in accordance with NA7.10.3.3
  - F. Variable speed compressors shall be tested in accordance with NA7.10.4.

(b) **Mandatory Requirements for Commercial Refrigeration**

Retail food stores with 8,000 square feet or more of conditioned floor area, and that utilize either refrigerated display cases, or walk-in coolers or freezers, shall meet all applicable State and federal appliance and equipment standards consistent with Section 110.0 and 110.1 or, for equipment not subject to such standards, the requirements of Subsections 1 through 4.

1. **Condensers serving refrigeration systems.** Fan-powered condensers shall conform to the following requirements:
- A. All condenser fans for air-cooled condensers, evaporative-cooled condensers, adiabatic condensers, gas coolers, air or water-cooled fluid coolers or cooling towers shall be continuously variable speed, with the speed of all fans serving a common condenser high side controlled in unison.
  - B. The refrigeration system condenser controls for systems with air-cooled condensers shall use variable-setpoint control logic to reset the condensing temperature setpoint in response to ambient drybulb temperature.
  - C. The refrigeration system condenser controls for systems with evaporative-cooled condensers shall use variable-setpoint control logic to reset the condensing temperature setpoint in response to ambient wetbulb temperature.
  - D. The refrigeration system condenser controls for systems with adiabatic condensers shall use variable setpoint control logic to reset the condensing temperature setpoint in response to ambient drybulb temperature while operating in dry mode.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 120.6(b)1B, C and D:** Condensing temperature control strategies approved by the executive director that have been demonstrated to provide equal energy savings.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 120.6(b)1D:** Systems served by adiabatic condensers in Climate Zone 16.

- E. The saturated condensing temperature necessary for adiabatic condensers to reject the design total heat of rejection of a refrigeration system assuming dry mode performance shall be less than or equal to:
  - i. The design drybulb temperature plus 20°F for systems serving freezers;
  - ii. The design drybulb temperature plus 30°F for systems serving coolers.
- F. The minimum condensing temperature setpoint shall be less than or equal to 70°F.
- G. Fan-powered condensers shall meet the specific efficiency requirements listed in Table 120.6-C.

*TABLE 120.6-C FAN-POWERED CONDENSERS –SPECIFIC EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS*

CONDENSER TYPE	MINIMUM SPECIFIC EFFICIENCY <sup>a</sup>	RATING CONDITION
Evaporative-Cooled	160 Btuh/W	100°F Saturated Condensing Temperature (SCT), 70°F Entering Wetbulb Temperature
Air-Cooled	65 Btuh/W	105°F Saturated Condensing Temperature (SCT), 95°F Entering Drybulb Temperature
Adiabatic Dry Mode	45 Btu/W (halocarbon)	105°F Saturated Condensing Temperature (SCT), 95°F Entering Drybulb Temperature

<sup>a</sup> See Section 100.1 for definition of condenser specific efficiency.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 120.6(b)1G:** Condensers with a Total Heat Rejection capacity of less than 150,000 Btuh at the specific efficiency rating condition.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 120.6(b)1G:** Stores located in Climate Zone 1.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 120.6(b)1G:** Existing condensers that are reused for an addition or alteration.

H. Air-cooled condensers shall have a fin density no greater than 10 fins per inch.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 120.6(b)1H:** Microchannel condensers.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 120.6(b)1H:** Existing condensers that are reused for an addition or alteration.

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.6(b)1B, 1C, 1D, 1E, 1F, 1G:** Transcritical CO<sub>2</sub> refrigeration systems.

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.6(b)1:** New condensers replacing existing condensers when the attached compressor system Total Heat of Rejection does not increase and less than 25 percent of both the attached compressors and the attached display cases are new.

2. **Compressor Systems.** Refrigeration compressor systems and condensing units shall conform to the following requirements.

A. Compressors and multiple-compressor suction groups shall include control systems that use floating suction pressure logic to reset the target saturated suction temperature based on the temperature requirements of the attached refrigeration display cases or walk-ins.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 120.6(b)2A:** Single compressor systems that do not have continuously variable capacity capability.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 120.6(b)2A:** Suction groups that have a design saturated suction temperature of 30°F or higher, or suction groups that comprise the high stage of a two-stage or cascade system or that primarily serve chillers for secondary cooling fluids.

B. Liquid subcooling shall be provided for all low temperature compressor systems with a design cooling capacity equal or greater than 100,000 Btu/hr with a design saturated suction temperature of -10°F or lower, with the subcooled liquid temperature maintained continuously at 50°F or less at the exit of the subcooler, using compressor economizer port(s) or a separate medium or high temperature suction group operating at a saturated suction temperature of 18°F or higher.

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.6(b)2B:** Low temperature cascade systems that condense into another refrigeration system rather than condensing to ambient temperature.

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.6(b)2A and 2B:** Existing compressor systems that are reused for an addition or alteration.

3. **Refrigerated Display Cases.** Lighting in refrigerated display cases, and lights on glass doors installed on walk-in coolers and freezers shall be controlled by one of the following:

- A. Automatic time switch controls to turn off lights during nonbusiness hours. Timed overrides for any line-up or walk-in case may only be used to turn the lights on for up to one hour. Manual overrides shall time-out automatically to turn the lights off after one hour.
  - B. Motion sensor controls on each case that reduce display case lighting power by at least 50 percent within 30 minutes after the area near the case is vacated.
4. **Refrigeration Heat Recovery.**
- A. HVAC systems shall utilize heat recovery from refrigeration system(s) for space heating, using no less than 25 percent of the sum of the design Total Heat of Rejection of all refrigeration systems that have individual Total Heat of Rejection values of 150,000 Btu/h or greater at design conditions.
 

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 120.6(b)4A:** Stores located in Climate Zone 15.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 120.6(b)4A:** HVAC systems or refrigeration systems that are reused for an addition or alteration.
  - B. The increase in hydrofluorocarbon refrigerant charge associated with refrigeration heat recovery equipment and piping shall be no greater than 0.35 lbs per 1,000 Btu/h of heat recovery heating capacity.
- (c) **Mandatory Requirements for Enclosed Parking Garages.** Mechanical ventilation systems for enclosed parking garages where the total design exhaust rate for the garage is greater than or equal to 10,000 cfm shall conform to all of the following:
1. Automatically detect contaminant levels and stage fans or modulate fan airflow rates to 50 percent or less of design capacity provided acceptable contaminant levels are maintained.
  2. Have controls and/or devices that will result in fan motor demand of no more than 30 percent of design wattage at 50 percent of design airflow.
  3. CO shall be monitored with at least one sensor per 5,000 square feet, with the sensor located in the highest expected concentration locations, with at least two sensors per proximity zone. A proximity zone is defined as an area that is isolated from other areas either by floor or other impenetrable obstruction.
  4. CO concentration at all sensors is maintained at 25 ppm or less at all times.
  5. The ventilation rate shall be at least 0.15 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup> when the garage is scheduled to be occupied.
  6. The system shall maintain the garage at negative or neutral pressure relative to other occupiable spaces when the garage is scheduled to be occupied.
  7. CO sensors shall be:
    - A. Certified by the manufacturer to be accurate within plus or minus 5 percent of measurement.
    - B. Factory calibrated.
    - C. Certified by the manufacturer to drift no more than 5 percent per year.
    - D. Certified by the manufacturer to require calibration no more frequently than once a year.
    - E. Monitored by a control system. The system shall have logic that automatically checks for sensor failure by the following means. Upon detection of a failure, the system shall reset to design ventilation rates and transmit an alarm to the facility operators.
      - i. If any sensor has not been calibrated according to the manufacturer's recommendations within the specified calibration period, the sensor has failed.
      - ii. During unoccupied periods the system compares the readings of all sensors, e.g. if any sensor is more than 15 ppm above or below the average of all sensors for longer than four hours, the sensor has failed.
      - iii. During occupied periods the system compares the readings of sensors in the same proximity zone, e.g. if the 30 minute rolling average for any sensor in a proximity zone is more than 15 ppm above or below the 30 minute rolling average for other sensor(s) in that proximity zone, the sensor has failed.

8. **Parking Garage Ventilation System Acceptance.** Before an occupancy permit is granted for a parking garage system subject to Section 120.6(c), the following equipment and systems shall be certified as meeting the Acceptance Requirements for Code Compliance, as specified by the Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7. A Certificate of Acceptance shall be submitted to the enforcement agency that certifies that the equipment and systems meet the acceptance requirements specified in NA7.12.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 120.6(c):** Any garage, or portion of a garage, where more than 20 percent of the vehicles expected to be stored have non gasoline combustion engines.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 120.6(c):** Additions and alterations to existing garages where less than 10,000 cfm of new exhaust capacity is being added.

(d) **Mandatory Requirements for Process Boilers**

1. Combustion air positive shut-off shall be provided on all newly installed process boilers as follows:
  - A. All process boilers with an input capacity of 2.5 MMBtu/h (2,500,000 Btu/h) and above, in which the boiler is designed to operate with a non-positive vent static pressure.
  - B. All process boilers where one stack serves two or more boilers with a total combined input capacity per stack of 2.5 MMBtu/h (2,500,000 Btu/h).
2. Process boiler combustion air fans with motors 10 horsepower or larger shall meet one of the following for newly installed boilers:
  - A. The fan motor shall be driven by a variable speed drive; or
  - B. The fan motor shall include controls that limit the fan motor demand to no more than 30 percent of the total design wattage at 50 percent of design air volume.
3. Newly installed process boilers with an input capacity of 5 MMBtu/h (5,000,000 Btu/h) to 10 MMBtu/h (10,000,000 Btu/h) shall maintain excess (stackgas) oxygen concentrations at less than or equal to 5.0 percent by volume on a dry basis over firing rates of 20 percent to 100 percent. Combustion air volume shall be controlled with respect to firing rate or measured flue gas oxygen concentration. Use of a common gas and combustion air control linkage or jack shaft is prohibited.
4. Newly installed process boilers with an input capacity greater than 10 MMBtu/h (10,000,000 Btu/h) shall maintain excess (stack-gas) oxygen concentrations at less than or equal to 3.0 percent by volume on a dry basis over firing rates of 20 percent to 100 percent. Combustion air volume shall be controlled with respect to measured flue gas oxygen concentration. Use of a common gas and combustion air control linkage or jack shaft is prohibited.

- (e) **Mandatory Requirements for Compressed Air Systems.** All new compressed air systems, and all additions or alterations of compressed air systems where the total combined online horsepower (hp) of the compressor(s) is 25 horsepower or more shall meet the requirements of Subsections 1 through 3. These requirements apply to the compressors and related controls that provide compressed air and do not apply to any equipment or controls that use or process the compressed air.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 120.6(e):** Alterations of existing compressed air systems that include one or more centrifugal compressors.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 120.6(e):** Compressed Air Systems, including medical gas, serving healthcare facilities.

1. **Trim Compressor and Storage.** The compressed air system shall be equipped with an appropriately sized trim compressor and primary storage to provide acceptable performance across the range of the system and to avoid control gaps. The compressed air system shall comply with Subsection A or B below:
  - A. The compressed air system shall include one or more variable speed drive (VSD) compressors. For systems with more than one compressor, the total combined capacity of the VSD compressor(s) acting as trim compressors must be at least 1.25 times the largest net capacity increment between combinations of compressors. The compressed air system shall include primary storage of at least one gallon per actual cubic feet per minute (acfm) of the largest trim compressor; or,
  - B. The compressed air system shall include a compressor or set of compressors with total effective trim capacity at least the size of the largest net capacity increment between combinations of compressors, or

the size of the smallest compressor, whichever is larger. The total effective trim capacity of single compressor systems shall cover at least the range from 70 percent to 100 percent of rated capacity. The effective trim capacity of a compressor is the size of the continuous operational range where the specific power of the compressor (kW/100 acfm) is within 15 percent of the specific power at its most efficient operating point. The total effective trim capacity of the system is the sum of the effective trim capacity of the trim compressors. The system shall include primary storage of at least 2 gallons per acfm of the largest trim compressor.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 120.6(e)1:** Compressed air systems in existing facilities that are adding or replacing less than 50 percent of the online capacity of the system.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 120.6(e)1:** Compressed air systems that have been approved by the Energy Commission Executive Director as having demonstrated that the system serves loads for which typical air demand fluctuates less than 10 percent.

2. **Controls.** Compressed air systems with more than one compressor online, having a combined horsepower rating of more than 100 hp, must operate with a controller that is able to choose the most energy efficient combination of compressors within the system based on the current air demand as measured by a sensor.
3. **Compressed Air System Acceptance.** Before an occupancy permit is granted for a compressed air system subject to Section 120.6(e), the following equipment and systems shall be certified as meeting the Acceptance Requirements for Code Compliance, as specified by the Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7. A Certificate of Acceptance shall be submitted to the enforcement agency that certifies that the equipment and systems meet the acceptance requirements specified in NA 7.13.

(f) **Mandatory Requirements for Elevators.** Elevators shall meet the following requirements:

1. The light power density for the luminaires inside the elevator cab shall be no greater than 0.6 watts per square foot.

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.6(f)1:** Interior signal lighting and interior display lighting are not included in the calculation of lighting power density.

2. Elevator cab ventilation fans for cabs without space conditioning shall not exceed 0.33 watts per CFM as measured at maximum speed.
3. When the elevator cab is stopped and unoccupied with doors closed for over 15 minutes, the cab interior lighting and ventilation fans shall be switched off until elevator cab operation resumes.
4. Lighting and ventilation shall remain operational in the event that the elevator cabin gets stuck when passengers are in the cabin.
5. **Elevator Lighting and Ventilation Control Acceptance.** Before an occupancy permit is granted for elevators subject to 120.6(f), the following equipment and systems shall be certified as meeting the Acceptance Requirement for Code Compliance, as specified by the Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7. A Certificate of Acceptance shall be submitted to the enforcement agency that certifies that the equipment and systems meet the acceptance requirements specified in NA7.14.

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.6(f):** Elevators located in healthcare facilities.

(g) **Mandatory Requirements for Escalators and Moving Walkways**

1. Escalators and moving walkways located in airports, hotels, and transportation function areas shall automatically slow to the minimum permitted speed in accordance with ASME A17.1/CSA B44 when not conveying passengers.
2. **Escalators and Moving Walkways Acceptance.** Before an occupancy permit is granted for escalators and moving walkways subject to 120.6(g), the following equipment and systems shall be certified as meeting the Acceptance Requirement for Code Compliance, as specified by the Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7. A Certificate of Acceptance shall be submitted to the enforcement agency that certifies that the equipment and systems meet the acceptance requirements specified in NA7.15.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.8, and 25943 Public Resources Code.

---

## SECTION 120.7 – MANDATORY INSULATION REQUIREMENTS

Nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel buildings shall comply with the applicable requirements in Sections 120.7(a) through 120.7(c).

- (a) **Roof/Ceiling Insulation.** The opaque portions of the roof/ceiling that separates conditioned spaces from unconditioned spaces or ambient air shall meet the applicable requirements of Items 1 through 3 below:
1. **Metal Building-** The weighted average U-factor of the roof assembly shall not exceed 0.098.
  2. **Wood Framed and Others-** The weighted average U-factor of the roof assembly shall not exceed 0.075.
  3. **Insulation Placement-** Insulation installed to limit heat loss and gain from conditioned spaces to unconditioned spaces shall comply with all of the following:
    - A. Insulation shall be installed in direct contact with a continuous roof or ceiling that is sealed to limit infiltration and exfiltration as specified in Section 110.7. This may include, but is not limited to, placing insulation either above or below the roof deck or on top of the finished ceiling.
    - B. When insulation is installed at the roof in nonresidential buildings, fixed vents or openings to the outdoors or to unconditioned spaces shall not be installed. When the space between the ceiling and the roof is either directly or indirectly conditioned space, it shall not be considered an attic for the purposes of complying with CBC attic ventilation requirements.
    - C. Insulation placed on top of a suspended ceiling with removable ceiling panels shall not be used to meet the Roof/Ceiling requirement of Sections 140.3 and 141.0.

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.7(a)3:** When there are conditioned spaces with a combined floor area no greater than 2,000 square feet in an otherwise unconditioned building, and when the average height of the space between the ceiling and the roof over these spaces is greater than 12 feet, insulation placed in direct contact with a suspended ceiling with removable ceiling panels shall be an acceptable method of reducing heat loss from a conditioned space and shall be accounted for in heat loss calculations.

**NOTE:** Vents that do not penetrate the roof deck and are instead designed for wind resistance for roof membranes are not within the scope of Section 120.7(a)3B.

- (b) **Wall Insulation.** The opaque portions of walls that separate conditioned spaces from unconditioned spaces or ambient air shall meet the applicable requirements of Items 1 through 7 below:
1. **Metal Building-** The weighted average U-factor of the wall assembly shall not exceed 0.113.
  2. **Metal Framed-** The weighted average U-factor of the wall assembly shall not exceed 0.151.
  3. **Light Mass Walls-** A 6 inch or greater Hollow Core Concrete Masonry Unit shall have a U-factor not to exceed 0.440.
  4. **Heavy Mass Walls-** An 8 inch or greater Hollow Core Concrete Masonry Unit shall have a U-factor not to exceed 0.690.
  5. **Wood Framed and Others-** The weighted average U-factor of the wall assembly shall not exceed 0.110.
  6. **Spandrel Panels and Curtain Wall-** The weighted average U-factor of the spandrel panels and curtain wall assembly shall not exceed 0.280.
  7. **Demising Walls-** The opaque portions of framed demising walls shall meet the requirements of Item A or B below:
    - A. Wood framed walls shall be insulated to meet a U-factor not greater than 0.099.
    - B. Metal Framed walls shall be insulated to meet a U-factor not greater than 0.151.
- (c) **Floor and Soffit Insulation.** The opaque portions of floors and soffits that separate conditioned spaces from unconditioned spaces or ambient air shall meet the applicable requirements of Items 1 and 2 below:

1. **Raised Mass Floors-** Shall have a minimum of 3 inches of lightweight concrete over a metal deck or the weighted average U-factor of the floor assembly shall not exceed 0.269.
2. **Other Floors-**The weighted average U-factor of the floor assembly shall not exceed 0.071.
3. **Heated Slab On Grade Floor-**A heated slab on grade floor shall be insulated to meet the requirements of Section 110.8(g)

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.7:** A dedicated building used solely as a data center that has a total covered process load exceeding 750 kW.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

## SECTION 120.8 – NONRESIDENTIAL BUILDING COMMISSIONING

Nonresidential buildings other than healthcare facilities, with conditioned space of 10,000 square feet or more, shall comply with the applicable requirements of Sections 120.8(a) through 120.8(i) in the building design and construction processes. All building systems and components covered by Sections 110.0, 120.0, 130.0, and 140.0 shall be included in the scope of the commissioning requirements in this Section, excluding those related solely to covered processes.

Nonresidential buildings other than healthcare facilities, with conditioned space of less than 10,000 square feet, shall comply with the design review requirements specified in Sections 120.8(d) and shall include any measures or requirements necessary for completing this review in the construction documents in a manner consistent with Section 120.8(e).

Healthcare facilities shall instead comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 7 of the California Administrative Code (Title 24, Part 1).

**NOTE:** Nonresidential buildings include nonresidential spaces such as nonresidential function areas within hotel/motel and highrise residential buildings. The requirements of Section 120.8 apply based on the square footage of the nonresidential spaces.

The commissioning described in this Section is in addition to any commissioning required by Title 24, Part 11, Section 5.410.2, 5.410.4, and subsections.

(a) **Summary of Commissioning Requirements.** Commissioning shall include completion of the following items:

1. Owner's or owner representative's project requirements;
2. Basis of design;
3. Design phase design review;
4. Commissioning measures shown in the construction documents;
5. Commissioning plan;
6. Functional performance testing;
7. Documentation and training; and
8. Commissioning report.

(b) **Owner's or Owner Representative's Project Requirements (OPR).** The energy-related expectations and requirements of the building shall be documented before the design phase of the project begins. This documentation shall include the following:

1. Energy efficiency goals;
2. Ventilation requirements;
3. Project documentation requirements, including facility functions and hours of operation, and need for after hours operation;
4. Equipment and systems expectations; and
5. Building envelope performance expectations.

(c) **Basis of Design (BOD).** A written explanation of how the design of the building systems and components meets the OPR shall be completed at the design phase of the building project, and updated as necessary during the design and construction phases. The Basis of Design document shall cover the following systems and components:

1. Heating, ventilation, air conditioning (HVAC) systems and controls;
2. Indoor lighting system and controls;
3. Water heating systems and controls; and

4. Any building envelope component considered in the OPR.
- (d) **Design Phase Design Review.**
1. **Design Reviewer Requirements.** The design reviewer shall be the signer of the Design Review Kickoff Certificate(s) of Compliance and Construction Document Design Review Checklist Certificate(s) of Compliance as specified in Part 1 Section 10-103(a)1.
  2. **Design Review Kickoff.** During the schematic design phase of the building project, the owner or owner's representative, design team and design reviewer must meet to discuss the project scope, schedule and how the design reviewer will coordinate with the project team. The building owner or owner's representative shall include the Design Review Kickoff Certificate of Compliance form in the Certificate of Compliance documentation as specified in Part 1 Section 10-103.
  3. **Construction Documents Design Review.** The Construction Document Design Review Checklist Certificate of Compliance shall list the items checked by the design reviewer during the construction document review. The completed form shall be returned to the owner and design team for review and sign-off. The building owner or owner's representative shall include this form in the Certificate of Compliance documentation as specified in Part 1 Section 10-103.
- (e) **Commissioning measures shown in the construction documents.** Complete descriptions of all measures or requirements necessary for commissioning shall be included in the construction documents (plans and specifications). Commissioning measures or requirements shall be clear, detailed and complete to clarify the commissioning process.
- (f) **Commissioning Plan.** Prior to permit issuance a commissioning plan shall be completed to document how the project will be commissioned and shall be started during the design phase of the building project. The Commissioning Plan shall include the following:
1. General project information; and
  2. Commissioning goals; and
  3. Systems to be commissioned; and
  4. Plans to test systems and components, which shall include:
    - A. An explanation of the original design intent; and
    - B. Equipment and systems to be tested, including the extent of tests; and
    - C. Functions to be tested; and
    - D. Conditions under which the test shall be performed; and
    - E. Measurable criteria for acceptable performance; and
    - F. Commissioning team information; and
    - G. Commissioning process activities, schedules and responsibilities. Plans for the completion of commissioning requirements listed in Sections 120.8(g) through 120.8(i) shall be included.
- (g) **Functional performance testing.** Functional performance tests shall demonstrate the correct installation and operation of each component, system and system-to-system interface in accordance with the acceptance test requirements in Sections 120.5, 130.4 and 140.9. Functional performance testing reports shall contain information addressing each of the building components tested, the testing methods utilized, and include any readings and adjustments made.
- EXCEPTION to Section 120.8(g):** Healthcare facilities.
- (h) **Documentation and training.** A Systems Manual and Systems Operations Training shall be completed.
1. **Systems manual.** Documentation of the operational aspects of the building shall be completed within the Systems Manual and delivered to the building owner or representative and facilities operator. The Systems Manual shall include the following:
    - A. Site information, including facility description, history and current requirements; and

- B. Site contact information; and
  - C. Instructions for basic operations and maintenance, including general site operating procedures, basic troubleshooting, recommended maintenance requirements, and a site events log; and
  - D. Description of major systems; and
  - E. Site equipment inventory and maintenance notes; and
  - F. A copy of all special inspection verifications required by the enforcing agency or the Standards.
2. **Systems operations training.** The training of the appropriate maintenance staff for each equipment type or system shall be documented in the commissioning report. Training materials shall include the following:
- A. System and equipment overview (i.e., what the equipment is, what it does and with what other systems or equipment it interfaces)
  - B. Review and demonstration of operation, servicing and preventive maintenance procedures
  - C. Review of the information in the Systems Manual
  - D. Review of the record drawings on the systems and equipment
- (i) **Commissioning report.** A complete report of commissioning process activities undertaken through the design, construction and reporting recommendations for post-construction phases of the building project shall be completed and provided to the owner or owner's representative.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

**SECTION 120.9 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR COMMERCIAL BOILERS.**

- (a) Combustion air positive shut-off shall be provided on all newly installed boilers as follows:
1. All boilers with an input capacity of 2.5 MMBtu/h (2,500,000 Btu/h) and above, in which the boiler is designed to operate with a nonpositive vent static pressure.
  2. All boilers where one stack serves two or more boilers with a total combined input capacity per stack of 2.5 MMBtu/h (2,500,000 Btu/h).
- (b) Boiler combustion air fans with motors 10 horsepower or larger shall meet one of the following for newly installed boilers:
1. The fan motor shall be driven by a variable speed drive, or
  2. The fan motor shall include controls that limit the fan motor demand to no more than 30 percent of the total design wattage at 50 percent of design air volume.
- (c) Newly installed boilers with an input capacity 5 MMBtu/h (5,000,000 Btu/h) and greater shall maintain excess (stack-gas) oxygen concentrations at less than or equal to 5.0 percent by volume on a dry basis over firing rates of 20 percent to 100 percent. Combustion air volume shall be controlled with respect to firing rate or flue gas oxygen concentration. Use of a common gas and combustion air control linkage or jack shaft is prohibited.

**EXCEPTION to Section 120.9(c):** Boilers with steady state full-load thermal efficiency 85 percent or higher.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

(This page intentionally left blank.)

## SUBCHAPTER 4

# NONRESIDENTIAL, HIGH-RISE RESIDENTIAL, AND HOTEL/MOTEL OCCUPANCIES—MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR LIGHTING SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT, AND ELECTRICAL POWER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS

---

### SECTION 130.0 – LIGHTING SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT, AND ELECTRICAL POWER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS —GENERAL

- (a) The design and installation of all lighting systems and equipment in nonresidential, high-rise residential, hotel/motel buildings, outdoor lighting, and electrical power distribution systems within the scope of Section 100.0(a) shall comply with the applicable provisions of Sections 130.0 through 130.5.

**NOTE:** The requirements of Sections 130.0 through 130.5 apply to newly constructed buildings. Section 141.0 specifies which requirements of Sections 130.0 through 130.5 also apply to additions and alterations to existing buildings.

- (b) **Functional areas where compliance with residential lighting standards is required.** The design and installation of all lighting systems, lighting controls, and equipment in the following functional areas shall comply with the applicable residential lighting requirements of Section 150.0(k). In buildings containing these functional areas, all other functional areas, such as common areas, shall comply with the applicable nonresidential lighting and controlled receptacle requirements.
1. High-rise residential dwelling units.
  2. Outdoor lighting attached to a high-rise residential or hotel/motel building and separately controlled from the inside of a dwelling unit or guest room.
  3. Fire station dwelling accommodations.
  4. Hotel and motel guest rooms. Additionally, hotel and motel guest rooms shall meet the requirements of Section 130.1(c)8 and Section 130.5(d)4.
  5. Dormitory and Senior housing dwelling accommodations.

**NOTE:** The requirements of Section 130.0(b) also apply to additions and alterations to functional areas of existing buildings as specified in Section 130.0(b).

- (c) **Luminaire classification and power.** Luminaires shall be classified and their wattage determined as follows:
1. Luminaire wattage shall be labeled as follows:
    - A. The maximum rated wattage or relamping rated wattage of a luminaire shall be listed on a permanent, preprinted, factory-installed label, as specified by UL 1574, 1598, 2108, or 8750, as applicable; and
    - B. The factory-installed maximum rated wattage or relamping rated wattage label shall not consist of peel-off or peel-down layers or other methods that allow the rated wattage to be changed after the luminaire has been shipped from the manufacturer.

**EXCEPTION to Section 130.0(c)1B:** Peel-down labels may be used only for the following luminaires when they can accommodate a range of lamp wattages without changing the luminaire housing, ballast, transformer or wiring. Qualifying luminaires shall have a single lamp, and shall have integrated

- ballasts or transformers. Peel-down labels must be layered such that the rated wattage reduces as successive layers are removed.
- i. High intensity discharge luminaires, having an integral electronic ballast, with a maximum relamping rated wattage of 150 watts.
  - ii. Low-voltage luminaires (except low voltage track systems),  $\leq 24$  volts, with a maximum relamping rated wattage of 50 watts.
  - iii. Compact fluorescent luminaires, having an integral electronic ballast, with a maximum relamping rated wattage of 42 watts.
2. For luminaires with line voltage lamp holders not containing permanently installed ballasts or transformers, the wattage of such luminaires shall be determined as follows:
    - A. The maximum rated wattage of the luminaire; and
    - B. For recessed luminaires with line-voltage medium screw base sockets, wattage shall not be less than 50 watts per socket, or the rated wattage of the installed JA8 compliant lamps.
  3. For luminaires with permanently installed or remotely installed ballasts, the wattage of such luminaires shall be the operating input wattage of the rated lamp/ballast combination published in the ballast manufacturer's catalogs based on independent testing lab reports as specified by UL 1598.
  4. For inseparable SSL luminaires and SSL luminaires with remotely mounted drivers, the maximum rated wattage shall be the maximum rated input wattage of the SSL luminaire as specified in Section 130.0(c)1 when tested in accordance with UL 1598, 2108, 8750, or IES LM-79.
  5. For LED tape lighting and LED linear lighting with LED tape lighting components, the maximum rated wattage shall be the sum of the installed length of the tape lighting times its rated linear power density in watts per linear feet, or the maximum rated input wattage of the driver or power supply providing power to the lighting system, with tape lighting tested in accordance with UL 2108, 8750, or IES LM-79,
  6. For modular lighting systems that allow the addition or relocation of luminaires without altering the wiring of the system, shall be determined as follows:
    - A. The wattage shall be the greater of:
      - i. 30 watts per linear foot of track or plug-in busway; or
      - ii. the rated wattage of all of the luminaires included in the system, where the luminaire wattage is determined as specified in Section 130.0(c)1; or
    - B. For line-voltage lighting track and plug-in busway served by a track lighting integral current limiter or a dedicated track lighting supplementary overcurrent protection panel, the wattage shall be determined as follows:
      - i. The volt-ampere rating of current limiter as specified by UL 1077;
      - ii. The sum of the ampere (A) rating of all of the current protection devices times the branch circuit voltages for track lighting supplementary overcurrent protection panel ; or
    - C. For other modular lighting systems with power supplied by a driver, power supply or transformer, including but not limited to low-voltage lighting systems, the wattage of the system shall be the maximum rated input wattage of the driver, power supply or transformer published in the manufacturer's catalogs, as specified by UL 2108 or 8750.
- EXCEPTION to Section 130.0(c)6:** For power-over-Ethernet lighting systems, power provided to installed non-lighting devices may be subtracted from the total power rating of the power-over-Ethernet system.
7. For all other lighting equipment not addressed by Sections 130.0(c)2 through 6, the wattage of the lighting equipment shall be the maximum rated wattage of the lighting equipment, or operating input wattage of the system, labeled in accordance with Section 130.0(c)1, or published in manufacturer's catalogs, based on independent testing lab reports as specified by UL 1574, 1598, 2108, 8750, or IES LM-79.

- (d) **Lighting Controls.** All lighting controls and equipment shall comply with the applicable requirements in Sections 110.9, 130.1 and 130.2, and shall be installed in accordance with any applicable manufacturer instructions.
- (e) **Energy Management Control System (EMCS).** An EMCS may be installed to comply with the requirements of one or more lighting controls if it meets the following minimum requirements:
1. Provides all applicable functionality for each specific lighting control or system for which it is installed in accordance with Sections 110.9, 130.1 and 130.2; and
  2. Complies with all applicable Lighting Control Installation Requirements in accordance with Section 130.4 for each specific lighting control or system for which it is installed; and
  3. Complies with all applicable application requirements for each specific lighting control or system for which it is installed, in accordance with Part 6.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

## SECTION 130.1 – MANDATORY INDOOR LIGHTING CONTROLS

Nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel buildings shall comply with the applicable requirements of Sections 130.1(a) through 130.1(f), in addition to the applicable requirements of Sections 110.9 and 130.0.

(a) **Manual Area Controls.** Each area enclosed by ceiling-height partitions shall provide lighting controls that allow the lighting in that area to be manually turned on and off. The manual control shall:

1. Be readily accessible; and

**EXCEPTION to Section 130.1(a)1:** Public restrooms having two or more stalls, parking areas, stairwells, and corridors may use a manual control not accessible to unauthorized personnel.

2. Be located in the same enclosed area with the lighting it controls; and

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 130.1(a)2:** For malls and atria, auditorium areas, retail merchandise sales areas, wholesale showroom areas, commercial and industrial storage areas, general commercial and industrial work areas, convention centers, arenas, psychiatric and secure areas in healthcare facilities, and other areas where placement of a manual area control poses a health and safety hazard, the manual area control may instead be located so that a person using the control can see the lights or area controlled by that control, or visually signal or display the current state of the controlled lighting.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 130.1(a)2:** In healthcare facilities, for restrooms and bathing rooms intended for a single occupant, the lighting control may be located outside the enclosed area but directly adjacent to the door.

3. Provide separate control of general, floor display, wall display, window display, case display, ornamental, and special effects lighting, such that each type of lighting can be turned on or off without turning on or off other types of lighting, and without turning on or off any other equipment.

**EXCEPTION to Section 130.1(a):** Up to 0.2 watts per square foot of indoor lighting may be continuously illuminated to allow for means of egress illumination consistent with California Building Code Section 1008. Egress lighting complying with this wattage limitation is not required to comply with manual area control requirements if:

1. The area is designated for means of egress on the plans and specifications submitted to the enforcement agency under Section 10-103(a)2 of Part 1; and
2. The controls for the egress lighting are not accessible to unauthorized personnel.

(b) **Multi-Level Lighting Controls.** The general lighting of any enclosed area 100 square feet or larger with a connected lighting load that exceeds 0.5 watts per square foot shall provide multi-level lighting controls that allow the level of lighting to be adjusted up and down. The multi-level controls shall provide the number of control steps and meet the uniformity requirements specified in TABLE 130.1-A.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 130.1(b):** An area enclosed by ceiling height partitions that has only one luminaire with no more than two lamps.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 130.1(b):** Restrooms.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 130.1(b):** Healthcare facilities.

(c) **Shut-OFF Controls.** All installed indoor lighting shall be equipped with controls able to automatically reduce lighting power when the space is typically unoccupied.

**EXCEPTION to Section 130.1(c):** Healthcare facilities.

1. In addition to lighting controls installed to comply with Sections 130.1(a) and (b), all installed indoor lighting shall be equipped with controls that meet the following requirements:
  - A. Shall be controlled with an occupant sensing control, automatic time-switch control, or other control capable of automatically shutting OFF all of the lighting when the space is typically unoccupied; and
  - B. Separate controls for the lighting on each floor, other than lighting in stairwells; and

- C. Separate controls for a space enclosed by ceiling height partitions not exceeding 5,000 square feet; and
  - EXCEPTION to Section 130.1(c)1C:** In the following function areas the area controlled may not exceed 20,000 square feet: Malls, auditoriums, single tenant retail, industrial, convention centers, and arenas;
- D. Separate controls for general, display, ornamental, and display case lighting; and
- E. For automatic time-switch controls, may include a manual-on mode.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 130.1(c)1:** Where the lighting is serving an area that is in continuous use, 24 hours per day/365 days per year.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 130.1(c)1:** Lighting complying with Section 130.1(c)5 or 7.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 130.1(c)1:** Up to 0.1 watts per square foot of lighting in any area within a building may be continuously illuminated, provided that the area is designated for means of egress on the plans and specifications submitted to the enforcement agency under Section 10-103(a)2 of Part 1.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 130.1(c)1:** Electrical equipment rooms subject to Article 110.26(D) of the California Electrical Code.

**EXCEPTION 5 to Section 130.1(c)1:** Illumination provided by lighting equipment that is designated for emergency lighting, connected to an emergency power source or battery supply, and is intended to function in emergency mode only when normal power is absent.

- 2. Countdown timer switches may be used to comply with the automatic shut-OFF control requirements in Section 130.1(c)1 only in closets less than 70 square feet, and server aisles in server rooms. The maximum timer setting shall be 10 minutes for closets, and 30 minutes for server aisles.
- 3. If an automatic time-switch control, other than an occupant sensing control, is installed to comply with Section 130.1(c)1, it shall incorporate a manual override lighting control that:
  - A. Complies with Section 130.1(a); and
  - B. Allows the lighting to remain ON for no more than 2 hours when an override is initiated.

**EXCEPTION to Section 130.1(c)3B:** In the following function areas, the override time may exceed 2 hours: Malls, auditoriums, single tenant retail, industrial, and arenas where captive-key override is utilized.

- 4. If an automatic time-switch control, other than an occupant sensing control, is installed to comply with Section 130.1(c)1, it shall incorporate an automatic holiday "shut-OFF" feature that turns OFF all loads for at least 24 hours, and then resumes the normally scheduled operation.

**EXCEPTION to Section 130.1(c)4:** In retail stores and associated malls, restaurants, grocery stores, churches, and theaters, the automatic time-switch control is not required to incorporate an automatic holiday shut-OFF feature.

- 5. **Areas where Occupant Sensing Controls are required to shut OFF All Lighting.** In offices 250 square feet or smaller, multipurpose rooms of less than 1,000 square feet, classrooms of any size, conference rooms of any size, and restrooms of any size, lighting shall be controlled with occupant sensing controls to automatically shut OFF all of the lighting when the room is unoccupied.

In areas required by Section 130.1(b) to have multi-level lighting controls, the occupant sensing controls shall function either as a:

- A. Partial-ON Occupant Sensor capable of automatically activating between 50-70 percent of controlled lighting power, or
- B. Vacancy Sensor, where all lighting responds to a manual ON input only.

In areas not required by Section 130.1(b) to have multi-level lighting controls, the occupant sensing controls shall function either as a:

- A. Occupant Sensor; or
- B. Partial-ON Occupant Sensor, or

- C. Vacancy Sensor, where all lighting responds to a manual ON input only.

In addition, controls shall be provided that allow the lights to be manually shut-OFF in accordance with Section 130.1(a) regardless of the sensor status.

6. **Areas where full or partial OFF occupant sensing controls are required.** Lighting installed in the following areas shall meet the following requirements in addition to complying with Section 130.1(c)1.
- A. In aisle ways and open areas in warehouses, lighting shall be controlled with occupant sensing controls that automatically reduce lighting power by at least 50 percent when the areas are unoccupied. The occupant sensing controls shall independently control lighting in each aisle way, and shall not control lighting beyond the aisle way being controlled by the sensor.
- EXCEPTION 1 to Section 130.1(c)6A:** In aisle ways and open areas in warehouses in which the installed lighting power is 80 percent or less of the value allowed under the Area Category Method, occupant sensing controls shall reduce lighting power by at least 40 percent.
- EXCEPTION 2 to Section 130.1(c)6A:** When metal halide lighting or high pressure sodium lighting is installed in warehouses, occupant sensing controls shall reduce lighting power by at least 40 percent.
- B. In library book stack aisles 10 feet or longer that are accessible from only one end, and library book stack aisles 20 feet or longer that are accessible from both ends, lighting shall be controlled with occupant sensing controls that automatically reduce lighting power by at least 50 percent when the areas are unoccupied. The occupant sensing controls shall independently control lighting in each aisle way, and shall not control lighting beyond the aisle way being controlled by the sensor.
- C. Lighting installed in corridors and stairwells shall be controlled by occupant sensing controls that separately reduce the lighting power in each space by at least 50 percent when the space is unoccupied. The occupant sensing controls shall be capable of automatically turning the lighting fully ON only in the separately controlled space, and shall be automatically activated from all designed paths of egress.
7. **Areas where partial OFF occupant sensing controls are required.** Lighting installed in the following areas shall meet the following requirements instead of complying with Section 130.1(c)1.
- A. Lighting in stairwells and common area corridors that provide access to guestrooms and dwelling units of high-rise residential buildings and hotel/motels shall be controlled with occupant sensing controls that automatically reduce lighting power by at least 50 percent when the areas are unoccupied. The occupant sensing controls shall be capable of automatically turning the lighting fully ON only in the separately controlled space, and shall be automatically activated from all designed paths of egress.
- EXCEPTION to Section 130.1(c)7A:** In corridors and stairwells in which the installed lighting power is 80 percent or less of the value allowed under the Area Category Method, occupant sensing controls shall reduce power by at least 40 percent.
- B. In parking garages, parking areas and loading and unloading areas, general lighting shall be controlled by occupant sensing controls having at least one control step between 20 percent and 50 percent of design lighting power. No more than 500 watts of rated lighting power shall be controlled together as a single zone. A reasonably uniform level of illuminance shall be achieved in accordance with the applicable requirements in TABLE 130.1-A. The occupant sensing controls shall be capable of automatically turning the lighting fully ON only in the separately controlled space, and shall be automatically activated from all designed paths of egress.
- Interior areas of parking garages are classified as indoor lighting for compliance with Section 130.1(c)7B. Parking areas on the roof of a parking structure are classified as outdoor hardscape and shall comply with the applicable provisions in Section 130.2.
- EXCEPTION to Section 130.1(c)7B:** Metal halide luminaires with a lamp plus ballast mean system efficacy of greater than 75 lumens per watt, used for general lighting in parking garages, parking areas and loading and unloading areas, shall be controlled by occupant sensing controls having at least one control step between 20 percent and 60 percent of design lighting power.
8. Hotel motel guest rooms shall have captive card key controls, occupancy sensing controls, or automatic controls such that, no longer than 20 minutes after the guest room has been vacated, lighting power is switched off.

**EXCEPTION to Section 130.1(c)8:** One high efficacy luminaire as defined in TABLE 150.0-A that is switched separately and where the switch is located within 6 feet of the entry door.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 130.1(c):** Lighting providing means of egress illumination, as the term is used in the California Building Code, shall be configured to provide no less than the amount of light required by California Building Code Section 1008 while in the partial-off mode.

(d) **Automatic Daylighting Controls.** The general lighting in skylit daylit zones and primary sidelit daylit zones, as well as the general lighting in the combined primary and secondary sidelit daylit zones in parking garages, shall provide controls that automatically adjust the power of the installed lighting up and down to keep the total light level stable as the amount of incoming daylight changes. For skylight located in an atrium, the skylit daylit zone definition shall apply to the floor area directly under the atrium and the top floor area directly adjacent to the atrium.

1. All skylit daylit zones, primary sidelit daylit zones, and the combined primary and secondary sidelit daylit zones in parking garages shall be shown on the plans.

**NOTE:** Parking areas on the roof of a parking structure are outdoor hardscape, not skylit daylit areas.

2. The automatic daylighting controls shall provide separate control for luminaires in each type of daylit zone. Luminaires that fall in both a skylit and sidelit daylit zone shall be controlled as part of the skylit zone.

3. The automatic daylighting controls shall:

A. For spaces required to install multilevel controls under Section 130.1(b), adjust lighting via continuous dimming or the number of control steps provided by the multilevel controls;

B. For each space, ensure the combined illuminance from the controlled lighting and daylight is not less than the illuminance from controlled lighting when no daylight is available;

C. For areas other than parking garages, ensure that when the daylight illuminance is greater than 150 percent of the design illuminance received from the general lighting system at full power, the general lighting power in that daylight zone shall be reduced by a minimum of 65 percent; and

D. For parking garages, ensure that when illuminance levels measured at the farthest edge of the secondary sidelit zone away from the glazing or opening are greater than 150 percent of the illuminance provided by the controlled lighting when no daylight is available, the controlled lighting power consumption is zero.

4. When photosensors are located within the daylit zone, at least one photosensor shall be located so that they are not readily accessible to unauthorized personnel.

5. The location where calibration adjustments are made to the automatic daylighting controls shall be readily accessible to authorized personnel but may be inside a locked case or under a cover which requires a tool for access.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 130.1(d):** Areas under skylights where it is documented that existing adjacent structures or natural objects block direct sunlight for more than 1,500 daytime hours per year between 8a.m. and 4p.m.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 130.1(d):** Areas adjacent to vertical glazing below an overhang, where the overhang covers the entire width of the vertical glazing, no vertical glazing is above the overhang, and the ratio of the overhang projection to the overhang rise is greater than 1.5 for South, East and West orientations or greater than 1 for North orientations.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 130.1(d):** Rooms in which the combined total installed general lighting power in the Skylit Daylit Zone and Primary Sidelit Daylit Zone is less than 120 Watts, or parking garage areas where the total combined general lighting power in the sidelit daylight zones is less than 60 watts.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 130.1(d):** Rooms that have a total glazing area of less than 24 square feet, or parking garage areas with a combined total of less than 36 square feet of glazing or opening.

**EXCEPTION 5 to Section 130.1(d):** For parking garages, luminaires located in the daylight adaptation zone and luminaires for only dedicated ramps. Daylight adaptation zone and dedicated ramps are defined in Section 100.1.

**EXCEPTION 6 to Section 130.1(d):** Luminaires in sidelit daylit zones in retail merchandise sales and wholesale showroom areas.

- (e) **Demand Responsive Controls.** See Section 110.12 for requirements for demand responsive lighting controls.
- (f) **Control Interactions.** Each lighting control installed to comply with Section 130.1 shall permit or incorporate the functions of the other lighting controls required by this Section.
1. For general lighting, the manual area control shall permit the level or amount of light provided while the lighting is on to be set or adjusted by the controls specified in Section 130.1(b), (c), (d), and (e).
  2. The manual area control shall permit the shutoff control to turn the lighting down or off.
  3. The multi-level lighting control shall permit the automatic daylighting control to adjust the electric lighting level in response to changes in the amount of daylight in the daylit zone.
  4. The multi-level lighting control shall permit the demand responsive control to adjust the lighting during a demand response event and to return it to the level set by the multilevel control after the event.
  5. The shutoff control shall permit the manual area control to turn the lighting on. If the on request occurs while an automatic time switch control would turn the lighting off, then the on request shall be treated as an override request consistent with Section 130.1(c)3.
  6. The automatic daylighting control shall permit the multi-level lighting control to adjust the level of lighting.
  7. For lighting controlled by multi-level lighting controls and by occupant sensing controls that provide an automatic-on function, the controls shall provide a partial-on function that is capable of automatically activating between 50-70 percent of controlled lighting power.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

TABLE 130.1-A MULTI-LEVEL LIGHTING CONTROLS AND UNIFORMITY REQUIREMENTS

Luminaire Type	Minimum Required Control Steps ( percent of full rated power <sup>1</sup> )				Uniform level of illuminance shall be achieved by:
Line-voltage sockets except GU-24	Continuous dimming 10-100 percent				
Low-voltage incandescent systems					
LED luminaires and LED source systems					
GU-24 rated for LED					
GU-24 sockets rated for fluorescent > 20 watts	Continuous dimming 20-100 percent				
Pin-based compact fluorescent > 20 watts <sup>2</sup>					
GU-24 sockets rated for fluorescent ≤ 20 watts	Minimum one step between 30-70 percent				Stepped dimming; or Continuous dimming; or Switching alternate lamps in a luminaire
Pin-based compact fluorescent ≤ 20 watts <sup>2</sup>					
Linear fluorescent and U-bent fluorescent ≤ 13 watts					
Linear fluorescent and U-bent fluorescent > 13 watts	Minimum one step in each range:				Stepped dimming; or Continuous dimming; or Switching alternate lamps in each luminaire, having a minimum of 4 lamps per luminaire illuminating the same area and in the same manner
	20-40 %	50-70 %	75-85 %	100 %	
Track Lighting	Minimum one step between 30 – 70 percent				Step dimming; or Continuous dimming; or Separately switching circuits in multi-circuit track with a minimum of two circuits.
HID > 20 watts	Minimum one step between 50 - 70 percent				Stepped dimming; or Continuous dimming; or Switching alternate lamps in each luminaire, having a minimum of 2 lamps per luminaire, illuminating the same area and in the same manner.
Induction > 25 watts					
Other light sources					
<p>1. Full rated input power of ballast and lamp, corresponding to maximum ballast factor</p> <p>2. Includes only pin based lamps: twin tube, multiple twin tube, and spiral lamps</p>					
<p><b>EXCEPTION 1 to Table 130.1-A Minimum Required Control Steps:</b> Classrooms with a connected general lighting load of 0.7 watts per square feet or less shall have a minimum of one control step between 30-70 percent of full rated power, regardless of luminaire type.</p> <p><b>EXCEPTION 2 to Table 130.1-A Minimum Required Control Steps:</b> Library stack aisles, aisle ways and open areas in warehouses, parking garages, parking areas, loading and unloading areas, stairwells, and corridors shall have a minimum of one control step between 20-60 percent of full rated power, regardless of luminaire type.</p>					

---

## SECTION 130.2 – OUTDOOR LIGHTING CONTROLS AND EQUIPMENT

Nonresidential, high-rise residential and hotel/motel buildings shall comply with the applicable requirements of Sections 130.2(a) through 130.2(c).

(a) **RESERVED**

(b) **Luminaire Cutoff Requirements.** All outdoor luminaires of 6,200 initial luminaire lumens or greater, shall comply with Backlight, Uplight, and Glare (collectively referred to as "BUG" in accordance with IES TM-15-11, Addendum A) requirements as follows:

1. Maximum zonal lumens for Backlight, Uplight, and Glare shall be in accordance with Title 24, Part 11, Section 5.106.8.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 130.2(b):** Signs.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 130.2(b):** Lighting for building facades, public monuments, statues, and vertical surfaces of bridges.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 130.2(b):** Lighting not permitted by a health or life safety statute, ordinance, or regulation to be a cutoff luminaire.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 130.2(b):** Temporary outdoor lighting.

**EXCEPTION 5 to Section 130.2(b):** Replacement of existing pole mounted luminaires in hardscape areas meeting all of the following conditions:

- A. Where the existing luminaire does not meet the luminaire BUG requirements in Section 130.2(b); and
- B. Spacing between existing poles is greater than six times the mounting height of the existing luminaires; and
- C. Where no additional poles are being added to the site; and
- D. Where new wiring to the luminaires is not being installed; and
- E. Provided that the connected lighting power wattage is not increased.

**EXCEPTION 6 to Section 130.2(b):** Luminaires that illuminate the public right of way on publicly maintained roadways, sidewalks, and bikeways.

**EXCEPTION 7 to Section 130.2(b):** Outdoor lighting attached to a high-rise residential or hotel/motel building and separately controlled from the inside of a dwelling unit or guest room.

(c) **Controls for Outdoor Lighting.** Outdoor lighting shall be independently controlled from other electrical loads, and the controls for outdoor lighting shall meet the following functional requirements:

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 130.2(c):** Outdoor lighting not permitted by a health or life safety statute, ordinance, or regulation to be turned OFF or reduced.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 130.2(c):** Lighting in tunnels required to be illuminated 24 hours per day and 365 days per year.

1. **Daylight Availability.** All installed outdoor lighting shall be controlled by a photo control, astronomical time-switch control, or other control capable of automatically shutting OFF the outdoor lighting when daylight is available.
2. **Automatic Scheduling Controls.**
  - A. Automatic scheduling controls shall be capable of reducing the outdoor lighting power by at least 50 percent and no more than 90 percent, and separately capable of turning the lighting OFF, during scheduled unoccupied periods.
  - B. Automatic scheduling controls shall allow scheduling of a minimum of two nighttime periods with independent lighting levels, and may include an override function that turns lighting ON during its scheduled dim or OFF state for no more than two hours when an override is initiated.

- C. Acceptance tests of outdoor lighting controls shall verify the scheduled occupied and unoccupied periods, as specified in Section 130.4(a)6.
  - D. Automatic scheduling controls shall be installed for all outdoor lighting, and may be installed in combination with motion sensing controls or other outdoor lighting controls.
3. **Motion Sensing Controls.**
- A. Motion sensing controls shall be capable of reducing the outdoor lighting power of each controlled luminaire by at least 50 percent and no more than 90 percent, and separately capable of turning the luminaire OFF, during unoccupied periods.
  - B. Motion sensing controls shall be capable of reducing the lighting to its dim or OFF state no longer than 15 minutes after the area has been vacated, and of returning the lighting to its ON state when the area becomes occupied.
  - C. No more than 1,500 watts of lighting power shall be controlled by a single sensor.
  - D. Motion sensing controls shall be installed for the following luminaires, and may be installed for other outdoor lighting and in combination with other outdoor lighting controls:
    - i. Outdoor luminaires other than Building Façade, Ornamental Hardscape, Outdoor Dining, or Outdoor Sales Frontage lighting, where the bottom of luminaire is mounted 24 feet or less above grade; and,
    - ii. Outdoor wall mounted luminaires installed for Building Façade, Ornamental Hardscape or Outdoor Dining lighting that have a bilaterally symmetric distribution as described in the IES Handbook (typically referred to as “wall packs”) mounted 24 feet above grade or lower.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 130.2(c)3:** Luminaires with a maximum rated wattage of 40 watts each are not required to have motion sensing controls.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 130.2(c)3:** Applications listed as Exceptions to Section 140.7(a) are not required to have motion sensing controls.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 130.2(c)3:** Lighting subject to a health or life safety statute, ordinance, or regulation may have a minimum time-out period longer than 15 minutes or a minimum dimming level above 50 percent when necessary to comply with the applicable law.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

## SECTION 130.3 – SIGN LIGHTING CONTROLS

Nonresidential buildings other than healthcare facilities, high-rise residential buildings, and hotel/motel buildings shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 130.3(a)1 through 130.3(a)3.

(a) **Controls for Sign Lighting.** All sign lighting shall meet the requirements below as applicable:

1. **Indoor Signs.** All indoor sign lighting other than exit sign lighting shall be controlled with an automatic time-switch control or astronomical time-switch control.
2. **Outdoor Signs.** Outdoor sign lighting shall meet the following requirements as applicable:
  - A. All outdoor sign lighting shall be controlled with a photocontrol in addition to an automatic time-switch control, or an astronomical time-switch control.

**EXCEPTION to Section 130.3(a)2A:** Outdoor signs in tunnels, and signs in large permanently covered outdoor areas that are intended to be continuously lit, 24 hours per day and 365 days per year.
  - B. All outdoor sign lighting that is ON both day and night shall be controlled with a dimmer that provides the ability to automatically reduce sign lighting power by a minimum of 65 percent during nighttime hours. Signs that are illuminated at night and for more than 1 hour during daylight hours shall be considered ON both day and night.

**EXCEPTION to Section 130.3(a)2B:** Outdoor signs in tunnels and large covered areas that are intended to be illuminated both day and night.
3. **Demand Responsive Electronic Message Center (EMC) Control.** See Section 110.12 for requirements for demand responsive EMC controls.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

## SECTION 130.4 –LIGHTING CONTROL ACCEPTANCE AND INSTALLATION CERTIFICATE REQUIREMENTS

Nonresidential buildings other than healthcare facilities, high-rise residential buildings, and hotel/motel buildings shall comply with the applicable requirements of Sections 130.4(a) through 130.4(c). Healthcare facilities shall comply with the applicable acceptance and installation documentation requirements of OSHPD.

- (a) **Lighting Control Acceptance Requirements.** Before an occupancy permit is granted, indoor and outdoor lighting controls serving the building, area, or site shall be certified as meeting the Acceptance Requirements for Code Compliance in accordance with Section 130.4(a). A Certificate of Acceptance shall be submitted to the enforcement agency under Section 10-103(a) of Part 1, that:
1. Certifies that all of the lighting acceptance testing necessary to meet the requirements of Part 6 is completed;
  2. Certifies that the applicable procedures in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.6 and NA7.8 have been followed;
  3. Certifies that automatic daylight controls comply with Section 130.1(d) and Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.6.1;
  4. Certifies that lighting shut-OFF controls comply with Section 130.1(c) and Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.6.2;
  5. Certifies that demand responsive controls comply with Section 130.1(e) and Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.6.3; and
  6. Certifies that outdoor lighting controls comply with the applicable requirements of Section 130.2(c) and Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.8; and
  7. Certifies that lighting systems receiving the Institutional Tuning Power Adjustment Factor comply with Section 140.6(a)2J and Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.7.6.2.
- (b) **Lighting Control Installation Certificate Requirements.** To be recognized for compliance with Part 6 an Installation Certificate shall be submitted in accordance with Section 10-103(a) for any lighting control system, Energy Management Control System, track lighting integral current limiter, track lighting supplementary overcurrent protection panel, interlocked lighting system, lighting Power Adjustment Factor, or additional wattage available for a videoconference studio, in accordance with the following requirements, as applicable:
1. Certification that when a lighting control system is installed to comply with lighting control requirements in Part 6 it complies with the applicable requirements of Section 110.9; and complies with Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.7.1.
  2. Certification that when an Energy Management Control System is installed to function as a lighting control required by Part 6 it functionally meets all applicable requirements for each application for which it is installed, in accordance with Sections 110.9, 130.0 through 130.5, 140.6 through 150.0, and 150.2; and complies with Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.7.2.
  3. **RESERVED**
  4. **RESERVED**
  5. Certification that interlocked lighting systems used to serve an approved area comply with Section 140.6(a)1; and comply with Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.7.5.
  6. Certification that lighting controls installed to earn a lighting Power Adjustment Factor (PAF) comply with Section 140.6(a)2; and comply with Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.7.6.
  7. Certification that additional lighting wattage installed for a videoconference studio complies with Section 140.6(c)2Gvii; and complies with Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.7.7.

- (c) When certification is required by Title 24, Part 1, Section 10-103.1, the acceptance testing specified by Section 130.4 shall be performed by a Certified Lighting Controls Acceptance Test Technician (CLCATT). If the CLCATT is operating as an employee, the CLCATT shall be employed by a Certified Lighting Controls Acceptance Test Employer. The CLCATT shall disclose on the Certificate of Acceptance a valid CLCATT certification identification number issued by an approved Acceptance Test Technician Certification Provider. The CLCATT shall complete all Certificate of Acceptance documentation in accordance with the applicable requirements in Section 10-103(a)4.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25402, 25402.1, 25213, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

## SECTION 130.5 –ELECTRICAL POWER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS

Nonresidential, high-rise residential and hotel/motel buildings shall comply with the applicable requirements of Sections 130.5(a) through 130.5(e).

- (a) **Service Electrical Metering.** Each electrical service or feeder shall have a permanently installed metering system which measures electrical energy use in accordance with TABLE 130.5-A.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 130.5(a):** Service or feeder for which the utility company provides a metering system that indicates instantaneous kW demand and kWh for a utility-defined period.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 130.5(a):** Electrical power distribution systems subject to California Electrical Code Article 517.

- (b) **Separation of Electrical Circuits for Electrical Energy Monitoring.** Electrical power distribution systems shall be designed so that measurement devices can monitor the electrical energy usage of load types according to TABLE 130.5-B.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 130.5(b):** For each separate load type, up to 10 percent of the connected load may be of any type.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 130.5(b):** Electrical power distribution systems subject to California Electrical Code Article 517.

- (c) **Voltage Drop.** The maximum combined voltage drop on both installed feeder conductors and branch circuit conductors to the farthest connected load or outlet shall not exceed 5 percent.

**EXCEPTION to Section 130.5(c):** Voltage drop permitted by California Electrical Code Sections 647.4, 695.6 and 695.7.

- (d) **Circuit Controls for 120-Volt Receptacles and Controlled Receptacles.** In all buildings, both controlled and uncontrolled 120 volt receptacles shall be provided in office areas, lobbies, conference rooms, kitchen areas in office spaces, and copy rooms. Additionally, hotel/motel guest rooms shall comply with Section 130.5(d)4. Controlled receptacles shall meet the following requirements, as applicable:

1. Install a control capable of automatically shutting OFF the controlled receptacles when the space is typically unoccupied, either at the receptacle or circuit level. When an automatic time switch control is installed it shall incorporate an override control that allows the controlled receptacle to remain ON for no more than 2 hours when an override is initiated and an automatic holiday “shut-OFF” feature that turns OFF all loads for at least 24 hours and then resumes the normally scheduled operation. Countdown timer switches shall not be used to comply with the automatic time switch control requirements; and
2. Install at least one controlled receptacle within 6 feet from each uncontrolled receptacle, or install a splitwired receptacle with at least one controlled and one uncontrolled receptacle. Where receptacles are installed in modular furniture in open office areas, at least one controlled receptacle shall be installed at each workstation; and
3. Provide a permanent and durable marking for controlled receptacles or circuits to differentiate them from uncontrolled receptacles or circuits; and
4. For hotel and motel guest rooms, install controlled receptacles for at least one-half of the 120-volt receptacles in each guestroom. Electric circuits serving controlled receptacles in guestrooms shall have captive card key controls, occupancy sensing controls, or automatic controls so the power is switched off no longer than 30 minutes after the guestroom has been vacated.

**NOTE:** A hardwired power strip controlled by an occupant sensing control may be used to comply with Section 130.5(d). Plug-in strips and other plug-in devices shall not be used to comply with the requirements of this Section.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 130.5(d):** Receptacles that are only for the following purposes:

- i. Receptacles specifically for refrigerators and water dispensers in kitchen areas.
- ii. Receptacles located a minimum of six feet above the floor that are specifically for clocks.

- iii. Receptacles for network copiers, fax machines, A/V and data equipment other than personal computers in copy rooms.
- iv. Receptacles on circuits rated more than 20 amperes.
- v. Receptacles connected to an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) that are intended to be in continuous use, 24 hours per day/365 days per year, and are marked to differentiate them from other uncontrolled receptacles or circuits.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 130.5(d):** Receptacles in healthcare facilities.

- (e) **Demand responsive controls and equipment.** See Section 110.12 for requirements for demand responsive controls and equipment.

**NOTE:** Definitions of terms and phrases in Section 130.5 are determined as specified in Section 100.1(b). Terms and phrases not found in Section 100.1(b) shall be defined as specified in Title 24, Part 3, Article 100 of the California Electrical Code.

*TABLE 130.5-A MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS FOR METERING OF ELECTRICAL LOAD*

Metering Functionality	Electrical Services rated 50 kVA or less	Electrical Services rated more than 50kVA and less than or equal to 250 kVA	Electrical Services rated more than 250 kVA and less than or equal to 1000kVA	Electrical Services rated more than 1000kVA
Instantaneous (at the time) kW demand	Required	Required	Required	Required
Historical peak demand (kW)	Not required	Not required	Required	Required
Tracking kWh for a user-definable period.	Required	Required	Required	Required
kWh per rate period	Not required	Not required	Not required	Required

TABLE 130.5-B MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS FOR SEPARATION OF ELECTRICAL LOAD

Electrical Load Type	Electrical Services rated 50 kVA or less	Electrical Services rated more than 50kVA and less than or equal to 250 kVA	Electrical Services rated more than 250 kVA and less than or equal to 1000kVA	Electrical Services rated more than 1000kVA
Lighting including exit and egress lighting and exterior lighting	Not required	All lighting in aggregate	All lighting disaggregated by floor, type or area	All lighting disaggregated by floor, type or area
HVAC systems and components including chillers, fans, heaters, furnaces, package units, cooling towers, and circulation pumps associated with HVAC	Not required	All HVAC in aggregate	All HVAC in aggregate and each HVAC load rated at least 50 kVA	All HVAC in aggregate and each HVAC load rated at least 50kVA
Domestic and service water system pumps and related systems and components	Not required	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate
Plug load including appliances rated less than 25 kVA	Not required	All plug load in aggregate Groups of plug loads exceeding 25 kVA connected load in an area less than 5000 sf	All plug load separated by floor, type or area Groups of plug loads exceeding 25 kVA connected load in an area less than 5000 sf	All plug load separated by floor, type or area All groups of plug loads exceeding 25 kVA connected load in an area less than 5000 sf
Elevators, escalators, moving walks, and transit systems	Not required	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate
Other individual non-HVAC loads or appliances rated 25kVA or greater	Not required	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate
Industrial and commercial load centers 25 kVA or greater including theatrical lighting installations and commercial kitchens	Not required	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate
Renewable power source (net or total)	Each group	Each group	Each group	Each group
Loads associated with renewable power source	Not required	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate
Charging stations for electric vehicles	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate	All loads in aggregate

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

(This page intentionally left blank.)

## SUBCHAPTER 5

# NONRESIDENTIAL, HIGH-RISE RESIDENTIAL, AND HOTEL/MOTEL OCCUPANCIES—PERFORMANCE AND PRESCRIPTIVE COMPLIANCE APPROACHES FOR ACHIEVING ENERGY EFFICIENCY

---

### SECTION 140.0 – PERFORMANCE AND PRESCRIPTIVE COMPLIANCE APPROACHES

Nonresidential, high-rise residential and hotel/motel buildings shall comply with all of the following:

- (a) The requirements of Sections 100.0 through 110.12 applicable to the building project (mandatory measures for all buildings).
- (b) The requirements of Sections 120.0 through 130.5 (mandatory measures for nonresidential, high-rise residential and hotel/motel buildings).
- (c) Either the performance compliance approach (energy budgets) specified in Section 140.1 or the prescriptive compliance approach specified in Section 140.2 for the Climate Zone in which the building will be located. Climate zones are shown in FIGURE 100.1-A.

**NOTE to Section 140.0(c):** The Commission periodically updates, publishes, and makes available to interested persons and local enforcement agencies precise descriptions of the Climate Zones, which is available by zip code boundaries depicted in the Reference Joint Appendices along with a list of the communities in each zone.

**NOTE to Section 140.0:** The requirements of Sections 140.1 through 140.9 apply to newly constructed buildings. Section 141.0 specifies which requirements of Sections 140.1 through 140.9 also apply to additions or alterations to existing buildings.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

**SECTION 140.1 – PERFORMANCE APPROACH: ENERGY BUDGETS**

A building complies with the performance approach if the energy budget calculated for the Proposed Design Building under Subsection (b) is no greater than the energy budget calculated for the Standard Design Building under Subsection (a).

- (a) **Energy Budget for the Standard Design Building.** The energy budget for the Standard Design Building is determined by applying the mandatory and prescriptive requirements to the Proposed Design Building. The energy budget is the sum of the TDV energy for space-conditioning, indoor lighting, mechanical ventilation, service water heating, and covered process loads.
- (b) **Energy Budget for the Proposed Design Building.** The energy budget for a Proposed Design Building is determined by calculating the TDV energy for the Proposed Design Building. The energy budget is the sum of the TDV energy for space-conditioning, indoor lighting, mechanical ventilation and service water heating and covered process loads.
- (c) **Calculation of Energy Budget.** The TDV energy for both the Standard Design Building and the Proposed Design Building shall be computed by Compliance Software certified for this use by the Commission. The processes for Compliance Software approval by the Commission are documented in the ACM Approval Manual.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

## **SECTION 140.2 – PRESCRIPTIVE APPROACH**

To comply using the prescriptive approach, a building shall be designed with and shall have constructed and installed systems and components meeting the applicable requirements of Sections 140.3 through 140.9.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

## SECTION 140.3 – PRESCRIPTIVE REQUIREMENTS FOR BUILDING ENVELOPES

A building complies with this section by being designed with and having constructed to meet all prescriptive requirements in Subsection (a) and the requirements of Subsection (c) and (d) where they apply.

(a) **Envelope Component Requirements.**

1. **Exterior roofs and ceilings.** Exterior roofs and ceilings shall comply with each of the applicable requirements in this subsection:
  - A. **Roofing Products.** Shall meet the requirements of Section 110.8 and the applicable requirements of Subsections i through ii:
    - i. Nonresidential buildings:
      - a. Low-sloped roofs in Climate Zones 1 through 16 shall have:
        1. A minimum aged solar reflectance of 0.63 and a minimum thermal emittance of 0.75; or
        2. A minimum Solar Reflectance Index (SRI) of 75.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.3(a)1Aia:** Wood-framed roofs in Climate Zones 3 and 5 are exempt from the requirements of Section 140.3(a)1Aia if the roof assembly has a U-factor of 0.034 or lower.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.3(a)1Aia:** Roof constructions with a weight of at least 25 lb/ft<sup>2</sup> over the roof membrane are exempt from the requirements of Section 140.3(a)1Aia.

**EXCEPTION 3 to SECTION 140.3(a)1Aia:** An aged solar reflectance less than 0.63 is allowed provided the maximum roof/ceiling U-factor in TABLE 140.3 is not exceeded.
      - b. Steep-sloped roofs in Climate Zones 1 through 16 shall have a minimum aged solar reflectance of 0.20 and a minimum thermal emittance of 0.75, or a minimum SRI of 16.
    - ii. High-rise residential buildings and hotels and motels:
      - a. Low-sloped roofs in Climate Zones 9, 10, 11, 13, 14 and 15 shall have a minimum aged solar reflectance of 0.55 and a minimum thermal emittance of 0.75, or a minimum SRI of 64.

**EXCEPTION to Section 140.3(a)1Aia:** Roof constructions with a weight of at least 25 lb/ft<sup>2</sup> over the roof membrane.
      - b. Steep-sloped roofs in Climate Zones 2 through 15 shall have a minimum aged solar reflectance of 0.20 and a minimum thermal emittance of 0.75, or a minimum SRI of 16.

TABLE 140.3 ROOF/CEILING INSULATION TRADEOFF FOR AGED SOLAR REFLECTANCE

Nonresidential			
Aged Solar Reflectance	Metal Building Climate Zone 1-16 U-factor	Wood framed and Other Climate Zone 6 & 7 U-factor	Wood Framed and Other All Other Climate Zones U-factor
0.62-0.56	0.038	0.045	0.032
0.55-0.46	0.035	0.042	0.030
0.45-0.36	0.033	0.039	0.029
0.35-0.25	0.031	0.037	0.028

**EXCEPTION to Section 140.3(a)1A:** Roof area covered by building integrated photovoltaic panels and building integrated solar thermal panels are not required to meet the minimum requirements for solar reflectance, thermal emittance, or SRI.

- B. **Roof Insulation.** Roofs shall have an overall assembly U-factor no greater than the applicable value in Table 140.3- B, C or D, and where required by Section 110.8 and 120.7(a)3, insulation shall be placed in direct contact with a continuous roof or drywall ceiling.
2. **Exterior Walls.** Exterior walls shall have an overall assembly U-factor no greater than the applicable value in TABLE 140.3-B, C or D.
3. **Demising Walls.** Demising walls shall meet the requirements of Section 120.7(b)7. Vertical windows in demising walls between conditioned and unconditioned spaces shall have an area-weighted average U-factor no greater than the applicable value in TABLE 140.3-B, C or D.
4. **Exterior Floors and Soffits.** Exterior floors and soffits shall have an overall assembly U-factor no greater than the applicable value in TABLE 140.3-B, C or D.
5. **Exterior Windows.** Vertical windows in exterior walls shall:
- A. Percent window area shall be limited in accordance with the applicable requirements of i and ii below:
- a west-facing area no greater than 40 percent of the gross west-facing exterior wall area, or 6 feet times the west-facing display perimeter, whichever is greater; and
  - a total area no greater than 40 percent of the gross exterior wall area, or 6 feet times the display perimeter, whichever is greater; and
- NOTE:** Demising walls are not exterior walls, and therefore demising wall area is not part of the gross exterior wall area or display perimeter, and windows in demising walls are not part of the window area.
- B. Have an area-weighted average U-factor no greater than the applicable value in TABLE 140.3-B, C or D.

**EXCEPTION to Section 140.3(a)5B:** For vertical windows containing chromogenic type glazing:

- The lower-rated labeled U-factor shall be used with automatic controls to modulate the amount of heat flow into the space in multiple steps in response to daylight levels or solar intensity; and
- Chromogenic glazing shall be considered separately from other glazing; and
- Area-weighted averaging with other glazing that is not chromogenic shall not be permitted.

- C. Have an area-weighted average Relative Solar Heat Gain Coefficient, RSHGC, excluding the effects of interior shading, no greater than the applicable value in TABLE 140.3-B, C or D.

For purposes of this paragraph, the Relative Solar Heat Gain Coefficient, RSHGC, of a vertical window is:

- i. The Solar Heat Gain Coefficient of the window; or
- ii. Relative Solar Heat Gain Coefficient is calculated using EQUATION 140.3-A, if the window has an overhang that extends beyond each side of the window jamb by a distance equal to the overhang's horizontal projection.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.3(a)5C:** An area-weighted average Relative Solar Heat Gain Coefficient of 0.56 or less shall be used for windows:

- a. That are in the first story of exterior walls that form a display perimeter; and
- b. For which codes restrict the use of overhangs to shade the windows.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.3(a)5C:** For vertical windows containing chromogenic type glazing:

- i. the lower-rated labeled RSHGC shall be used with automatic controls to modulate the amount of heat flow into the space in multiple steps in response to daylight levels or solar intensity; and
- ii. chromogenic glazing shall be considered separately from other glazing; and
- iii. area-weighted averaging with other glazing that is not chromogenic shall not be permitted.

**NOTE:** Demising walls are not exterior walls, and therefore windows in demising walls are not subject to SHGC requirements.

- D. Have an area-weighted average Visible Transmittance (VT) no less than the applicable value in TABLE 140.3-B and C, or EQUATION 140.3-B, as applicable.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.3(a)5D:** When the window's primary and secondary sidelit daylight zones are completely overlapped by one or more skylit daylight zones, then the window need not comply with Section 140.3(a)5D.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.3(a)5D:** If the window's VT is not within the scope of NFRC 200, or ASTM E972, then the VT shall be calculated according to Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA6.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 140.3(a)5D:** For vertical windows containing chromogenic type glazing:

- i. The higher rated labeled VT shall be used with automatic controls to modulate the amount of light transmitted into the space in multiple steps in response to daylight levels or solar intensity; and
- ii. Chromogenic glazing shall be considered separately from other glazing; and
- iii. Area-weighted averaging with other glazing that is not chromogenic shall not be permitted.

**NOTE:** Demising walls are not exterior walls, and therefore windows in demising walls are not subject to VT requirements.

*EQUATION 140.3-A RELATIVE SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT, RSHGC*

$$RSHGC = SHGC_{win} \times \left[ 1 + \frac{aH}{V} + b \left( \frac{H}{V} \right)^2 \right]$$

WHERE:

RSHGC = Relative Solar Heat Gain Coefficient.

SHGC<sub>win</sub> = Solar Heat Gain Coefficient of the window.

- H = Horizontal projection of the overhang from the surface of the window in feet, but no greater than V.
- V = Vertical distance from the window sill to the bottom of the overhang in feet.
- a = -0.41 for north-facing windows, -1.22 for south-facing windows, and -0.92 for east and west-facing windows.
- b = 0.20 for north-facing windows, 0.66 for south-facing windows, and 0.35 for east and west-facing windows.

*EQUATION 140.3-B VERTICAL FENESTRATION MINIMUM VT*

$$VT \geq 0.11 / WWR$$

WHERE:

WWR = Window Wall Ratio, the ratio of (i) the total window area of the entire building to (ii) the total gross exterior wall area of the entire building. If the WWR is greater than 0.40, then 0.40 shall be used as the value for WWR in EQUATION 140.3-B.

VT = Visible Transmittance of framed window.

6. **Skylights.** Skylights shall:

- A. Have an area no greater than 5 percent of the gross exterior roof area Skylight Roof Ratio (SRR); and  
**EXCEPTION to Section 140.3(a)6A:** Buildings with an atria over 55 feet high shall have a skylight area no greater than 10 percent of the gross exterior roof area.

- B. Have an Area-Weighted Performance Rating U-factor no greater than the applicable value in TABLE 140.3-B, C or D.

**EXCEPTION to Section 140.3(a)6B:** For skylights containing chromogenic type glazing:

- i. the lower-rate labeled U-factor shall be used with automatic controls to modulate the amount of U-factor heat flow into the space in multiple steps in response to daylight levels or solar intensity; and
- ii. chromogenic glazing shall be considered separately from other glazing; and
- iii. area-weighted averaging with other glazing that is not chromogenic shall not be permitted.

- C. Have an area-weighted performance rating Solar Heat Gain Coefficient no greater than the applicable value in TABLE 140.3-B, C or D.

**EXCEPTION to Section 140.3(a)6C:** For skylights containing chromogenic type glazing:

- i. the lower-rated labeled SHGC shall be used with automatic controls to modulate the amount of heat flow into the space in multiple steps in response to daylight levels or solar intensity; and
- ii. chromogenic glazing shall be considered separately from other glazing; and
- iii. area-weighted averaging with other glazing that is not chromogenic shall not be permitted.

- D. Have an Area-Weighted Performance Rating VT no less than the applicable value in TABLE 140.3-B or C; and

**EXCEPTION to Section 140.3(a)6D:** For skylights containing chromogenic type glazing:

- i. the higher-rated labeled VT shall be used with automatic controls to modulate the amount of light transmitted into the space in multiple steps in response to daylight levels or solar intensity and;
- ii. chromogenic glazing shall be considered separately from other glazing; and
- iii. area-weighted averaging with other glazing that is not chromogenic shall not be permitted.

- E. Have a glazing material or diffuser that has a measured haze value greater than 90 percent, determined according to ASTM D1003, or other test method approved by the Energy Commission.

**EXCEPTION to Section 140.3(a)6E:** Skylights designed and installed to exclude direct sunlight entering the occupied space by the use of fixed or automated baffles or the geometry of the skylight and light well.

7. **Exterior doors.** All exterior doors that separate conditioned space from unconditioned space or from ambient air shall have a U-factor not greater than the applicable value in TABLE 140.3-B, C or D. Doors that are more than one-half glass in area are considered Glazed Doors.
8. **Relocatable Public School Buildings.** In complying with Sections 140.3(a)1 to 7 shall meet the following:
  - A. Relocatable public school buildings shall comply with TABLE 140.3-B for a specific Climate Zone when the manufacturer or builder of the relocatable public school building certifies that the building is intended for use only in a specific Climate Zone; or
  - B. Relocatable public school buildings shall comply with TABLE 140.3-D for any Climate Zone when the manufacturer or builder of the relocatable public school building certifies that the building is intended for use in any Climate Zone; and
  - C. The manufacturer or builder of a relocatable public school building shall certify that components of the building comply with requirements of this section by:
    - i. The placement of two (2) metal identification labels on the building, one mechanically fastened and visible from the exterior and the other mechanically fastened to the interior frame above the ceiling at the end of the module, both labels stating (in addition to any other information by the Division of the State Architect or other law) "Complies with Title 24, Part 6 for all Climate Zones"; and
    - ii. Identification of the location of the 2 labels on the plans submitted to the enforcing agency.
9. **Air Barrier.** To meet the requirement of TABLE 140.3-B, all buildings shall have a continuous air barrier that is designed and constructed to control air leakage into, and out of, the building's conditioned space. The air barrier shall be sealed at all joints for its entire length and shall be composed of:
  - A. Materials that have an air permeance not exceeding 0.004 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup>, under a pressure differential of 0.3 in. of water (1.57 psf) (0.02 L/(sec-m<sup>2</sup>) at 75 pa), when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178; or

**EXCEPTION to Section 140.3(a)9A:** Materials in TABLE 140.3-A shall be deemed to comply with Section 140.3(a)9A provided if all joints are sealed and all of the materials are installed as air barriers in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

TABLE 140.3-A MATERIALS DEEMED TO COMPLY WITH SECTION 140.3(a)9A

	MATERIALS AND THICKNESS		MATERIALS AND THICKNESS
1	Plywood – min. 3/8 inches thickness	9	Built up roofing membrane
2	Oriented strand board – min. 3/8 inches thickness	10	Modified bituminous roof membrane
3	Extruded polystyrene insulation board – min. ½ inches thickness	11	Fully adhered single-ply roof membrane
4	Foil-back polyisocyanurate insulation board – min. ½ inches thickness	12	A Portland cement or Portland sand parge, or a gypsum plaster, each with min. 5/8 inches thickness
5	Closed cell spray foam with a minimum density of 2.0 pcf and a min. 2.0 inches thickness	13	Cast-in-place concrete, or precast concrete
6	Open cell spray foam with a density no less than 0.4 pcf and no greater than 1.5 pcf, and a min. 5½ inches thickness	14	Fully grouted concrete block masonry
7	Exterior or interior gypsum board min. 1/2 inches thickness	15	Sheet steel or sheet aluminum
8	Cement board – min. 1/2 inches thickness	---	-----

- B. Assemblies of materials and components that have an average air leakage not exceeding 0.04 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup>, under a pressure differential of 0.3 in. of water (1.57 psf) (0.2 L/m<sup>2</sup> at 75 pa), when tested in accordance with ASTM E2357, ASTM E1677, ASTM E1680, or ASTM E283; or

**EXCEPTION to Section 140.3(a)9B:** The following materials shall be deemed to comply with Section 140.3(a)9B if all joints are sealed and all of the materials are installed as air barriers in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions:

- i. Concrete masonry walls that have at least two coatings of paint or at least two coatings of sealer coating.
  - ii. Concrete masonry walls with integral rigid board insulation.
  - iii. Structurally Insulated Panels.
  - iv. Portland cement or Portland sand parge, or stucco, or a gypsum plaster, each with min. 1/2 inches thickness
- C. The entire building has an air leakage rate not exceeding 0.40 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup> at a pressure differential of 0.3 in of water (1.57 psf) (2.0 L/ m<sup>2</sup> at 75 pa), when the entire building is tested, after completion of construction, in accordance with ASTM E779 or another test method approved by the Commission.

**EXCEPTION to Section 140.3(a)9:** Relocatable Public School Buildings.

**TABLE 140.3-B – PRESCRIPTIVE ENVELOPE CRITERIA FOR NONRESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS (INCLUDING RELOCATABLE PUBLIC SCHOOL BUILDINGS WHERE MANUFACTURER CERTIFIES USE ONLY IN SPECIFIC CLIMATE ZONE; NOT INCLUDING HIGH-RISE RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS AND GUEST ROOMS OF HOTEL/MOTEL BUILDINGS)**

			Climate Zone																	
			1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16		
<b>Envelope</b>	<b>Maximum U-factor</b>	<b>Roofs/ Ceilings</b>	Metal Building	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	
			Wood Framed and Other	0.034	0.034	0.034	0.034	0.034	0.049	0.049	0.049	0.034	0.034	0.034	0.034	0.034	0.034	0.034	0.034	0.034
		<b>Walls</b>	Metal Building	0.113	0.061	0.113	0.061	0.061	0.113	0.113	0.061	0.061	0.061	0.061	0.061	0.061	0.061	0.061	0.057	0.061
			Metal-framed	0.069	0.062	0.082	0.062	0.062	0.069	0.069	0.062	0.062	0.062	0.062	0.062	0.062	0.062	0.062	0.062	0.062
			Mass Light <sup>1</sup>	0.196	0.170	0.278	0.227	0.440	0.440	0.440	0.440	0.440	0.170	0.170	0.170	0.170	0.170	0.170	0.170	0.170
			Mass Heavy <sup>1</sup>	0.253	0.650	0.650	0.650	0.650	0.690	0.690	0.690	0.690	0.650	0.184	0.253	0.211	0.184	0.184	0.184	0.160
			Wood-framed and Other	0.095	0.059	0.110	0.059	0.102	0.110	0.110	0.102	0.059	0.059	0.045	0.059	0.059	0.059	0.059	0.042	0.059
		<b>Floors/ Soffits</b>	Raised Mass	0.092	0.092	0.269	0.269	0.269	0.269	0.269	0.269	0.269	0.269	0.092	0.092	0.092	0.092	0.092	0.092	0.058
	Other		0.048	0.039	0.071	0.071	0.071	0.071	0.071	0.071	0.071	0.071	0.039	0.071	0.071	0.039	0.039	0.039	0.039	
	<b>Roofing Products</b>	<b>Low-sloped</b>	Aged Solar Reflectance	0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63	0.63	
			Thermal Emittance	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	
		<b>Steep-Sloped</b>	Aged Solar Reflectance	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	
			Thermal Emittance	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	
	<b>Air Barrier</b>			NR	REQ															
	<b>Exterior Doors, Maximum U-factor</b>		Non-Swinging	0.50	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	0.50	
			Swinging	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	

**CONTINUED: TABLE 140.3-B – PRESCRIPTIVE ENVELOPE CRITERIA FOR NONRESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS (INCLUDING RELOCATABLE PUBLIC SCHOOL BUILDINGS WHERE MANUFACTURER CERTIFIES USE ONLY IN SPECIFIC CLIMATE ZONE; NOT INCLUDING HIGH-RISE RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS AND GUEST ROOMS OF HOTEL/MOTEL BUILDINGS)**

Envelope	Fenestration	All Climate Zones				
			Fixed Window	Operable Window	Curtainwall or Storefront	Glazed Doors <sup>2</sup>
Vertical	Area-Weighted Performance Rating	Max U-factor	0.36	0.46	0.41	0.45
		Max RSHGC	0.25	0.22	0.26	0.23
	Area-Weighted Performance Rating	Min VT	0.42	0.32	0.46	0.17
	Maximum WWR%	40%				
Skylights	Area-Weighted Performance Rating		Glass, Curb Mounted	Glass, Deck Mounted	Plastic, Curb Mounted	Tubular Daylighting Devices (TDDs)
		Max U-factor	0.58	0.46	0.88	0.88
	Max SHGC	0.25	0.25	NR	NR	
	Area-Weighted Performance Rating	Min VT (Min VT <sub>annual</sub> for TDDs)	0.49	0.49	0.64	0.38
Maximum SRR%	5%					

TABLE 140.3-C – PRESCRIPTIVE ENVELOPE CRITERIA FOR HIGH-RISE RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS AND GUEST ROOMS OF HOTEL/MOTEL BUILDINGS

			Climate Zone																	
			1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16		
<b>Envelope</b>	<b>Maximum U-factor</b>	<b>Roofs/ Ceilings</b>	Metal Building	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	0.041	
			Wood Framed and Other	0.028	0.028	0.034	0.028	0.034	0.034	0.039	0.028	0.028	0.028	0.028	0.028	0.028	0.028	0.028	0.028	0.028
		<b>Walls</b>	Metal Building	0.061	0.061	0.061	0.061	0.061	0.061	0.061	0.061	0.061	0.061	0.057	0.057	0.057	0.057	0.057	0.057	0.057
			Metal-framed	0.069	0.069	0.069	0.069	0.069	0.069	0.105	0.069	0.069	0.069	0.069	0.069	0.069	0.069	0.069	0.048	0.069
			Mass, Light <sup>1</sup>	0.170	0.170	0.170	0.170	0.170	0.227	0.227	0.227	0.196	0.170	0.170	0.170	0.170	0.170	0.170	0.170	0.170
			Mass, Heavy <sup>1</sup>	0.160	0.160	0.160	0.184	0.211	0.690	0.690	0.690	0.690	0.690	0.184	0.253	0.211	0.184	0.184	0.184	0.160
			Wood-framed and Other	0.059	0.059	0.059	0.059	0.059	0.059	0.059	0.059	0.059	0.059	0.042	0.059	0.059	0.042	0.042	0.042	0.042
		<b>Floors/ Soffits</b>	Raised Mass <sup>1</sup>	0.045	0.045	0.058	0.058	0.058	0.069	0.092	0.092	0.092	0.069	0.058	0.058	0.058	0.045	0.058	0.037	
	Other		0.034	0.034	0.039	0.039	0.039	0.039	0.071	0.039	0.039	0.039	0.039	0.039	0.039	0.034	0.039	0.034		
	<b>Roofing Products</b>	<b>Low-sloped</b>	Aged Solar Reflectance	NR	0.55	0.55	0.55	NR	0.55	0.55	0.55	NR								
			Thermal Emittance	NR	0.75	0.75	0.75	NR	0.75	0.75	0.75	NR								
		<b>Steep-Sloped</b>	Aged Solar Reflectance	NR	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	NR
			Thermal Emittance	NR	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	NR
	<b>Exterior Doors, Maximum U-factor</b>	Non-Swinging	0.50	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	1.45	0.50	
		Swinging	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	0.70	

CONTINUED: TABLE 140.3-C – PRESCRIPTIVE ENVELOPE CRITERIA FOR HIGH-RISE RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS AND GUEST ROOMS OF HOTEL/MOTEL BUILDINGS

Envelope	Fenestration	All Climate Zones					
			Fixed Window	Operable Window	Curtainwall/Storefront	Glazed Doors <sup>2</sup>	
	Vertical	Area-Weighted Performance Rating	Max U-factor	0.36	0.46	0.41	0.45
			Max RSHGC	0.25	0.22	0.26	0.23
		Area-Weighted Performance Rating	Min VT	0.42	0.32	0.46	0.17
		Maximum WWR%	40%				
	Skylights			Glass, Curb Mounted	Glass, Deck Mounted	Plastic, Curb Mounted	
		Area-Weighted Performance Rating	Max U-factor	0.58	0.46	0.88	
			Max SHGC	0.25	0.25	NR	
		Area-Weighted Performance Rating	Min VT	0.49	0.49	0.64	
	Maximum SRR%	5%					
<p>Notes:</p> <p>1. As defined in Section 100.0, light mass walls are walls with a heat capacity of at least 7.0 Btu/ft<sup>2</sup>-oF and less than 15.0 Btu/ft<sup>2</sup>-oF. Heavy mass walls are walls with a heat capacity of at least 15.0 Btu/ft<sup>2</sup>-oF.</p> <p>2. Glazed Doors applies to both site-built and to factory-assembled glazed doors.</p>							

TABLE 140.3-D PRESCRIPTIVE ENVELOPE CRITERIA FOR RELOCATABLE PUBLIC SCHOOL BUILDINGS FOR USE IN ALL CLIMATE ZONES

<b>Roofs/ Ceilings</b>	<b>Metal Buildings</b>			0.041	
	<b>Non-Metal Buildings</b>			0.034	
<b>Walls</b>	<b>Wood frame buildings</b>			0.042	
	<b>Metal frame buildings</b>			0.057	
	<b>Metal buildings</b>			0.057	
	<b>Mass/7.0 ≤ HC</b>			0.170	
	<b>All Other Walls</b>			0.059	
	<b>Floors and Soffits</b>	<b>Floors and Soffits</b>			0.048
<b>Roofing Products</b>	<b>Low-Sloped</b>	Aged Solar Reflectance		0.63	
		Thermal Emittance		0.75	
	<b>Steep-Sloped</b>	Aged Solar Reflectance		0.20	
		Thermal Emittance		0.75	
<b>Fenestration</b>	<b>Windows</b>	Maximum U-factor		0.47	
		Maximum SHGC		0.26	
	<b>Glazed Doors (Site-Built and Factory Assembled)</b>	Maximum U-factor		0.45	
		Maximum SHGC		0.23	
	<b>Skylights</b>	Glass with Curb		Maximum U-factor	0.99
		Glass without Curb			0.57
		Plastic with Curb			0.87
		Glass Type	0-2% SRR	Maximum SHGC	0.46
			2.1-5% SRR		0.36
		Plastic Type	0-2% SRR		0.69
2.1-5% SRR	0.57				
<b>Exterior Doors</b>	<b>Non-Swinging doors</b>	Maximum U-factor		0.50	
	<b>Swinging doors</b>			0.70	

(b) **RESERVED**

(c) **Minimum Daylighting Requirement for Large Enclosed Spaces.** In Climate Zones 2 through 15, conditioned enclosed spaces, and unconditioned enclosed spaces, that are greater than 5,000 ft<sup>2</sup> and that are directly under a roof with ceiling heights greater than 15 feet, shall meet the following requirements:

1. A combined total of at least 75 percent of the floor area, as determined in building floor plan (drawings) view, shall be within one or more of the following:
  - A. Primary Sidelight Daylight Zone in accordance with Section 130.1(d)1B, or
  - B. The total floor area in the space within a horizontal distance of 0.7 times the average ceiling height from the edge of rough opening of skylights.
2. All Skylit Daylit Zones and Primary Sidelit Daylit Zones shall be shown on building plans.
3. General lighting in daylit zones shall be controlled in accordance with Section 130.1(d).
4. The total skylight area is at least 3 percent of the total floor area in the space within a horizontal distance of 0.7 times the average ceiling height from the edge of rough opening of skylights; or the product of the total skylight area and the average skylight visible transmittance is no less than 1.5 percent of the total floor area in the space within a horizontal distance of 0.7 times the average ceiling height from the edge of rough opening of skylights.
5. All skylights shall have a glazing material or diffuser that has a measured haze value greater than 90 percent, tested according to ASTM D1003 (notwithstanding its scope) or another test method approved by the Commission.
6. Skylights for conditioned and unconditioned spaces shall have an area-weighted average Visible Transmittance (VT) no less than the applicable value required by Section 140.3(a)6D.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.3(c):** Auditoriums, churches, movie theaters, museums, and refrigerated warehouses.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.3(c):** In buildings with unfinished interiors, future enclosed spaces for which there are plans to have:

- A. A floor area of less than or equal to 5,000 square feet; or
- B. Ceiling heights of less than or equal to 15 feet. This exception shall not be used for S-1 or S-2 (storage), or for F-1 or F-2 (factory) occupancies.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 140.3(c):** Enclosed spaces having a designed general lighting system with a lighting power density less than 0.5 watts per square foot.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 140.3(c):** Enclosed spaces where it is documented that permanent architectural features of the building, existing structures or natural objects block direct beam sunlight on at least half of the roof over the enclosed space for more than 1500 daytime hours per year between 8 a.m. and 4 p.m.

(d) **Daylighting Design Power Adjustment Factors (PAFs).** To qualify for a Power Adjustment Factor (PAF) as specified in Section 140.6(a)2L, daylighting devices shall meet the following requirements:

1. **Clerestory Fenestration.** To qualify for a PAF, clerestory fenestration shall meet the following requirements:
  - A. Shall be installed on east-, west-, or south-facing facades.
  - B. Shall have a head height that is at least 10 feet above the finished floor.
  - C. Shall have a glazing height that is greater than or equal to 10 percent of the head height.
  - D. If operable shading is installed on the clerestory fenestration, then the clerestory fenestration shading shall be controlled separately from shading serving other vertical fenestration.
2. **Interior and Exterior Horizontal Slats.** To qualify for a PAF, horizontal slats shall meet the following requirements:

- A. Shall be installed adjacent to vertical fenestration on east- or west-facing facades with Window Wall Ratios between 20 and 30 percent, and extend to the entire height of the vertical fenestration.
- B. Exterior horizontal slats shall be level or sloped downwards from fenestration. Interior horizontal slats shall be level or sloped upwards from fenestration.
- C. Shall have a projection factor as specified in Table 140.3-D. The projection factor is calculated using EQUATION 140.3-D.
- D. Shall have a minimum Distance Factor of 0.3. The distance factor is calculated using EQUATION 140.3-D.

**EXCEPTION to Section 140.3(d)2D:** Where it is documented that existing adjacent structures or natural objects within view of the vertical fenestration block direct sunlight onto the vertical fenestration between 8am and 5pm for less than 500 daytime hours per year.

- E. Shall have a minimum Visible Reflectance of 0.50 when tested as specified in ASTM E903.
- F. Shall be opaque.

**EXCEPTION to Section 140.3(d)2F:** Horizontal slats with a Visible Transmittance of 0.03 or less when tested as specified in ASTM E1175.

- G. Shall be permanently mounted and not adjustable.
- H. Shall extend beyond each side of the window jamb by a distance equal to or greater than their horizontal projection.

**EXCEPTION to Section 140.3(d)2H:** Where the slats are located entirely within the vertical fenestration's rough opening or a fin is located at the window jambs and extends vertically the entire height of the window jamb and extends horizontally the entire depth of the projection.

- I. Shall be shown on the plans with the dimensions for the slat projection and slat spacing as specified in EQUATION 140.3-D.
  - J. Shall have a conspicuous factory installed label permanently affixed and prominently located on an attachment point of the device to the building envelope, stating the following: "NOTICE: Removal of this device will require re-submittal of compliance documentation to the enforcement agency responsible for compliance with California Title 24, Part 6".
3. **Interior and Exterior Light Shelves.** To qualify for a PAF, light shelves shall meet the following requirements:
- A. Where there is vertical fenestration area below the light shelf, both interior and exterior light shelves shall be installed.
  - B. Shall be installed adjacent to clerestory fenestration on south-facing facades with Window Wall Ratios greater than 30 percent. The head height of the light shelves shall be no more than one foot below the finished ceiling. The clerestory fenestration shall meet the requirements of Section 140.3(d)1.
  - C. Shall be level or sloped based on their installation. Exterior light shelves shall be level or sloped downwards from fenestration. Interior light shelves shall be level or sloped upwards from fenestration.
  - D. Shall have a projection factor of the applicable value as specified in Table 140.3-D. The light shelf projection factor is calculated using EQUATION 140.3-D.
  - E. Shall have a minimum Distance Factor of 0.3. The distance factor is calculated using EQUATION 140.3-D.
- EXCEPTION to Section 140.3(d)3E:** Where it is documented that existing adjacent structures or natural objects within view of the vertical fenestration block direct sunlight onto the vertical fenestration between 8am and 5pm for less than 750 daytime hours per year.
- F. Shall have a top surface with a minimum Visible Reflectance of 0.50 when tested as specified in ASTM E903.

**EXCEPTION to Section 140.3(d)3F:** Where an exterior light shelf is installed greater than two feet below the clerestory sill.

- G. Shall extend beyond each side of the window jamb by a distance equal to or greater than their horizontal projection.
- H. Shall be shown on the plans with the dimensions for the light shelf projection and light shelf spacing as specified in EQUATION 140.3-D.

*TABLE 140.3-D Daylighting Devices*

Daylighting Device	Orientation of the Vertical Fenestration	Projection Factor
Horizontal Slats	East or West	2.0 to 3.0
Interior Light Shelf	South	1.0 to 2.0
Exterior Light Shelf	South	0.25 to 1.25

*EQUATION 140.3-D PROJECTION AND DISTANCE FACTOR CALCULATION*

Projection Factor = Projection / Spacing

Distance Factor =  $D / (H_{AS} \times \text{Projection Factor})$

**WHERE:**

Projection = The horizontal distance between the base edge and the projected edge of the slat or light shelf.

Spacing = For horizontal slats, the vertical distance between the projected edge of a slat to the base edge of the slat below

For interior light shelves, the vertical distance between the projected edge of the light shelf and head of the clerestory fenestration above it.

For exterior light shelves, the vertical distance between the projected edge of the light shelf and sill of the vertical fenestration below it.

D = Distance between the existing structure or nature object and the fenestration

$H_{AS}$  = Height difference between the top of the existing structure or nature object and the bottom of the fenestration

**NOTE:** The base edge is the edge of a slat or light shelf that is adjacent to the vertical fenestration. The projected edge is the opposite edge from the base edge.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code.  
Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

## SECTION 140.4 – PRESCRIPTIVE REQUIREMENTS FOR SPACE CONDITIONING SYSTEMS

A building complies with this section by being designed with and having constructed and installed a space-conditioning system that meets the applicable requirements of Subsections (a) through (o).

- (a) **Sizing and Equipment Selection.** Mechanical heating and mechanical cooling equipment serving healthcare facilities shall be sized to meet the design heating and cooling loads as calculated according to the subsection (b). Mechanical heating and mechanical cooling equipment serving high-rise residential buildings, hotel/motel buildings and nonresidential buildings other than healthcare facilities, shall be the smallest size, within the available options of the desired equipment line, necessary to meet the design heating and cooling loads of the building, as calculated according to Subsection (b).

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.4(a):** Where it can be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the enforcing agency that oversizing will not increase building TDV energy use.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.4(a):** Standby equipment with controls that allow the standby equipment to operate only when the primary equipment is not operating.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 140.4(a):** Multiple units of the same equipment type, such as multiple chillers and boilers, having combined capacities exceeding the design load, if they have controls that sequence or otherwise optimally control the operation of each unit based on load.

- (b) **Calculations.** In making equipment sizing calculations under Subsection (a), all of the following rules shall apply:
1. **Heating and cooling loads.** Heating and cooling system design loads shall be determined in accordance with the procedures described in subsection A or B below:
    - A. For systems serving high-rise residential buildings, hotel/motel buildings, and nonresidential buildings other than healthcare facilities, the method in the 2017 ASHRAE Handbook, Fundamentals shall be used, or as specified in a method approved by the Commission.
    - B. For system serving healthcare facilities the method in the California Mechanical Code shall be used.
  2. **Indoor design conditions.** Indoor design temperature and humidity conditions for comfort applications shall be determined in accordance with subsection A or B below:
    - A. For systems serving high-rise residential buildings, hotel/motel buildings, and nonresidential buildings other than healthcare facilities, ASHRAE Standard 55 or the 2017 ASHRAE Handbook, Fundamentals Volume, except that winter humidification and summer dehumidification shall not be required.
    - B. For system serving healthcare facilities the method in Section 320.0 of the California Mechanical Code shall be used.
  3. **Outdoor design conditions.** Outdoor design conditions shall be in accordance with subsection A or B below:
    - A. For systems serving high-rise residential buildings, hotel/motel buildings, and nonresidential buildings other than healthcare facilities the design conditions from Reference Joint Appendix JA2 shall be used, which is based on data from the ASHRAE Climatic Data for Region X. Heating design temperatures shall be no lower than the Heating Winter Median of Extremes values. Cooling design temperatures shall be no greater than the 0.5 percent Cooling Dry Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet Bulb values.
    - B. For system serving healthcare facilities the method in Section 320.0 of the California Mechanical Code shall be used.
- EXCEPTION to Section 140.4(b)3:** Cooling design temperatures for cooling towers shall be no greater than the 0.5 percent Cooling Design Wet bulb values.
4. **Ventilation.** Outdoor air ventilation loads shall be calculated using the ventilation rates required in Section 120.1(c)3.

5. **Envelope.** Envelope heating and cooling loads shall be calculated using envelope characteristics, including square footage, thermal conductance, Solar Heat Gain Coefficient or shading coefficient, and air leakage, consistent with the proposed design.
  6. **Lighting.** Lighting heating and cooling loads shall be based on actual design lighting levels or power densities as specified in Section 140.6.
  7. **People.** Occupant density shall be based on the expected occupancy of the building and shall be the same as determined under Section 120.1(c)3A, if used. Sensible and latent heat gains shall be as listed in the 2017 ASHRAE Handbook- Fundamentals, Chapter 18.
  8. **Process loads.** Loads caused by a process shall be based upon actual information on the intended use of the building.
  9. **Miscellaneous equipment.** Equipment loads other than process loads shall be calculated using design data compiled from one or more of the following sources:
    - A. Actual information based on the intended use of the building; or
    - B. Published data from manufacturer's technical publications or from technical societies, such as the ASHRAE Handbook, Applications Volume; or
    - C. Other data based on the designer's experience of expected loads and occupancy patterns.
  10. **Internal heat gains.** Internal heat gains may be ignored for heating load calculations.
  11. **Safety factor.** Calculated design loads based on 140.4(b)1 through 10 may be increased by up to 10 percent to account for unexpected loads or changes in space usage.
  12. **Other loads.** Loads such as warm-up or cool-down shall be calculated from principles based on the thermal capacity of the building and its contents, the degree of setback, and desired recovery time; or may be assumed to be no more than 30 percent for heating and 10 percent for cooling of the steady-state design loads. In addition, the steady-state load may include a safety factor in accordance with Section 140.4(b)11.
- (c) **Fan Systems.** Each fan system having a total fan system motor nameplate horsepower exceeding 5 hp used for space conditioning shall meet the requirements of Items 1, 2, and 3 below. Total fan system power demand equals the sum of the power demand of all fans in the system that are required to operate at design conditions in order to supply air from the heating or cooling source to the conditioned space, and to return it back to the source or to exhaust it to the outdoors.
1. **Fan Power Limitation.** At design conditions each fan system shall not exceed the allowable fan system power of option 1 or 2 as specified in Table 140.4-A

TABLE 140.4 - A Fan Power Limitation

	Limit	Constant Volume	Variable Volume
Option 1: Fan system motor nameplate hp	Allowable motor nameplate hp	$hp \leq cfm_s \times 0.0011$	$hp \leq cfm_s \times 0.0015$
Option 2: Fan system bhp	Allowable fan system bhp	$bhp \leq cfm_s \times 0.00094 + A$	$bhp \leq cfm_s \times 0.0013 + A$
<sup>1</sup> cfm <sub>s</sub> = maximum design supply airflow rate to conditioned spaces served by the system in cubic feet per minute hp = maximum combined motor nameplate horsepower for all fans in the system bhp = maximum combined fan-brake horsepower for all fans in the system A = sum of (PD x cfm <sub>D</sub> /4131) PD = each applicable pressure drop adjustment from Table 140.4 – B, in inches of water cfm <sub>D</sub> = the design airflow through each applicable device from Table 140.4 – B, in cubic feet per minute			

TABLE 140.4-B – Fan Power Limitation Pressure Drop Adjustment

Device	Adjustment Credits
Return or exhaust systems required by code or accreditation standards to be fully ducted, or systems required to maintain air pressure differentials between adjacent rooms	0.5 in. of water
Return and/or exhaust airflow control devices	0.5 in. of water
Exhaust filters, scrubbers, or other exhaust treatment	The pressure drop of device calculated at fan system design condition
Particulate Filtration Credit: MERV 16 and greater and electronically enhanced filters	Pressure drop calculated at 2 x clean filter pressure drop at fan system design condition
Carbon and other gas-phase air cleaners	Clean filter pressure drop at fan system design condition
Biosafety cabinet	Pressure drop of device at fan system design condition
Energy recovery device, other than coil runaround loop	For each airstream [(2.2 x Energy Recovery Effectiveness) – 0.5] in. of water
Coil runaround loop	0.6 in. of water for each airstream
Exhaust systems serving fume hoods	0.35 in. of water

2. **Variable air volume (VAV) systems.**

- A. **Static Pressure Sensor Location.** Static pressure sensors used to control variable air volume fans shall be placed in a position such that the controller set point is no greater than one-third the total design fan static pressure, except for systems with zone reset control complying with Section 140.4(c)2B. If this results in the sensor being located downstream of any major duct split, multiple sensors shall be installed in each major branch with fan capacity controlled to satisfy the sensor furthest below its setpoint; and
- B. **Setpoint Reset.** For systems with direct digital control of individual zone boxes reporting to the central control panel, static pressure setpoints shall be reset based on the zone requiring the most pressure; i.e., the set point is reset lower until one zone damper is nearly wide open.

3. **Fractional HVAC Motors for Fans.** HVAC motors for fans that are less than 1 hp and 1/12 hp or greater shall be electronically-commutated motors or shall have a minimum motor efficiency of 70 percent when rated in accordance with NEMA Standard MG 1-2006 at full load rating conditions. These motors shall also have the means to adjust motor speed for either balancing or remote control. Belt-driven fans may use sheave adjustments for airflow balancing in lieu of a varying motor speed.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.4(c)3:** Motors in fan-coils and terminal units that operate only when providing heating to the space served.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.4(c)3:** Motors in space conditioning equipment certified under Section 110.1 or 110.2.

**EXCEPTION 1 to 140.4(c):** fan system power caused solely by process loads.

**EXCEPTION 2 to 140.4(c):** Systems serving healthcare facilities.

- (d) **Space-conditioning Zone Controls.** Each space-conditioning zone shall have controls designed in accordance with 1 or 2:
1. Each space-conditioning zone shall have controls that prevent:
    - A. Reheating; and

- B. Recooling; and
  - C. Simultaneous provisions of heating and cooling to the same zone, such as mixing or simultaneous supply of air that has been previously mechanically heated and air that has been previously cooled either by cooling equipment or by economizer systems; or
2. Zones served by variable air-volume systems that are designed and controlled to reduce, to a minimum, the volume of reheated, recooled, or mixed air are allowed only if the controls meet all of the following requirements:
- A. For each zone with direct digital controls (DDC):
    - i. The volume of primary air that is reheated, recooled or mixed air supply shall not exceed the larger of:
      - a. 50 percent of the peak primary airflow; or
      - b. The design zone outdoor airflow rate as specified by Section 120.1(c)3.
    - ii. The volume of primary air in the deadband shall not exceed the larger of:
      - a. 20 percent of the peak primary airflow; or
      - b. The design zone outdoor airflow rate as specified by Section 120.1(c)3.
    - iii. The first stage of heating consists of modulating the zone supply air temperature setpoint up to a maximum setpoint no higher than 95°F while the airflow is maintained at the dead band flow rate.
    - iv. The second stage of heating consists of modulating the airflow rate from the dead band flow rate up to the heating maximum flow rate.
  - B. For each zone without DDC, the volume of primary air that is reheated, re-cooled, or mixed air supply shall not exceed the larger of the following:
    - i. 30 percent of the peak primary airflow; or
    - ii. The design zone outdoor airflow rate as specified by Section 120.1(c)3.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.4(d):** Zones with special pressurization relationships or cross-contamination control needs.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.4(d):** Zones served by space-conditioning systems in which at least 75 percent of the energy for reheating, or providing warm air in mixing systems, is provided from a site-recovered or site-solar energy source.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 140.4(d):** Zones in which specific humidity levels are required to satisfy exempt process loads. Computer rooms or other spaces where the only process load is from IT equipment may not use this exception.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 140.4(d):** Zones with a peak supply-air quantity of 300 cfm or less.

**EXCEPTION 5 to Section 140.4(d):** Systems serving healthcare facilities.

(e) **Economizers.**

- 1. Each cooling air handler that has a design total mechanical cooling capacity over 54,000 Btu/hr, or chilled-water cooling systems without a fan or that use induced airflow that has a cooling capacity greater than the systems listed in Table 140.4-C, shall include either:
  - A. An air economizer capable of modulating outside-air and return-air dampers to supply 100 percent of the design supply air quantity as outside-air; or
  - B. A water economizer capable of providing 100 percent of the expected system cooling load, at outside air temperatures of 50°F dry-bulb and 45°F wet-bulb and below.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.4(e)1:** Where special outside air filtration and treatment, for the reduction and treatment of unusual outdoor contaminants, makes compliance infeasible.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.4(e)1:** Where the use of outdoor air for cooling will affect other systems, such as humidification, dehumidification, or supermarket refrigeration systems, so as to increase overall building TDV energy use.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 140.4(e)1:** Systems serving high-rise residential living quarters and hotel/motel guest rooms.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 140.4(e)1:** Where comfort cooling systems have the cooling efficiency that meets or exceeds the cooling efficiency improvement requirements in TABLE 140.4-D.

**EXCEPTION 5 to Section 140.4(e)1:** Fan systems primarily serving computer rooms. See Section 140.9(a) for computer room economizer requirements.

**EXCEPTION 6 to Section 140.4(e)1:** Systems design to operate at 100 percent outside air at all times.

TABLE 140.4-C CHILLED WATER SYSTEM COOLING CAPACITY

Climate Zones	Total Building Chilled Water System Capacity, Minus Capacity of the Cooling units with Air Economizers	
	Building Water-Cooled Chilled Water System	Air-Cooled Chilled Water Systems or District Chilled Water Systems
15	≥ 960,000 Btu/h (280 kW)	≥ 1,250,000 Btu/h (365 kW)
1-14	≥720,000 Btu/h (210 kW)	≥940,000 Btu/h (275 kW)
16	≥1,320,000 Btu/h (385 kW)	≥1,720,000 Bu/h (505 kW)

TABLE 140.4-D ECONOMIZER TRADE-OFF TABLE FOR COOLING SYSTEMS

Climate Zone	Efficiency Improvement <sup>a</sup>
1	70%
2	65%
3	65%
4	65%
5	70%
6	30%
7	30%
8	30%
9	30%
10	30%
11	30%
12	30%
13	30%
14	30%
15	30%
16	70%

<sup>a</sup> If a unit is rated with an IPLV, IEER or SEER, then to eliminate the required air or water economizer, the applicable minimum cooling efficiency of the HVAC unit must be increased by the percentage shown. If the HVAC unit is only rated with a full load metric, such as EER or COP cooling, then that metric must be increased by the percentage shown.

2. If an economizer is required by Section 140.4(e)1, and an air economizer is used to meet the requirement, then it shall be:
  - A. Designed and equipped with controls so that economizer operation does not increase the building heating energy use during normal operation; and

**EXCEPTION to Section 140.4(e)2A:** Systems that provide 75 percent of the annual energy used for mechanical heating from site-recovered energy or a site-solar energy source.

- B. Capable of providing partial cooling even when additional mechanical cooling is required to meet the remainder of the cooling load.
- C. Designed and equipped with a device type and high limit shut off complying with TABLE 140.4-E.

**TABLE 140.4-E AIR ECONOMIZER HIGH LIMIT SHUT OFF CONTROL REQUIREMENTS**

Device Type <sup>a</sup>	Climate Zones	Required High Limit (Economizer Off When):	
		Equation <sup>b</sup>	Description
Fixed Dry Bulb	1, 3, 5, 11-16	$T_{OA} > 75^{\circ}\text{F}$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds 75°F
	2, 4, 10	$T_{OA} > 73^{\circ}\text{F}$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds 73°F
	6, 8, 9	$T_{OA} > 71^{\circ}\text{F}$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds 71°F
	7	$T_{OA} > 69^{\circ}\text{F}$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds 69°F
Differential Dry Bulb	1, 3, 5, 11-16	$T_{OA} > T_{RA}^{\circ}\text{F}$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds return air temperature
	2, 4, 10	$T_{OA} > T_{RA} - 2^{\circ}\text{F}$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds return air temperature minus 2°F
	6, 8, 9	$T_{OA} > T_{RA} - 4^{\circ}\text{F}$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds return air temperature minus 4°F
	7	$T_{OA} > T_{RA} - 6^{\circ}\text{F}$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds return air temperature minus 6°F
Fixed Enthalpy <sup>c</sup> + Fixed Drybulb	All	$h_{OA} > 28 \text{ Btu/lb}^{\circ}$ or $T_{OA} > 75^{\circ}\text{F}$	Outdoor air enthalpy exceeds 28 Btu/lb of dry air <sup>c</sup> or Outdoor air temperature exceeds 75°F

<sup>a</sup> Only the high limit control devices listed are allowed to be used and at the setpoints listed. Others such as Dew Point, Fixed Enthalpy, Electronic Enthalpy, and Differential Enthalpy Controls, may not be used in any Climate Zone for compliance with Section 140.4(e)1 unless approval for use is provided by the Energy Commission Executive Director.

<sup>b</sup> Devices with selectable (rather than adjustable) setpoints shall be capable of being set to within 2°F and 2 Btu/lb of the setpoint listed.

<sup>c</sup> At altitudes substantially different than sea level, the Fixed Enthalpy limit value shall be set to the enthalpy value at 75°F and 50% relative humidity. As an example, at approximately 6,000 foot elevation, the fixed enthalpy limit is approximately 30.7 Btu/lb.

D. The air economizer and all air dampers shall have the following features:

- i. **Warranty.** 5-year Manufacturer warranty of economizer assembly.
- ii. **Damper reliability testing.** Suppliers of economizers shall certify that the economizer assembly, including but not limited to outdoor air damper, return air damper, drive linkage, and actuator, have been tested and are able to open and close against the rated airflow and pressure of the system for 60,000 damper opening and closing cycles.
- iii. **Damper leakage.** Economizer outdoor air and return air dampers shall have a maximum leakage rate of 10 cfm/sf at 250 Pascals (1.0 in. of water) when tested in accordance with AMCA Standard 500-D. The economizer outside air and return air damper leakage rates shall be certified to the Energy Commission in accordance with Section 110.0.
- iv. **Adjustable setpoint.** If the high-limit control is fixed dry-bulb or fixed enthalpy + fixed dry-bulb then the control shall have an adjustable setpoint.
- v. **Sensor accuracy.** Outdoor air, return air, mixed air, and supply air sensors shall be calibrated within the following accuracies.

1. Drybulb and wetbulb temperatures accurate to  $\pm 2^{\circ}\text{F}$  over the range of  $40^{\circ}\text{F}$  to  $80^{\circ}\text{F}$ ;
  2. Enthalpy accurate to  $\pm 3$  Btu/lb over the range of 20 Btu/lb to 36 Btu/lb;
  3. Relative humidity (RH) accurate to  $\pm 5$  percent over the range of 20 percent to 80 percent RH;
- vi. **Sensor calibration data.** Data used for control of the economizer shall be plotted on a sensor performance curve.
  - vii. **Sensor high limit control.** Sensors used for the high limit control shall be located to prevent false readings, including but not limited to being properly shielded from direct sunlight.
  - viii. **Relief air system.** Relief air systems shall be capable of providing 100 percent outside air without over-pressurizing the building.
- E. The space conditioning system shall include the following:
- A. Unit controls shall have mechanical capacity controls interlocked with economizer controls such that the economizer is at 100 percent open position when mechanical cooling is on and does not begin to close until the leaving air temperature is less than  $45^{\circ}\text{F}$ .
  - B. Direct Expansion (DX) units greater than 65,000 Btu/hr that control the capacity of the mechanical cooling directly based on occupied space temperature shall have a minimum of 2 stages of mechanical cooling capacity.
  - C. DX units not within the scope of Section 140.4(e)2E,B shall (i) comply with the requirements in TABLE 140.4-F, and (ii) shall have controls that do not false load the mechanical cooling system by limiting or disabling the economizer or by any other means except at the lowest stage of mechanical cooling capacity.

**TABLE 140.4-F DIRECT EXPANSION (DX) UNIT REQUIREMENTS  
FOR COOLING STAGES AND COMPRESSOR DISPLACEMENT**

Cooling Capacity	Minimum Number of Mechanical Cooling Stages	Minimum Compressor Displacement
$\geq 65,000$ Btu/h and $< 240,000$ Btu/h	3 stages	$\leq 35\%$ full load
$\geq 240,000$ Btu/h	4 stages	$\leq 25\%$ full load

3. Systems that include a water economizer to meet Section 140.4(e)1 shall include the following:
    - A. Maximum pressure drop. Precooling coils and water-to-water heat exchangers used as part of a water economizer shall either have a waterside pressure drop of less than 15 feet of water, or a secondary loop shall be installed so that the coil or heat exchanger pressure drop is not contributing to pressure drop when the system is in the normal cooling (non-economizer) mode.
    - B. Economizer systems shall be integrated with the mechanical cooling system so that they are capable of providing partial cooling even when additional mechanical cooling is required to meet the remainder of the cooling load. Controls shall not false load the mechanical cooling system by limiting or disabling the economizer or by any other means, such as hot gas bypass, except at the lowest stage of mechanical cooling.
- (f) **Supply Air Temperature Reset Controls.** Space-conditioning systems supplying heated or cooled air to multiple zones shall include controls that automatically reset supply-air temperatures. Air distribution systems serving zones that are likely to have constant loads shall be designed for the air flows resulting from the fully reset supply air temperature. Supply air temperature reset controls shall be:
1. In response to representative building loads or to outdoor air temperature; and
  2. At least 25 percent of the difference between the design supply-air temperature and the design room air temperature.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.4(f):** Systems that meet the requirements of Section 140.4(d)1, without using Exception 1 to that section.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.4(f):** Where supply-air temperature reset would increase overall building energy use.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 140.4(f):** Systems supplying zones in which specific humidity levels are required to satisfy process loads. Computer Rooms or other spaces with only IT equipment may not use this exception.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 140.4(f):** Systems serving healthcare facilities.

- (g) **Electric Resistance Heating.** Electric resistance heating systems shall not be used for space heating.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.4(g):** Where an electric-resistance heating system supplements a heating system in which at least 60 percent of the annual energy requirement is supplied by site-solar or recovered energy.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.4(g):** Where an electric-resistance heating system supplements a heat pump heating system, and the heating capacity of the heat pump is more than 75 percent of the design heating load calculated in accordance with Section 140.4(a) at the design outdoor temperature specified in Section 140.4(b)4.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 140.4(g):** Where the total capacity of all electric-resistance heating systems serving the entire building is less than 10 percent of the total design output capacity of all heating equipment serving the entire building.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 140.4(g):** Where the total capacity of all electric-resistance heating systems serving the entire building, excluding those allowed under Exception 2, is no more than 3 kW.

**EXCEPTION 5 to Section 140.4(g):** Where an electric resistance heating system serves an entire building that is not a high-rise residential or hotel/motel building; and has a conditioned floor area no greater than 5,000 square feet; and has no mechanical cooling; and is in an area where natural gas is not currently available.

**EXCEPTION 6 to Section 140.4(g):** heating systems serving as emergency backup to gas heating equipment.

- (h) **Heat Rejection Systems.** Heat rejection equipment used in comfort cooling systems such as air-cooled condensers, open cooling towers, closed-circuit cooling towers, and evaporative condensers shall include the following:

1. **Fan Speed Control.** Each fan powered by a motor of 7.5 hp (5.6 kW) or larger shall have the capability to operate that fan at 2/3 of full speed or less, and shall have controls that automatically change the fan speed to control the leaving fluid temperature or condensing temperature or pressure of the heat rejection device.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.4(h)1:** Heat rejection devices included as an integral part of the equipment listed in TABLE 110.2-A through TABLE 110.2-I.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.4(h)1:** Condenser fans serving multiple refrigerant circuits.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 140.4(h)1:** Condenser fans serving flooded condensers.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 140.4(h)1:** Up to one third of the fans on a condenser or tower with multiple fans where the lead fans comply with the speed control requirement.

2. **Tower Flow Turndown.** Open cooling towers configured with multiple condenser water pumps shall be designed so that all cells can be run in parallel with the larger of:
  - A. The flow that is produced by the smallest pump; or
  - B. 50 percent of the design flow for the cell.

3. **Limitation on Centrifugal Fan Cooling Towers.** Open cooling towers with a combined rated capacity of 900 gpm and greater at 95°F condenser water return, 85°F condenser water supply, and 75°F outdoor wet-bulb temperature, shall use propeller fans and shall not use centrifugal fans.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.4(h)3:** Cooling towers that are ducted (inlet or discharge) or have an external sound trap that requires external static pressure capability.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.4(h)3:** Cooling towers that meet the energy efficiency requirement for propeller fan towers in Section 110.2, TABLE 110.2-G.

4. **Multiple Cell Heat Rejection Equipment.** Multiple cell heat rejection equipment with variable speed fan drives shall:
  - A. Operate the maximum number of fans allowed that comply with the manufacturer's requirements for all system components, and
  - B. Control all operating fans to the same speed. Minimum fan speed shall comply with the minimum allowable speed of the fan drive as specified by the manufacturer's recommendation. Staging of fans is allowed once the fans are at their minimum operating speed.
5. **Cooling tower efficiency.** Axial fan, open-circuit cooling towers serving condenser water loops for chilled water plants with a total of 900 gpm or greater, shall have a rated efficiency of no less than 60 gpm/hp when rated in accordance with the conditions as listed in Table 110.2-G.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.4(h)5:** Replacement of existing cooling towers that are inside an existing building or on an existing roof.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.4(h)5:** Cooling towers serving buildings in Climate Zone 1 or 16.

- (i) **Minimum Chiller Efficiency.** Chillers shall meet or exceed Path B from TABLE 110.2-D

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.4(i):** Chillers with electrical service > 600V.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.4(i):** Chillers attached to a heat recovery system with a design heat recovery capacity > 40 percent of the design chiller cooling capacity.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 140.4(i):** Chillers used to charge thermal energy storage systems where the charging temperature is < 40 °F.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 140.4(i):** In buildings with more than 3 chillers, only 3 chillers are required to meet the Path B efficiencies.

- (j) **Limitation of Air-Cooled Chillers.** Chilled water plants shall not have more than 300 tons provided by air-cooled chillers.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.4(j):** Where the water quality at the building site fails to meet manufacturer's specifications for the use of water-cooled chillers.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.4(j):** Chillers that are used to charge a thermal energy storage system with a design temperature of less than 40 degrees F (4 degrees C).

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 140.4(j):** Systems serving healthcare facilities.

- (k) **Hydronic System Measures**

1. **Hydronic Variable Flow Systems.** HVAC chilled and hot water pumping shall be designed for variable fluid flow and shall be capable of reducing pump flow rates to no more than the larger of: a) 50 percent or less of the design flow rate; or b) the minimum flow required by the equipment manufacturer for the proper operation of equipment served by the system.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.4(k)1:** Systems that include no more than three control valves.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.4(k)1:** Systems having a total pump system power less than or equal to 1.5 hp.

2. **Chiller Isolation.** When a chilled water system includes more than one chiller, provisions shall be made so that flow through any chiller is automatically shut off when that chiller is shut off while still maintaining flow through other operating chiller(s). Chillers that are piped in series for the purpose of increased temperature differential shall be considered as one chiller.
3. **Boiler Isolation.** When a hot water plant includes more than one boiler, provisions shall be made so that flow through any boiler is automatically shut off when that boiler is shut off while still maintaining flow through other operating boiler(s).
4. **Chilled and Hot Water Temperature Reset Controls.** Systems with a design capacity exceeding 500,000 Btu/hr supplying chilled or heated water shall include controls that automatically reset supply water temperatures as a function of representative building loads or outside air temperature.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.4(k)4:** Hydronic systems that use variable flow to reduce pumping energy in accordance with Section 140.4(k)1.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.4(k)4:** Systems serving healthcare facilities.

5. **Water-Cooled Air Conditioner and Hydronic Heat Pump Systems.** Water circulation systems serving water-cooled air conditioners, hydronic heat pumps, or both, that have total pump system power exceeding 5 hp shall have flow controls that meet the requirements of Section 140.4(k)6. Each such air conditioner or heat pump shall have a two-position automatic valve interlocked to shut off water flow when the compressor is off.
6. **Variable Flow Controls.**
  - A. **Variable Speed Drives.** Individual pumps serving variable flow systems and having a motor horsepower exceeding 5 hp shall have controls or devices (such as variable speed control) that will result in pump motor demand of no more than 30 percent of design wattage at 50 percent of design water flow. The pumps shall be controlled as a function of required differential pressure.
  - B. **Pressure Sensor Location and Setpoint.**
    - i. For systems without direct digital control of individual coils reporting to the central control panel, differential pressure shall be measured at the most remote heat exchanger or the heat exchanger requiring the greatest differential pressure.
    - ii. For systems with direct digital control of individual coils with a central control panel, the static pressure set point shall be reset based on the valve requiring the most pressure, and the setpoint shall be no less than 80 percent open. Pressure sensors may be mounted anywhere.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.4(k)6:** Heating hot water systems.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.4(k)6:** Condenser water systems serving only water-cooled chillers.

7. **Hydronic Heat Pump (WLHP) Controls.** Hydronic heat pumps connected to a common heat pump water loop with central devices for heat rejection and heat addition shall have controls that are capable of providing a heat pump water supply temperature deadband of at least 20°F between initiation of heat rejection and heat addition by the central devices.

**EXCEPTION to Section 140.4(k)7:** Where a system loop temperature optimization controller is used to determine the most efficient operating temperature based on real-time conditions of demand and capacity, dead bands of less than 20°F shall be allowed.

- (l) **Air Distribution System Duct Leakage Sealing.** Duct systems shall be sealed in accordance with 1 or 2 below:
  1. Systems serving high-rise residential buildings, hotel/motel buildings and nonresidential buildings other than healthcare facilities, the duct system shall be sealed to a leakage rate not to exceed 6 percent of the nominal air handler airflow rate as confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing, in accordance with the applicable procedures in Reference Nonresidential Appendices NA1 and NA2 if the criteria in Subsections A, B and C below are met:
    - A. The duct system provides conditioned air to an occupiable space for a constant volume, single zone, space-conditioning system; and
    - B. The space conditioning system serves less than 5,000 square feet of conditioned floor area; and
    - C. The combined surface area of the ducts located in the following spaces is more than 25 percent of the total surface area of the entire duct system:
      - i. Outdoors; or
      - ii. In a space directly under a roof that
        - a. Has a U-factor greater than the U-factor of the ceiling, or if the roof does not meet the requirements of Section 140.3(a)1B, or
        - b. Has fixed vents or openings to the outside or unconditioned spaces; or
      - iii. In an unconditioned crawlspace; or

- iv. In other unconditioned spaces.
  - 2. Duct systems serving healthcare facilities shall be sealed in accordance with the California Mechanical Code.
- (m) **Fan Control.** Each cooling system listed in TABLE 140.4-G shall be designed to vary the indoor fan airflow as a function of load and shall comply with the following requirements:
1. DX and chilled water cooling systems that control the capacity of the mechanical cooling directly based on occupied space temperature shall (i) have a minimum of 2 stages of fan control with no more than 66 percent speed when operating on stage 1; and (ii) draw no more than 40 percent of the fan power at full fan speed, when operating at 66 percent speed.
  2. All other systems, including but not limited to DX cooling systems and chilled water systems that control the space temperature by modulating the airflow to the space, shall have proportional fan control such that at 50 percent air flow the power draw is no more than 30 percent of the fan power at full fan speed.
  3. Systems that include an air side economizer to meet 140.4(e)1 shall have a minimum of two speeds of fan control during economizer operation.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.4(m):** Modulating fan control is not required for chilled water systems with all fan motors <1 HP, or for evaporative systems with all fan motors < 1 HP, if the systems are not used to provide ventilation air and all indoor fans cycle with the load.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.0(m):** Systems serving healthcare facilities.

TABLE 140.4-G FAN CONTROL SYSTEMS

Cooling System Type	Fan Motor Size	Cooling Capacity
DX Cooling	any	≥ 65,000 Btu/hr
Chilled Water and Evaporative	≥ 1/4 HP	any

- (n) **Mechanical System Shut-off.** Any directly conditioned space with operable wall or roof openings to the outdoors shall be provided with interlock controls that disable or reset the temperature setpoint to 55°F for mechanical heating and disable or reset the temperature setpoint to 90°F for mechanical cooling to that space when any such opening is open for more than 5 minutes.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.4(n):** Interlocks are not required on doors with automatic closing devices.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.4(n):** Any space without a thermostatic control (thermostat or a space temperature sensor used to control heating or cooling to the space).

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 140.4(n):** Healthcare facilities.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 140.0(n):** High-rise residential dwelling units.

- (o) **Exhaust System Transfer Air.** Conditioned supply air delivered to any space with mechanical exhaust shall not exceed the greater of:
1. The supply flow required to meet the space heating or cooling load; or
  2. The ventilation rate required by the authority having jurisdiction, the facility Environmental Health and Safety Department, or by Section 120.1(c)3; or
  3. The mechanical exhaust flow minus the available transfer air. Available transfer air shall be from another conditioned space or return air plenums on the same floor and same smoke or fire compartment, and that at their closest point are within 15 feet of each other.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.4(o):** Biosafety level classified laboratories 3 or higher.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.4(o):** Vivarium spaces.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 140.4(o):** Spaces that are required by applicable codes and standards to be maintained at a positive pressure differential relative to adjacent spaces.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 140.4(o):** Spaces where the highest amount of transfer air that could be used for exhaust makeup may exceed the available transfer airflow rate and where the spaces have a required negative pressure relationship.

**EXCEPTION 5 to Section 140.4(o):** Healthcare facilities.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

**SECTION 140.5 – PRESCRIPTIVE REQUIREMENTS FOR SERVICE WATER HEATING SYSTEMS**

- (a) **Nonresidential Occupancies.** A service water heating system installed in a nonresidential building complies with this section if it complies with the applicable requirements of Sections 110.1, 110.3 and 120.3.
- (b) **High-Rise Residential and Hotel/Motel Occupancies.** A service water heating system installed in a high-rise residential or hotel/motel building complies with this section if it meets the requirements of Section 150.1(c)8.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

## SECTION 140.6 – PRESCRIPTIVE REQUIREMENTS FOR INDOOR LIGHTING

A building complies with this section if:

- i. The Calculation of Adjusted Indoor Lighting Power of all proposed building areas combined, calculated under Subsection (a) is no greater than the Calculation of Allowed Indoor Lighting Power, Specific Methodologies calculated under Subsection (c); and
- ii. The Calculation of Allowed Indoor Lighting Power, General Rules comply with Subsection (b); and
- iii. General lighting complies with the Automatic Daylighting Controls in Secondary Daylit Zone requirements in Subsection (d).

The prescriptive limits on indoor lighting power are the smaller of the Actual and Allowed Indoor Lighting Power values determined in accordance with item i.

(a) **Calculation of Adjusted Indoor Lighting Power.** The adjusted indoor Lighting Power of all proposed building areas is the total watts of all planned permanent and portable lighting systems in all areas of the proposed building; subject to the applicable adjustments under Subdivisions 1 through 4 of this subsection.

1. **Two interlocked lighting systems:** No more than two lighting systems may be used for an area, and if there are two they must be interlocked. Where there are two interlocked lighting systems, the watts of the lower wattage system may be excluded from the Adjusted Indoor Lighting Power if:
  - A. An Installation Certificate detailing compliance with Section 140.6(a)1 is submitted in accordance with Section 10-103 and Section 130.4; and
  - B. The area or areas served by the interlocking systems is an auditorium, a convention center, a conference room, a multipurpose room, or a theater; and
  - C. The two lighting systems are interlocked with a Nonprogrammable Double-Throw Switch to prevent simultaneous operation of both systems.

For compliance with Part 6 a Nonprogrammable Double-Throw Switch is an electrical switch commonly called a "single pole double throw" or "three-way" switch that is wired as a selector switch allowing one of two loads to be enabled. It can be a line voltage switch or a low voltage switch selecting between two relays. It cannot be overridden or changed in any manner that would permit both loads to operate simultaneously.

2. **Reduction of wattage through controls.** In calculating Adjusted Indoor Lighting Power, the installed watts of a luminaire providing general lighting in an area listed in TABLE 140.6-A may be reduced by the product of (i) the number of watts controlled as described in TABLE 140.6-A, times (ii) the applicable Power Adjustment Factor (PAF), if all of the following conditions are met:
  - A. An Installation Certificate is submitted in accordance with Section 130.4(b); and
  - B. Luminaires and controls meet the applicable requirements of Section 110.9, and Sections 130.0 through 130.5; and
  - C. The controlled lighting is permanently installed general lighting systems and the controls are permanently installed nonresidential-rated lighting controls.

When used for determining PAFs for general lighting in offices, furniture mounted luminaires that comply with all of the following conditions shall qualify as permanently installed general lighting systems:

- i. The furniture mounted luminaires shall be permanently installed no later than the time of building permit inspection; and
- ii. The furniture mounted luminaires shall be permanently hardwired; and
- iii. The furniture mounted lighting system shall be designed to provide indirect general lighting; and

- iv. Before multiplying the installed watts of the furniture mounted luminaire by the applicable PAF, 0.3 watts per square foot of the area illuminated by the furniture mounted luminaires shall be subtracted from installed watts of the furniture mounted luminaires; and
  - v. The lighting control for the furniture mounted luminaire complies with all other applicable requirements in Section 140.6(a)2.
- D. At least 50 percent of the light output of the controlled luminaire is within the applicable area listed in TABLE 140.6-A. Luminaires on lighting tracks shall be within the applicable area in order to qualify for a PAF.
- E. Only one PAF from TABLE 140.6-A may be used for each qualifying luminaire. PAFs shall not be added together unless allowed in TABLE 140.6-A.
- F. Only lighting wattage directly controlled in accordance with Section 140.6(a)2 shall be used to reduce the installed watts as allowed by Section 140.6(a)2 for calculating the Adjusted Indoor Lighting Power. If only a portion of the wattage in a luminaire is controlled in accordance to Section 140.6(a)2, then only that portion of controlled wattage may be reduced in calculating Adjusted Indoor Lighting Power.
- G. Lighting controls used to qualify for a PAF shall be designed and installed in addition to manual, multilevel, and automatic lighting controls required in Section 130.1, and in addition to any other lighting controls required by any provision of Part 6. PAFs shall not be available for lighting controls required by Part 6.
- H. To qualify for the PAF for daylight dimming plus OFF control, the daylight control and controlled luminaires shall comply with Section 130.1(d), 130.4(a)3 and 130.4(a)7, and shall additionally turn lights completely OFF when the daylight available in the daylit zone is greater than 150 percent of the illuminance received from the general lighting system at full power. The PAF shall apply only to the luminaires in the primary sidelit daylit zone and the skylit daylit zone.
- I. To qualify for the PAF for an occupant sensing control controlling the general lighting in large open plan office areas above workstations, in accordance with TABLE 140.6-A, the following requirements shall be met:
- i. The open plan office area shall be greater than 250 square feet; and
  - ii. This PAF shall be available only in office areas which contain workstations; and
  - iii. Controlled luminaires shall only be those that provide general lighting directly above the controlled area, or furniture mounted luminaires that comply with Section 140.6(a)2 and provide general lighting directly above the controlled area; and
  - iv. Qualifying luminaires shall be controlled by occupant sensing controls that meet all of the following requirements, as applicable:
    - a. Infrared sensors shall be equipped by the manufacturer, or fitted in the field by the installer, with lenses or shrouds to prevent them from being triggered by movement outside of the controlled area.
    - b. Ultrasonic sensors shall be tuned to reduce their sensitivity to prevent them from being triggered by movements outside of the controlled area.
    - c. All other sensors shall be installed and adjusted as necessary to prevent them from being triggered by movements outside of the controlled area.
- J. To qualify for the PAF for an Institutional Tuning in TABLE 140.6-A, the tuned lighting system shall comply with all of the following requirements:
- i. The lighting controls shall limit the maximum output or maximum power draw of the controlled lighting to 85 percent or less of full light output or full power draw; and
  - ii. The means of setting the limit is accessible only to authorized personnel; and
  - iii. The setting of the limit is verified by the acceptance test required by Section 130.4(a)7; and
  - iv. The construction documents specify which lighting systems shall have their maximum light output or maximum power draw set to no greater than 85% of full light output or full power draw.

- K. To qualify for the PAF for a Demand Responsive Control in TABLE 140.6-A, a Demand Responsive Control shall meet all of the following requirements:
    - i. The building shall be 10,000 square feet or smaller; and
    - ii. The controlled lighting shall be capable of being automatically reduced in response to a demand response signal; and
    - iii. Lighting shall be reduced in a manner consistent with uniform level of illumination requirements in TABLE 130.1-A; and
    - iv. Spaces that are non-habitable shall not be used to comply with this requirement, and spaces with a lighting power density of less than 0.5 watts per square foot shall not be counted toward the building's total lighting power.
  - L. To qualify for the PAFs for clerestory fenestration, horizontal slats, or light shelves in TABLE 140.6-A, the daylighting design shall meet the requirements in Section 140.3(d). The PAFs shall only apply to lighting in a primary or secondary sidelit daylit zone where continuous dimming daylighting controls meeting the requirements of Section 130.1(d) are installed.
3. **Lighting wattage excluded.** The watts of the following indoor lighting applications may be excluded from Adjusted Indoor Lighting Power. (Indoor lighting not listed below shall comply with all applicable nonresidential indoor lighting requirements in Part 6.):
- A. In theme parks: Lighting for themes and special effects.
  - B. Studio lighting for film or photography provided that these lighting systems are in addition to and separately switched from a general lighting system.
  - C. Lighting for dance floors, lighting for theatrical and other live performances, and theatrical lighting used for religious worship, provided that these lighting systems are additions to a general lighting system and are separately controlled by a multispace or theatrical cross-fade control station accessible only to authorized operators.

Lighting intended for makeup, hair, and costume preparation in performing arts facility dressing rooms, provided that the lighting is separately switched from the general lighting system, switched independently at each dressing station, and is controlled with a Vacancy Sensor.
  - D. In civic facilities, transportation facilities, convention centers, and hotel function areas: Lighting for temporary exhibits, if the lighting is in addition to a general lighting system and is separately controlled from a panel accessible only to authorized operators.
  - E. Lighting installed by the manufacturer in walk-in coolers or freezers, vending machines, food preparation equipment, and scientific and industrial equipment.
  - F. In office buildings with medical and clinical areas and healthcare facilities: Examination and surgical lights, low-ambient night-lights, and lighting integral to medical equipment, provided that these lighting systems are additions to and separately switched from a general lighting system.
  - G. Lighting for plant growth or maintenance, if it is controlled by a multi-level astronomical time-switch control that complies with the applicable provisions of Section 110.9.
  - H. Lighting equipment that is for sale.
  - I. Lighting demonstration equipment in lighting education facilities.
  - J. Lighting that is required for exit signs subject to the CBC. Exit signs shall meet the requirements of the Appliance Efficiency Regulations.
  - K. Exit way or egress illumination that is normally off and that is subject to the CBC.
  - L. In hotel/motel buildings: Lighting in guestrooms (lighting in hotel/motel guestrooms shall comply with Section 130.0(b). (Indoor lighting not in guestrooms shall comply with all applicable nonresidential lighting requirements in Part 6.)

- M. In high-rise residential buildings: Lighting in dwelling units (Lighting in high-rise residential dwelling units shall comply with Section 130.0(b).) (Indoor lighting not in dwelling units shall comply with all applicable nonresidential lighting requirements in Part 6.)
  - N. Temporary lighting systems. (As defined in Section 100.1.)
  - O. Lighting in occupancy group U buildings less than 1,000 square feet.
  - P. Lighting in unconditioned agricultural buildings less than 2,500 square feet.
  - Q. Lighting systems in qualified historic buildings, as defined in the California Historical Building Code (Title 24, Part 8), are exempt from the Lighting Power Density allowances, if they consist solely of historic lighting components or replicas of historic lighting components. If lighting systems in qualified buildings contain some historic lighting components or replicas of historic components, combined with other lighting components, only those historic or historic replica components are exempt. All other lighting systems in qualified historic buildings shall comply with the Lighting Power Density allowances.
  - R. Lighting in nonresidential parking garages for seven or less vehicles: Lighting in nonresidential parking garages for seven or less vehicles shall comply with the applicable residential parking garage provisions of Section 150.0(k).
  - S. Lighting for signs: Lighting for signs shall comply with Section 140.8.
  - T. Lighting in refrigerated cases less than 3,000 square feet. (Lighting in refrigerated cases less than 3,000 square feet shall comply with the Title 20 Appliance Efficiency Regulations).
  - U. Lighting in elevators where the lighting meets the requirements in Section 120.6(f).
  - V. Lighting connected to a Life Safety Branch or Critical Branch, as specified in Section 517 of the California Electrical Code.
4. **Luminaire Classification and Power Adjustment.**
- A. Luminaire Classification and Power shall be determined in accordance with Section 130.0(c).
  - B. Small Aperture Tunable-White and Dim-to-Warm Luminaires Lighting Power Adjustment. For qualifying small aperture tunable-white and dim-to-warm LED luminaires, the adjusted indoor lighting power of these luminaires shall be calculated by multiplying their maximum rated wattage by 0.75. Qualifying luminaires shall meet all of the following:
    - i. Small Aperture. Qualifying luminaires longer than 18 inches shall be no wider than four inches. Qualifying luminaires with a length of 18 inches or less shall be no wider than eight inches.
    - ii. Color Changing. Qualifying tunable-white luminaires shall be capable of a color change greater than or equal to 2000 Kelvin correlated color temperature (CCT). Qualifying dim-to-warm luminaires shall be capable of color change greater than or equal to 500 Kelvin CCT.
    - iii. Controls. Qualifying luminaires shall be connected to controls that allows color changing of the luminaires.
  - C. Tailored Method Display Lighting Mounting Height Lighting Power Adjustment. For wall display luminaires or floor display luminaires meeting Tailored Method Section 140.6(c)3G and H and where the bottom of luminaires are 10 feet 7 inches and greater above the finished floor, the adjusted indoor lighting power of these luminaires shall be calculated by multiplying their maximum rated wattage and the appropriated mounting height adjustment factor from TABLE 140.6-E. Luminaire mounting height is the distance from the finished floor to the bottom of the luminaire. General lighting shall not qualify for a mounting height multiplier.

**(b) Calculation of Allowed Indoor Lighting Power: General Rules**

1. The allowed Indoor Lighting Power allotment for conditioned areas shall be calculated separately from the allowed Lighting Power allotment for unconditioned areas. Each allotment is applicable solely to the area to which it applies, and there shall be no trade-offs between conditioned and unconditioned area allotments.
2. Allowed Indoor Lighting Power allotment shall be calculated separately from the allowed Outdoor Lighting Power allotment. Each allotment is applicable solely to the area to which it applies, and there shall be no trade-offs between the separate Indoor and Outdoor allotments.
3. The Allowed Indoor Lighting Power allotment for general lighting shall be calculated as follows:
  - A. The Complete Building Method, as described in Section 140.6(c)1, shall be used only for an entire building, except as permitted by Section 140.6(c)1. As described more fully in Section 140.6(c)1, and subject to the adjustments listed there, the Allowed Indoor Lighting Power allotment for general lighting for the entire building shall be calculated as follows:
    - i. For a conditioned building, the product of the square feet of conditioned space of the building times the applicable allotment of watts per square foot described in TABLE 140.6-B.
    - ii. For an unconditioned building, the product of the square foot of unconditioned space of the building times the applicable allotment of watts per square feet described in TABLE 140.6-B.
  - B. The Area Category Method, as described in Section 140.6(c)2, shall be used either by itself for all areas in the building, or when some areas in the building use the Tailored Method described in Section 140.6(c)3. Under the Area Category Method (either by itself or in conjunction with the Tailored Method), as described more fully in Section 140.6(c)2, and subject to the adjustments listed there, the allowed Indoor Lighting Power allotment for general lighting shall be calculated for each area in the building as follows:
    - i. For conditioned areas, by multiplying the conditioned square feet of the area times the applicable allotment of watts per square foot for the area shown in TABLE 140.6-C (or TABLE 140.6-D if the Tailored Method is used for that area).
    - ii. For unconditioned areas, by multiplying the unconditioned square feet of the area times the applicable allotment of watts per square foot for the area shown in TABLE 140.6-C (or TABLE 140.6-D if the Tailored Method is used for that area).

The Allowed Indoor Lighting Power allotment for general lighting for one area for which the Area Category Method was used may be increased up to the amount that the Allowed Indoor Lighting Power allotment for general lighting for another area using the Area Category Method or Tailored Method is decreased, except that such increases and decreases shall not be made between conditioned and unconditioned space.

- C. The Tailored Method, as described in Section 140.6(c)3, shall be used either by itself for all areas in the building, or when some areas in the building use the Area Category Method described in Section 140.6(c)2. Under the Tailored Method (either by itself or in conjunction with the Area Category Method) as described more fully in Section 140.6(c)3, and subject to the adjustments listed there, allowed Indoor Lighting Power allotment for general lighting shall be calculated for each area in the building as follows:
  - i. For conditioned areas, by multiplying the conditioned square feet of the area times the applicable allotment of watts per square foot for the area shown in TABLE 140.6-D (or TABLE 140.6-C if the Area Category Method is used for that area);
  - ii. For unconditioned areas, by multiplying the unconditioned square feet of the area times the applicable allotment of watts per square foot for the area shown in TABLE 140.6-D (or TABLE 140.6-C if the Area Category Method is used for that area);

The Allowed Indoor Lighting Power allotment for general lighting for one area for which the Tailored Method was used may be increased up to the amount that the Allowed Indoor Power Lighting for general lighting for another area is decreased, but only if the Tailored Method or Area Category Method was used for the other area, except that such increases and decreases shall not be made between conditioned and unconditioned space.

- D. If the Area Category Method is used for an area, the Tailored Method may not be used for that area. If the Tailored Method is used for an area, the Area Category Method may not be used for that area.
4. Allowed Indoor Lighting Power allotments for all lighting power allotments other than general lighting shall be restricted as follows:
- A. When using the Area Category Method, allowed Indoor Lighting Power allotments for specialized task work; ornamental; precision commercial and industrial work; white board or chalk board; accent, display and feature; decorative; or Videoconferencing Studio; may not be increased as a result of, or otherwise traded off against, decreasing any other allotment; and
  - B. When using the Tailored Method, allowed Indoor Lighting Power allotments for wall display; floor display and task; ornamental/special effect; or very valuable display case; may not be increased, or otherwise traded between any of the separate allotments.
- (c) **Calculation of Allowed Indoor Lighting Power: Specific Methodologies.** The allowed indoor Lighting Power for each building type, or each primary function area shall be calculated using only one of the methods in Subsection 1, 2 or 3 below as applicable.
1. **Complete Building Method.** Requirements for using the Complete Building Method include all of the following:
- A. The Complete Building Method shall be used only for building types, as defined in Section 100.1, that are specifically listed in TABLE 140.6-B. (For example, retail and wholesale stores, hotel/motel, and highrise residential buildings shall not use this method.)
  - B. The Complete Building Method shall be used only on projects involving:
    - i. Entire buildings with one type of use occupancy; or
    - ii. Mixed occupancy buildings where one type of use makes up at least 90 percent of the entire building (in which case, when applying the Complete Building Method, it shall be assumed that the primary use is 100 percent of the building); or
    - iii. A tenant space where one type of use makes up at least 90 percent of the entire tenant space (in which case, when applying the Complete Building Method, it shall be assumed that the primary use is 100 percent of the tenant space).
  - C. The Complete Building Method shall be used only when the applicant is applying for a lighting permit and submits plans and specifications for the entire building or the entire tenant space.
  - D. Under the Complete Building Method, the allowed indoor Lighting Power allotment is the Lighting Power Density value times the floor area of the entire building.
  - E. For buildings including a parking garage plus another type of use listed in TABLE 140.6-B, the parking garage portion of the building and other type of use portion of the building shall each separately use the Complete Building Method.
2. **Area Category Method.** Requirements for using the Area Category Method include all of the following:
- A. The Area Category Method shall be used only for primary function areas, as defined in Section 100.1, that are listed in TABLE 140.6-C. For primary function areas not listed, selection of a reasonably equivalent type shall be permitted.
  - B. Primary Function Areas in TABLE 140.6-C shall not apply to a complete building. Each primary function area shall be determined as a separate area.
  - C. For purposes of compliance with Section 140.6(c)2, an "area" shall be defined as all contiguous areas that accommodate or are associated with a single primary function area listed in TABLE 146.0-C.
  - D. Where areas are bounded or separated by interior partitions, the floor area occupied by those interior partitions may be included in a Primary Function Area.
  - E. If at the time of permitting for a newly constructed building, a tenant is not identified for a multi-tenant area, a maximum of 0.4 watts per square foot shall be allowed for the lighting in each area in which a tenant has not been identified. The area shall be classified as Unleased Tenant Area.

- F. Under the Area Category Method, the allowed indoor Lighting Power for each primary function area is the Lighting Power Density value in TABLE 140.6-C times the square feet of the primary function area. The total allowed indoor Lighting Power for the building is the sum of all allowed indoor Lighting Power for all areas in the building.
- G. In addition to the allowed indoor Lighting Power calculated according to Sections 140.6(c)2A through F, the building may add additional lighting power allowances for qualifying lighting systems as specified in the Qualifying Lighting Systems column in TABLE 140.6-C under the following conditions:
- i. Only primary function areas having a lighting system as specified in the Qualifying Lighting Systems column in TABLE 140.6-C and in accordance with the corresponding footnote of the TABLE shall qualify for the additional lighting power allowances; and
  - ii. The additional lighting power allowances shall be used only if the plans clearly identify all applicable task areas and the lighting equipment designed to illuminate these tasks; and
  - iii. Tasks that are performed less than two hours per day or poor quality tasks that can be improved are not eligible for the additional lighting power allowances; and
  - iv. The additional lighting power allowances shall not utilize any type of luminaires that are used for general lighting in the building; and
  - v. The additional lighting power allowances shall not be used when using the Complete Building Method, or when the Tailored Method is used for any area in the building; and
  - vi. The additional lighting power allowed is the smaller of:
    - a. the lighting power density listed in the “Allowed Additional Lighting LPD” column in TABLE 140.6-C, times the square feet of the primary function, or
    - b. the Adjusted Indoor Lighting Power of the applicable lighting; and
  - vii. In addition to all other additional lighting power allowed under Sections 140.6(c)2Gi through vi, up to 1.0 watts per square foot of additional lighting power shall be allowed in a videoconferencing studio, as defined in Section 100.1, provided the following conditions are met:
    - a. A completed and signed Installation Certificate is prepared and submitted in accordance with Section 130.4(b), specifically detailing compliance with the applicable requirements of Section 140.6(c)2Gvii; and
    - b. The Videoconferencing Studio is a room with permanently installed videoconferencing cameras, audio equipment, and playback equipment for both audio-based and video-based two-way communication between local and remote sites; and
    - c. General lighting is switched in accordance with TABLE 130.1-A; and
    - d. Wall wash lighting is separately switched from the general lighting system; and
    - e. All of the lighting in the studio, including general lighting and additional lighting power allowed by Section 140.6(c)2Gvii is controlled by a multiscene programmable control system (also known as a scene preset control system).
3. **Tailored Method.** Requirements for using the Tailored Method include all of the following:
- A. The Tailored Method shall be used only for primary function areas listed in TABLE 140.6-D, as defined in Section 100.1.
  - B. Allowed Indoor Lighting Power allotments for general lighting shall be determined according to Section 140.6(c)3F, as applicable.
  - C. For compliance with Section 140.6(c)3, an "area" shall be defined as all contiguous areas that accommodate or are associated with a single primary function area listed in TABLE 140.6-D.
  - D. Where areas are bounded or separated by interior partitions, the floor area occupied by those interior partitions may be included in a Primary Function Area.

- E. In addition to the allowed indoor Lighting Power allotments for general lighting calculated according to Sections 140.6(c)3F, as applicable, the building may add additional lighting power allowances for wall display lighting, floor display lighting and task lighting, ornamental/special effects lighting, and very valuable display cases lighting according to Section 140.6(c)3G through J.
- F. Determine allowed indoor Lighting Power allotments for general lighting for primary function areas listed in TABLE 140.6-D as follows:
- i. Use the General Illumination Level (Lux) listed in Column 2 of Table 140.6-D to determine the Allowed General Lighting Power Density allotments for the area.
  - ii. Determine the room cavity ratio (RCR) for the area. The RCR shall be calculated according to the applicable equation in TABLE 140.6-F.
  - iii. Find the allowed General Lighting Power Density allotments in TABLE 140.6-G that is applicable to the General Illuminance Level (Lux) from Column 2 of Table 140.6-D (as described in Item i.) and the RCR determined in accordance with TABLE 140.6-F (as described in Item ii).
  - iv. Determine the square feet of the area in accordance with Section 140.6(c)3C and D.
  - v. Multiply the allowed Lighting Power Density allotment, as determined in accordance with Item iii by the square feet of each primary function area, as determined in accordance with Item iv. The product is the Allowed Indoor Lighting Power allotment for general lighting for the area.
- G. Determine additional allowed power for wall display lighting according to column 3 of Table 140.6-D for each primary function area as follows:
- i. Floor displays shall not qualify for wall display allowances.
  - ii. Qualifying wall lighting shall:
    - a. Be mounted within 10 feet of the wall having the wall display. When track lighting is used for wall display, and where portions of that lighting track are more than 10 feet from the wall and other portions are within 10 feet of the wall, portions of track more than 10 feet from the wall shall not be used for the wall display allowance.
    - b. Be a lighting system type appropriate for wall lighting. Lighting systems appropriate for wall lighting are lighting track adjacent to the wall, wall-washer luminaires, luminaires behind a wall valance or wall cove, or accent light. (Accent luminaires are adjustable or fixed luminaires with PAR, R, MR, AR, or luminaires providing directional display light.)
  - iii. Additional allowed power for wall display lighting is available only for lighting that illuminates walls having wall displays. The length of display walls shall include the length of the perimeter walls, including but not limited to closable openings and permanent full height interior partitions. Permanent full height interior partitions are those that (I) extend from the floor to within two feet of the ceiling or are taller than ten feet and (II) are permanently anchored to the floor.
  - iv. For wall display lighting where the bottom of the luminaire is greater than 10 feet 6 inches above the finished floor, the mounting height adjustment factor from Table 140.6-E can be used to adjust the installed luminaire wattage as specified in Section 140.6(a)4C.
  - v. The allowed power for wall display lighting shall be the smaller of:
    - a. the “wall display lighting power density” determined in accordance with TABLE 140.6-D, multiplied by the wall display lengths determined in accordance with Item iii; and
    - b. The Adjusted Indoor Lighting Power used for the wall display lighting systems.
  - vi. Lighting internal to display cases that are attached to a wall or directly adjacent to a wall are counted as wall display lighting as specified in Section 140.6(c)3G. All other lighting internal to display cases are counted as floor display lighting as specified in Section 140.6(c)3H, or as very valuable display case lighting as specified in Section 140.6(c)3J.
- H. Determine additional allowed power for floor display lighting and task lighting as follows:
- i. Displays that are installed against a wall shall not qualify for the floor display lighting power allowances.

- ii. Lighting internal to display cases that are not attached to a wall and not directly adjacent to a wall, shall be counted as floor display lighting in accordance with Section 140.6(c)3H; or very valuable display case lighting in accordance with Section 140.6(c)3J.
- iii. Additional allowed power for floor display lighting, and additional allowed power for task lighting, may be used by qualifying floor display lighting systems, qualifying task lighting systems, or a combination of both. For floor areas qualifying for both floor display and task lighting power allowances, the additional allowed power shall be used only once for the same floor area, so that the allowance shall not be additive.
- iv. Qualifying floor display lighting shall:
  - a. Be mounted no closer than 2 feet to a wall.
  - b. Consist of only (I) directional lamp types, such as PAR, R, MR, AR; or (II) luminaires providing directional display light.
  - c. If track lighting is used, shall be only track heads that are classified as direction lighting types.
- v. Qualifying task lighting shall:
  - a. Be located immediately adjacent to and capable of illuminating the task for which it is installed.
  - b. Be of a type different from the general lighting system.
  - c. Be separately switched from the general lighting system.
- vi. If there are illuminated floor displays, floor display lighting power shall be used only if allowed by column 4 of TABLE 140.6-D.
- vii. The square footage of floor displays or the square footage of task areas shall be determined in accordance with Section 140.6(c)3C and D, except that any floor area designed to not have floor displays or tasks, such as floor areas designated as a path of egress, shall not be included for the floor display allowance.
- viii. For floor display lighting where the bottom of the luminaire is greater than 10.6 feet above the finished floor, multiply the floor display installed watts by the appropriate mounting height adjustment factor from Table 140.6-E to calculate the Adjusted Indoor Lighting Power as specified in Section 140.6(a)4C.
- ix. The allowed power for floor display lighting for each applicable area shall be the smaller of:
  - a. The allowed floor display and task lighting power determined in accordance with Section 140.6(c)3Hvi multiplied by the floor square footage determined in accordance with Section 140.6(c)3Hvii; and
  - b. The Adjusted Indoor Lighting Power used for the floor display lighting systems.
- I. Determine additional allowed power for ornamental/special effects lighting as follows:
  - i. Qualifying ornamental lighting includes luminaires such as chandeliers, sconces, lanterns, neon and cold cathode, light emitting diodes, theatrical projectors, moving lights and light color panels when any of those lights are used in a decorative manner that does not serve as display lighting or general lighting.
  - ii. Additional lighting power for ornamental/special effects lighting shall be used only if allowed by Column 5 of TABLE 140.6-D.
  - iii. Additional lighting power for ornamental/special effects lighting shall be used only in areas having ornamental/special effects lighting. The square footage of the floor area shall be determined in accordance with Section 140.6(c)3C and D, and it shall not include floor areas not having ornamental/special effects lighting.
  - iv. The additional allowed power for ornamental/special effects lighting for each applicable area shall be the smaller of:

- a. The product of the “allowed ornamental/special effects lighting power” determined in accordance with Section 140.6(c)3Kii, multiplied by the floor square footage determined in accordance with Section 140.6(c)3Kiii; and
  - b. The Adjusted Indoor Lighting Power of allowed ornamental/special effects lighting.
- J. Determine additional allowed power for very valuable display case lighting as follows:
- i. Additional allowed power for very valuable display case lighting shall be available only for display cases in appropriate function areas in retail merchandise sales, museum and religious worship.
  - ii. To qualify for additional allowed power for very valuable display case lighting, a case shall contain jewelry, coins, fine china, fine crystal, precious stones, silver, small art objects and artifacts, and/or valuable collections the display of which involves customer inspection of very fine detail from outside of a locked case.
  - iii. Qualifying lighting includes internal display case lighting or external lighting employing highly directional luminaires specifically designed to illuminate the case or inspection area without spill light, and shall not be fluorescent lighting unless installed inside of a display case.
  - iv. If there is qualifying very valuable display case lighting, in accordance with Section 140.6(c)3Jii, the smallest of the following separate lighting power for display cases presenting very valuable display items is permitted:
    - a. The product of the area of the primary function and 0.55 watt per square foot; or
    - b. The product of the area of the display case and 8 watts per square foot; or
    - c. The Adjusted Indoor Lighting Power of lighting for very valuable displays.
- (d) **Automatic Daylighting Controls in Secondary Daylit Zones.** All luminaires providing general lighting that is in, or partially in a Secondary Sidelit Daylit Zone, and that is not in a Primary Sidelit Daylit Zone shall:
- 1. Be controlled independently from all other luminaires by automatic daylighting controls that meet the applicable requirements of Section 110.9; and
  - 2. Be controlled in accordance with the applicable requirements in Section 130.1(d); and
  - 3. All Secondary Sidelit Daylit Zones shall be shown on the plans submitted to the enforcing agency.
- EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.6(d):** Luminaires in Secondary Sidelit Daylit Zone(s) in an enclosed space in which the combined total general lighting power in Secondary Daylit Zone(s) is less than 120 watts, or where the combined total general lighting power in Primary and Secondary Daylit Zone(s) is less than 240 watts.
- EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.6(d):** Luminaires in parking garages complying with Section 130.1(d)3.
- EXCEPTION 3 to Section 140.6(d):** Areas adjacent to vertical glazing below an overhang, where there is no vertical glazing above the overhang and where the ratio of the overhang projection to the overhang rise is greater than 1.5 for South, East and West orientations, or where the ratio of the overhang projection to the overhang rise is greater than 1 for North orientations.
- EXCEPTION 4 to Section 140.6(d):** Rooms that have a total glazing area of less than 24 square feet, or parking garage areas with a combined total of less than 36 square feet of glazing or opening.
- EXCEPTION 5 to Section 140.6(d):** Luminaires in sidelit daylit zones in retail merchandise sales and wholesale showroom areas.

TABLE 140.6-A LIGHTING POWER ADJUSTMENT FACTORS (PAF)

TYPE OF CONTROL	TYPE OF AREA		FACTOR
a. To qualify for any of the Power Adjustment Factors in this table, the installation shall comply with the applicable requirements in Section 140.6(a)2 b. Only one PAF may be used for each qualifying luminaire unless combined below. c. Lighting controls that are required for compliance with Part 6 shall not be eligible for a PAF			
1. Daylight Dimming plus OFF Control	Luminaires in skylit daylit zone or primary sidelit daylit zone		0.10
2. Occupant Sensing Controls in Large Open Plan Offices	In open plan offices > 250 square feet: One sensor controlling an area that is:	No larger than 125 square feet	0.40
		From 126 to 250 square feet	0.30
		From 251 to 500 square feet	0.20
3. Institutional Tuning	Luminaires in non-daylit areas. Luminaires that qualify for other PAFs in this table may also qualify for this tuning PAF.		0.10
	Luminaires in daylit areas. Luminaires that qualify for other PAFs in this table may also qualify for this tuning PAF.		0.05
4. Demand Responsive Control	All building types of 10,000 square feet or smaller. Luminaires that qualify for other PAFs in this table may also qualify for this demand responsive control PAF		0.05
5. Clerestory Fenestration	Luminaires in daylit areas adjacent to the clerestory. Luminaires that qualify for daylight dimming plus OFF control may also qualify for this PAF.		0.05
6. Horizontal Slats	Luminaires in daylit areas adjacent to vertical fenestration with interior or exterior horizontal slats. Luminaires that qualify for daylight dimming plus OFF control may also qualify for this PAF.		0.05
7. Light Shelves	Luminaires in daylit areas adjacent to clerestory fenestration with interior or exterior light shelves. This PAF may be combined with the PAF for clerestory fenestration. Luminaires that qualify for daylight dimming plus OFF control may also qualify for this PAF		0.10

TABLE 140.6-B COMPLETE BUILDING METHOD LIGHTING POWER DENSITY VALUES

TYPE OF BUILDING	ALLOWED LIGHTING POWER DENSITY (WATTS PER SQUARE FOOT)
Assembly Building	0.70
Financial Institution Building	0.65
Industrial/Manufacturing Facility Building	0.60
Grocery Store Building	0.95
Gymnasium Building	0.65
Library Building	0.70
Healthcare Facility	0.90
Office Building	0.65
Parking Garage Building	0.13
Religious Facility Building	0.70
Restaurant Building	0.70
Retail Store Building	0.90
School Building	0.65
Sports Arena Building	0.75
Motion Picture Theater Building	0.70
Performing Arts Theater Building	0.80
All others buildings	0.40

TABLE 140.6-C AREA CATEGORY METHOD - LIGHTING POWER DENSITY VALUES (WATTS/FT<sup>2</sup>)

Primary Function Area	Allowed Lighting Power Density for General Lighting (W/ft <sup>2</sup> )	Additional Lighting Power <sup>1</sup>	
		Qualified Lighting Systems	Additional Allowance (W/ft <sup>2</sup> , unless noted otherwise)
Auditorium Area	0.70	Ornamental	0.30
		Accent, display and feature <sup>3</sup>	0.20
Auto Repair / Maintenance Area	0.55	Detailed Task Work <sup>7</sup>	0.20
Audience Seating Area	0.60	Ornamental	0.30
Beauty Salon Area	0.80	Detailed Task Work <sup>7</sup>	0.20
		Ornamental	0.30
Civic Meeting Place Area	1.00	Ornamental	0.30
Classroom, Lecture, Training, Vocational Area	0.70	White or Chalk Board <sup>1</sup>	4.50 W/ft
Commercial/Industrial Storage	Warehouse	-	-
	Shipping & Handling	-	-
Convention, Conference, Multipurpose and Meeting Area	0.85	Ornamental	0.30
Copy Room	0.50	-	-
Corridor Area	0.60	-	-
Dining Area	Bar/Lounge and Fine Dining	Ornamental	0.30
	Cafeteria/Fast Food		
	Family and Leisure		
Electrical, Mechanical, Telephone Rooms	0.40	Detailed Task Work <sup>7</sup>	0.20
Exercise/Fitness Center and Gymnasium Area	0.50	-	-
Hotel Function Area	0.85	Ornamental	0.30
Museum Area	0.60	Accent, display and feature <sup>3</sup>	0.50
Exhibition/Display			

	Restoration Room	0.75	Detailed Task Work <sup>7</sup>	0.20
Financial Transaction Area		0.80	Ornamental	0.30
General/Commercial & Industrial Work Area	Low Bay	0.60	Detailed Task Work <sup>7</sup>	0.20
	High Bay	0.65	Detailed Task Work <sup>7</sup>	0.20
	Precision	0.85	Precision Specialized Work <sup>9</sup>	0.70
Library	Reading Area	0.80	Ornamental	0.30
	Stacks Area	1.10	-	-
Main Entry Lobby		0.85	Ornamental	0.30
Locker Room		0.45	-	-
Lounge, Breakroom, or Waiting Area		0.65	Ornamental	0.30
Concourse and Atria Area		0.90	Ornamental	0.30
Office Area	> 250 square feet	0.65	Portable lighting for office areas <sup>6</sup>	0.20
	≤ 250 square feet	0.70		
	Open plan office	0.60		
Parking Garage Area	Parking Zone	0.10	First ATM	100 W
			Additional ATM	50 W each
	Dedicated Ramps	0.25	-	-
	Daylight Adaptation Zones <sup>2</sup>	0.50	-	-
Pharmacy Area		1.10	Specialized Task Work <sup>8</sup>	0.35
Retail Sales Area	Grocery Sales	1.05	Accent, display and feature <sup>3</sup>	0.20
			Decorative	0.15
	Retail Merchandise Sales	1.00	Accent, display and feature <sup>3</sup>	0.20
			Decorative	0.15
	Fitting Room	0.60	External Illuminated Mirror <sup>5</sup>	40 W/ea
			Internal Illuminated Mirror <sup>5</sup>	120 W/ea
Theater Area	Motion picture	0.60	Ornamental	0.30
	Performance	1.00		
Kitchen/Food Preparation Area		0.95	-	-
Scientific Laboratory Area		1.00	Specialized Task Work <sup>8</sup>	0.35
Healthcare Facility and Hospitals	Exam/Treatment Room	1.15	-	-
	Imaging Room	1.00	-	-
	Medical Supply Room	0.55	-	-
	Nursery	0.95	Tunable white or dim-to-warm <sup>10</sup>	0.10
	Nurse's Station	0.75	Tunable white or dim-to-warm <sup>10</sup>	0.10
	Operating Room	1.90	-	-
	Patient Room	0.55	Decorative	0.15
			Tunable white or dim-to-warm <sup>10</sup>	0.10
	Physical Therapy Room	0.85	Tunable white or dim-to-warm <sup>10</sup>	0.10
Recovery Room	0.90	Tunable white or dim-to-warm <sup>10</sup>	0.10	
Laundry Area		0.45	-	-
Religious Worship Area		0.95	Ornamental	0.30

Restrooms		0.65	Accent, display and feature <sup>3</sup>	0.20
			Decorative <sup>4</sup>	0.15
Transportation Function	Baggage Area	0.40	-	-
	Ticketing Area	0.45	Accent, display and feature <sup>3</sup>	0.20
Sports Arena – Playing Area	Class I Facility <sup>13</sup>	2.25	-	-
	Class II Facility <sup>13</sup>	1.45	-	-
	Class III Facility <sup>13</sup>	1.10	-	-
	Class IV Facility <sup>13</sup>	0.75	-	-
Stairwell		0.50	Accent, display and feature <sup>3</sup>	0.20
			Decorative <sup>4</sup>	0.15
Videoconferencing Studio		0.90	Videoconferencing	1.00
All other		0.40	-	-
Aging Eye/Low-vision <sup>11</sup>	Main Entry Lobby	0.85	Ornamental	0.30
			Transition Lighting OFF at night <sup>12</sup>	0.95
	Stairwell	0.80	-	-
	Corridor Area	0.80	Decorative <sup>4</sup>	0.15
	Lounge/Waiting Area	0.75	Ornamental	0.30
	Multipurpose Room	0.95	Ornamental	0.30
	Religious Worship Area	1.00	Ornamental	0.30
	Dining	0.80	Ornamental	0.30
Restroom	0.80	Accent, display and feature <sup>3</sup>	0.20	

Footnotes for this table are listed below.

1. White board or chalk board. – Directional lighting dedicated to a white board or chalk board.
2. Daylight Adaptation Zones shall be no longer than 66 feet from the entrance to the parking garage.
3. Accent, display and feature lighting – luminaires shall be adjustable or directional.
4. Decorative lighting – primary function shall be decorative and not to provide general lighting.
5. Illuminated mirrors. Lighting shall be dedicated to the mirror.
6. Portable lighting in office areas includes under shelf or furniture-mounted supplemental task lighting qualifies when controlled by a time clock or an occupancy sensor.
7. Detailed task work – Lighting provides high level of visual acuity required for activities with close attention to small elements and/or extreme close up work.
8. Specialized task work – Lighting provides for small-scale, cognitive or fast performance visual tasks; lighting required for operating specialized equipment associated with pharmaceutical/laboratorial activities.
9. Precision specialized work – Lighting for work performed within a commercial or industrial environment that entails working with low contrast, finely detailed, or fast moving objects.
10. Tunable white luminaires capable of color change greater than or equal to 2000K CCT, or dim-to-warm luminaires capable of color change greater than or equal to 500K CCT, connected to controls that allows color changing of the luminaires.
11. Aging Eye/Low-vision areas can be documented as being designed to comply with the light levels in ANSI/IES RP-28 and are or will be licensed by local or state authorities for either senior long-term care, adult day care, senior support, and/or people with special visual needs.
12. Transition lighting OFF at night. Lighting power controlled by astronomical time clock or other control to shut off lighting at night. Additional LPD only applies to area within 30 feet of an exit. Not applicable to lighting in daylit zones.
13. Class I Facility is used for competition play for 5000 or more spectators. Class II Facility is used for competition play for up to 5000 spectators. Class III Facility is used for competition play for up to 2000 spectators. Class IV Facility is normally used for recreational play and there is limited or no provision for spectators.

**TABLE 140.6-D TAILORED METHOD LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES**

<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>Primary Function Area</b>	<b>General Illumination Level (Lux)</b>	<b>Wall Display Lighting Power Density (W/ft)</b>	<b>Allowed Combined Floor Display Power and Task Lighting Power Density (W/ft<sup>2</sup>)</b>	<b>Allowed Ornamental/Special Effect Lighting Power Density (W/ft<sup>2</sup>)</b>
Auditorium Area	300	3.00	0.20	0.40
Convention, Conference, Multipurpose, and Meeting Center Areas	300	2.00	0.35	0.40
Dining Areas	200	1.25	0.50	0.40
Exhibit, Museum Areas	150	11.50	0.80	0.40
Hotel Area:				
Ballroom/Events	400	1.80	0.12	0.40
Lobby	200	3.50	0.20	0.40
Main entry lobby	200	3.50	0.20	0.40
Religious Worship Area	300	1.30	0.40	0.40
Retail Sales				
Grocery	600	6.80	0.70	0.40
Merchandise Sales, and Showroom Areas	500	11.80	0.80	0.40
Theater Area:				
Motion picture	200	2.00	0.20	0.40
Performance Arts	200	7.50	0.20	0.40

**TABLE 140.6-E TAILORED WALL AND FLOOR DISPLAY MOUNTING HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT FACTORS**

<b>Height in feet above finished floor and bottom of luminaire(s)</b>	<b>Floor Display or Wall Display Mounting Height Adjustment Factor</b>
< 10'-7"	1.00
10'-7" to 14'-0"	0.85
>14'-0" to 18'-0"	0.75
> 18'-0"	0.70

**TABLE 140.6-F ROOM CAVITY RATIO (RCR) EQUATIONS**

Determine the Room Cavity Ratio for TABLE 140.6-G using one of the following equations.	
Room cavity ratio for rectangular rooms	$RCR = \frac{5 \times H \times (L + W)}{L \times W}$
Room cavity ratio for irregular-shaped rooms	$RCR = \frac{2.5 \times H \times P}{A}$
Where: L =Length of room; W = Width of room; H =Vertical distance from the work plane to the centerline of the lighting fixture; P = Perimeter of room, and A = Area of room	

**TABLE 140.6-G TAILORED METHOD GENERAL LIGHTING POWER ALLOWED – BY ILLUMANCE AND ROOM CAVITY RATIO**

General Illuminance Level (lux) <sup>a</sup>	General Lighting Power Density (W/ft <sup>2</sup> ) for the following RCR values <sup>b</sup> values <sup>b</sup>			
	RCR ≤ 2.0	RCR > 2.0 and ≤ 3.5	RCR > 3.5 and ≤ 7.0	RCR > 7.0
150	0.40	0.45	0.60	00.75
200	0.45	0.55	0.75	1.00
300	0.65	0.80	1.00	1.40
400	0.75	0.95	1.25	1.50
500	0.90	1.05	1.45	1.85
600	1.08	1.24	1.64	2.38

<sup>a</sup> Illuminance values from Column 2 of TABLE 140.6-D.

<sup>b</sup> RCR values are calculated using applicable equations in TABLE 140.6-F.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

## SECTION 140.7 – PRESCRIPTIVE REQUIREMENTS FOR OUTDOOR LIGHTING

- (a) An outdoor lighting installation complies with this section if it meets the requirements in Subsections (b) and (c), and the actual outdoor lighting power installed is no greater than the allowed outdoor lighting power calculated under Subsection (d). The allowed outdoor lighting shall be calculated according to Outdoor Lighting Zone in Title 24, Part 1, Section 10-114.

**EXCEPTIONS to Section 140.7(a):** When more than 50 percent of the light from a luminaire falls within one or more of the following applications, the lighting power for that luminaire shall be exempt from Section 140.7:

1. Temporary outdoor lighting.
  2. Lighting required and regulated by the Federal Aviation Administration, and the Coast Guard.
  3. Lighting for public streets, roadways, highways, and traffic signage lighting, including lighting for driveway entrances occurring in the public right-of-way.
  4. Lighting for sports and athletic fields, and children’s playgrounds.
  5. Lighting for industrial sites, including but not limited to, rail yards, maritime shipyards and docks, piers and marinas, chemical and petroleum processing plants, and aviation facilities.
  6. Lighting of public monuments.
  7. Lighting of signs complying with the requirements of Sections 130.3 and 140.8.
  8. Lighting of stairs, wheelchair elevator lifts for American with Disabilities Act (ADA) compliance, and ramps that are other than parking garage ramps.
  9. Landscape lighting.
  10. In theme parks: outdoor lighting only for themes and special effects.
  11. Lighting for outdoor theatrical and other outdoor live performances, provided that these lighting systems are additions to area lighting systems and are controlled by a multiscene or theatrical cross-fade control station accessible only to authorized operators.
  12. Outdoor lighting systems for qualified historic buildings, as defined in the California Historic Building Code (Title 24, Part 8), if they consist solely of historic lighting components or replicas of historic lighting components. If lighting systems for qualified historic buildings contain some historic lighting components or replicas of historic components, combined with other lighting components, only those historic or historic replica components are exempt. All other outdoor lighting systems for qualified historic buildings shall comply with Section 140.7.
- (b) **Outdoor Lighting Power Trade-offs.** Outdoor lighting power trade-offs shall be determined as follows:
1. Allowed lighting power determined according to Section 140.7(d)1 for general hardscape lighting allowance may be traded to specific applications in Section 140.7(d)2, provided the hardscape area from which the lighting power is traded continues to be illuminated in accordance with Section 140.7(d)1A.
  2. Allowed lighting power determined according to Section 140.7(d)2 for additional lighting power allowances for specific applications shall not be traded between specific applications, or to hardscape lighting in Section 140.7(d)1.
  3. Trading off lighting power allowances between outdoor and indoor areas shall not be permitted.
- (c) **Calculation of Actual Lighting Power.** The wattage of outdoor luminaires shall be determined in accordance with Section 130.0(c).

(d) **Calculation of Allowed Lighting Power.** The allowed lighting power shall be the combined total of the sum of the general hardscape lighting allowance determined in accordance with Section 140.7(d)1, and the sum of the additional lighting power allowance for specific applications determined in accordance with Section 140.7(d)2.

1. **General Hardscape Lighting Allowance.** Determine the general hardscape lighting power allowances as follows:
  - A. The general hardscape area of a site shall include parking lot(s), roadway(s), driveway(s), sidewalk(s), walkway(s), bikeway(s), plaza(s), bridge(s), tunnel(s), and other improved area(s) that are illuminated. In plan view of the site, determine the illuminated hardscape area, which is defined as any hardscape area that is within a square pattern around each luminaire or pole that is ten times the luminaire mounting height with the luminaire in the middle of the pattern, less any areas that are within a building, beyond the hardscape area, beyond property lines, or obstructed by a structure. The illuminated hardscape area shall include portions of planters and landscaped areas that are within the lighting application and are less than or equal to 10 feet wide in the short dimensions and are enclosed by hardscape or other improvement on at least three sides. Multiply the illuminated hardscape area by the Area Wattage Allowance (AWA) from Table 140.7-A for the appropriate Lighting Zone.
  - B. Determine the perimeter length of the general hardscape area. The total perimeter shall not include portions of hardscape that is not illuminated according to Section 140.7(d)1A. Multiply the hardscape perimeter by the Linear Wattage Allowance (LWA) for hardscape from Table 140.7-A for the appropriate lighting zone. The perimeter length for hardscape around landscaped areas and permanent planters shall be determined as follows:
    - i. Landscaped areas completely enclosed within the hardscape area, and which have a width or length less than 10 feet wide, shall not be added to the hardscape perimeter length.
    - ii. Landscaped areas completely enclosed within the hardscape area, and which width or length is a minimum of 10 feet wide, the perimeter of the landscaped areas or permanent planter shall be added to the hardscape perimeter length.
    - iii. Landscaped edges that are not abutting the hardscape shall not be added to the hardscape perimeter length.
  - C. Determine the Initial Wattage Allowance (IWA) for general hardscape lighting from Table 140.7-A for the appropriate lighting zone. The hardscape area shall be permitted one IWA per site.
  - D. The general hardscape lighting allowance shall be the sum of the allowed watts determined from (A), (B) and (C) above.
2. **Additional Lighting Power Allowance for Specific Applications.** Additional lighting power for specific applications shall be the smaller of the additional lighting allowances for specific applications determined in accordance with TABLE 140.7-B for the appropriate lighting zone, or the actual installed lighting power meeting the requirements for the allowance.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

**TABLE 140.7-A GENERAL HARDSCAPE LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCE**

Type of Power Allowance	Lighting Zone 0 <sup>3</sup>	Lighting Zone 1 <sup>3</sup>	Lighting Zone 2 <sup>3</sup>		Lighting Zone 3 <sup>3</sup>		Lighting Zone 4 <sup>3</sup>
	Asphalt/Concrete	Asphalt/Concrete	Asphalt	Concrete <sup>2</sup>	Asphalt	Concrete <sup>2</sup>	Asphalt/Concrete
Area Wattage Allowance (AWA)	No allowance <sup>1</sup>	0.018 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.023 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.025 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.025 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.03 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.03 W/ft <sup>2</sup>
Linear Wattage Allowance (LWA)		0.15 W/lf	0.17 W/lf	0.4 W/lf	0.25 W/lf	0.4 W/lf	0.35 W/lf
Initial Wattage Allowance (IWA)		180 W	250 W	250 W	350 W	350 W	400 W

<sup>1</sup>Continuous lighting is explicitly prohibited in Lighting Zone 0. A single luminaire of 15 Watts or less may be installed at an entrance to a parking area, trail head, fee payment kiosk, outhouse, or toilet facility, as required to provide safe navigation of the site infrastructure. Luminaires installed shall meet the maximum zonal lumen limits as specified in Section 130.2(b).

<sup>2</sup>Where greater than 50% of the paved surface of a parking lot is finished with concrete. This does not extend beyond the parking lot, and does not include any other General Hardscape areas.

<sup>3</sup>Narrow band spectrum light sources with a dominant peak wavelength greater than 580 nm – as mandated by local, state, or federal agencies to minimize the impact on local, active professional astronomy or nocturnal habitat of specific local fauna – shall be allowed a 2.0 lighting power allowance multiplier.

TABLE 140.7-B ADDITIONAL LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCE FOR SPECIFIC APPLICATIONS

All area and distance measurements in plan view unless otherwise noted.

Lighting Application	Lighting Zone 0	Lighting Zone 1	Lighting Zone 2	Lighting Zone 3	Lighting Zone 4
<b>WATTAGE ALLOWANCE PER APPLICATION. Use all that apply as appropriate.</b>					
<b>Building Entrances or Exits.</b> Allowance per door. Luminaires qualifying for this allowance shall be within 20 feet of the door.	Not applicable	9 watts	15 watts	19 watts	21 watts
<b>Primary Entrances to Senior Care Facilities, Police Stations, Healthcare Facilities, Fire Stations, and Emergency Vehicle Facilities.</b> Allowance per primary entrance(s) only. Primary entrances shall provide access for the general public and shall not be used exclusively for staff or service personnel. This allowance shall be in addition to the building entrance or exit allowance above. Luminaires qualifying for this allowance shall be within 100 feet of the primary entrance.	Not applicable	20 watts	40 watts	57 watts	60 watts
<b>Drive Up Windows.</b> Allowance per customer service location. Luminaires qualifying for this allowance shall be within 2 mounting heights of the sill of the window.	Not applicable	16 watts	30 watts	50 watts	75 watts
<b>Vehicle Service Station Uncovered Fuel Dispenser.</b> Allowance per fueling dispenser. Luminaires qualifying for this allowance shall be within 2 mounting heights of the dispenser.	Not applicable	55 watts	77 watts	81 watts	135 watts
<b>ATM Machine Lighting.</b> Allowance per ATM machine. Luminaires qualifying for this allowance shall be within 50 feet of the dispenser.	Not applicable	100 watts for first ATM machine, 35 watts for each additional ATM machine.			
<b>WATTAGE ALLOWANCE PER UNIT LENGTH (w/linear ft). May be used for one or two frontage side(s) per site.</b>					
<b>Outdoor Sales Frontage.</b> Allowance for frontage immediately adjacent to the principal viewing location(s) and unobstructed for its viewing length. A corner sales lot may include two adjacent sides provided that a different principal viewing location exists for each side. Luminaires qualifying for this allowance shall be located between the principal viewing location and the frontage outdoor sales area.	Not applicable	No Allowance	11 W/linear ft	19 W/linear ft	25 W/linear ft
<b>WATTAGE ALLOWANCE PER HARDSCAPE AREA (W/ft<sup>2</sup>). May be used for any illuminated hardscape area on the site.</b>					
<b>Hardscape Ornamental Lighting.</b> Allowance for the total site illuminated hardscape area. Luminaires qualifying for this allowance shall be rated for 100 watts or less as determined in accordance with Section 130.0(d), and shall be post-top luminaires, lanterns, pendant luminaires, or chandeliers.	Not applicable	No Allowance	0.007 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.013 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.019 W/ft <sup>2</sup>
<b>WATTAGE ALLOWANCE PER SPECIFIC AREA (W/ft<sup>2</sup>). Use as appropriate provided that none of the following specific applications shall be used for the same area.</b>					
<b>Building Facades.</b> Only areas of building façade that are illuminated shall qualify for this allowance. Luminaires qualifying for this allowance shall be aimed at the façade and shall be capable of illuminating it without obstruction or interference by permanent building features or other objects.	Not applicable	No Allowance	0.100 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.170 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.225 W/ft <sup>2</sup>
<b>Outdoor Sales Lots.</b> Allowance for uncovered sales lots used exclusively for the display of vehicles or other merchandise for sale. Driveways, parking lots or other non sales areas shall be considered hardscape areas even if these areas are completely surrounded by sales lot on all sides. Luminaires qualifying for this allowance shall be within 5 mounting heights of the sales lot area.	Not applicable	0.060 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.210 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.280 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.485 W/ft <sup>2</sup>
<b>Vehicle Service Station Hardscape.</b> Allowance for the total illuminated hardscape area less area of buildings, under canopies, off property, or obstructed by signs or structures. Luminaires qualifying for this allowance shall be illuminating the hardscape area and shall not be within a building, below a canopy, beyond property lines, or obstructed by a sign or other structure.	Not applicable	0.006 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.068 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.138 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.200 W/ft <sup>2</sup>
<b>Vehicle Service Station Canopies.</b> Allowance for the total area within the drip line of the canopy. Luminaires qualifying for this allowance shall be located under the canopy.	Not applicable	0.220 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.430 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.580 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	1.010 W/ft <sup>2</sup>
<b>Sales Canopies.</b> Allowance for the total area within the drip line of the canopy. Luminaires qualifying for this allowance shall be located under the canopy.	Not applicable	No Allowance	0.470 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.622 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.740 W/ft <sup>2</sup>
<b>Non-sales Canopies and Tunnels.</b> Allowance for the total area within the drip line of the canopy or inside the tunnel. Luminaires qualifying for this allowance shall be located under the canopy or tunnel.	Not applicable	0.057 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.137 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.270 W/ft <sup>2</sup>	0.370 W/ft <sup>2</sup>

<p><b>Guard Stations.</b> Allowance up to 1,000 square feet per vehicle lane. Guard stations provide access to secure areas controlled by security personnel who stop and may inspect vehicles and vehicle occupants, including identification, documentation, vehicle license plates, and vehicle contents. Qualifying luminaires shall be within 2 mounting heights of a vehicle lane or the guardhouse.</p>	<p>Not applicable</p>	<p>0.081 W/ft<sup>2</sup></p>	<p>0.176 W/ft<sup>2</sup></p>	<p>0.325 W/ft<sup>2</sup></p>	<p>0.425 W/ft<sup>2</sup></p>
--	-----------------------	-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------

CONTINUED: TABLE 140.7-B ADDITIONAL LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCE FOR SPECIFIC APPLICATIONS

All area and distance measurements in plan view unless otherwise noted.

Lighting Application	Lighting Zone 0	Lighting Zone 1	Lighting Zone 2	Lighting Zone 3	Lighting Zone 4
<p><b>Student Pick-up/Drop-off zone.</b> Allowance for the area of the student pick-up/drop-off zone, with or without canopy, for preschool through 12th grade school campuses. A student pick-up/drop off zone is a curbside, controlled traffic area on a school campus where students are picked-up and dropped off from vehicles. The allowed area shall be the smaller of the actual width or 25 feet, times the smaller of the actual length or 250 feet. Qualifying luminaires shall be within 2 mounting heights of the student pick-up/drop-off zone.</p>	<p>Not applicable</p>	<p>No Allowance</p>	<p>0.056 W/ft<sup>2</sup></p>	<p>0.200 W/ft<sup>2</sup></p>	<p>No Allowance</p>
<p><b>Outdoor Dining.</b> Allowance for the total illuminated hardscape of outdoor dining. Outdoor dining areas are hardscape areas used to serve and consume food and beverages. Qualifying luminaires shall be within 2 mounting heights of the hardscape area of outdoor dining.</p>	<p>Not applicable</p>	<p>0.004 W/ft<sup>2</sup></p>	<p>0.030 W/ft<sup>2</sup></p>	<p>0.050 W/ft<sup>2</sup></p>	<p>0.075 W/ft<sup>2</sup></p>
<p><b>Special Security Lighting for Retail Parking and Pedestrian Hardscape.</b> This additional allowance is for illuminated retail parking and pedestrian hardscape identified as having special security needs. This allowance shall be in addition to the building entrance or exit allowance.</p>	<p>Not applicable</p>	<p>0.004 W/ft<sup>2</sup></p>	<p>0.005 W/ft<sup>2</sup></p>	<p>0.010 W/ft<sup>2</sup></p>	<p>No Allowance</p>

---

## SECTION 140.8 – PRESCRIPTIVE REQUIREMENTS FOR SIGNS

This section applies to all internally illuminated and externally illuminated signs, unfiltered light emitting diodes (LEDs), and unfiltered neon, both indoor and outdoor. Each sign shall comply with either Subsection (a) or (b), as applicable.

(a) **Maximum Allowed Lighting Power.**

1. For internally illuminated signs, the maximum allowed lighting power shall not exceed the product of the illuminated sign area and 12 watts per square foot. For double-faced signs, only the area of a single face shall be used to determine the allowed lighting power.
2. For externally illuminated signs, the maximum allowed lighting power shall not exceed the product of the illuminated sign area and 2.3 watts per square foot. Only areas of an externally lighted sign that are illuminated without obstruction or interference, by one or more luminaires, shall be used.
3. Lighting for unfiltered light emitting diodes (LEDs) and unfiltered neon shall comply with Section 140.8(b).

(b) **Alternate Lighting Sources.** The sign shall comply if it is equipped only with one or more of the following light sources:

1. High pressure sodium lamps; or
2. Metal halide lamps that are:
  - A. Pulse start or ceramic served by a ballast that has a minimum efficiency of 88 percent or greater; or
  - B. Pulse start that are 320 watts or smaller, are not 250 watt or 175 watt lamps, and are served by a ballast that has a minimum efficiency of 80 percent.

Ballast efficiency is the reference lamp power divided by the ballast input power when tested according to ANSI C82.6-2015.

3. Neon or cold cathode lamps with transformer or power supply efficiency greater than or equal to following:
  - A. A minimum efficiency of 75 percent when the transformer or power supply rated output current is less than 50 mA; or
  - B. A minimum efficiency of 68 percent when the transformer or power supply rated output current is 50 mA or greater.

The ratio of the output wattage to the input wattage is at 100 percent tubing load.

4. Fluorescent lighting systems meeting one of the following requirements:
  - A. Use only lamps with a minimum color rendering index (CRI) of 80; or
  - B. Use only electronic ballasts with a fundamental output frequency not less than 20 kHz.
5. Light emitting diodes (LEDs) with a power supply having an efficiency of 80 percent or greater; or

**EXCEPTION to Section 140.8(b)5:** Single voltage external power supplies that are designed to convert 120 volt AC input into lower voltage DC or AC output, and have a nameplate output power less than or equal to 250 watts, shall comply with the applicable requirements of the Appliance Efficiency Regulations (Title 20).

6. Compact fluorescent lamps that do not contain a medium screw base sockets (E24/E26).

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.8:** Unfiltered incandescent lamps that are not part of an electronic message center (EMC), an internally illuminated sign, or an externally illuminated sign.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.8:** Exit signs. Exit signs shall meet the requirements of the Appliance Efficiency Regulations.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 140.8:** Traffic Signs. Traffic signs shall meet the requirements of the Appliance Efficiency Regulations.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

## SECTION 140.9 – PRESCRIPTIVE REQUIREMENTS FOR COVERED PROCESSES

(a) **Prescriptive Requirements for Computer Rooms.** Space conditioning systems serving a computer room with a power density greater than 20 W/ft<sup>2</sup> shall comply with this section by being designed with and having constructed and installed a cooling system that meets the requirements of Subsections 1 through 6.

1. **Economizers.** Each individual cooling system primarily serving computer rooms shall include either:
  - A. An integrated air economizer capable of providing 100 percent of the expected system cooling load as calculated in accordance with a method approved by the Commission, at outside air temperatures of 55°F dry-bulb/50°F wet-bulb and below, and be equipped with a fault detection and diagnostic system as specified by Section 120.2(i); or
  - B. An integrated water economizer capable of providing 100 percent of the expected system cooling load as calculated in accordance with a method approved by the Commission, at outside air temperatures of 40°F dry-bulb/35°F wet-bulb and below.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.9(a)1:** Individual computer rooms under 5 tons in a building that does not have any economizers.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.9(a)1:** New cooling systems serving an existing computer room in an existing building up to a total of 50 tons of new cooling equipment per building.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 140.9(a)1:** New cooling systems serving a new computer room in an existing building up to a total of 20 tons of new cooling equipment per building.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 140.9(a)1:** A computer room may be served by a fan system without an economizer if it is also served by a fan system with an economizer that also serves other spaces within the building provided that all of the following are met:

- i. The economizer system is sized to meet the design cooling load of the computer room when the other spaces within the building are at 50 percent of their design load; and
  - ii. The economizer system has the ability to serve only the computer room, e.g. shut off flow to other spaces within the building when unoccupied; and
  - iii. The noneconomizer system does not operate when the outside air drybulb temperatures is below 60°F and, the cooling load of other spaces within the building served by the economizer system is less than 50 percent of design load.
2. **Reheat.** Each computer room zone shall have controls that prevent reheating, recooling and simultaneous provisions of heating and cooling to the same zone, such as mixing or simultaneous supply of air that has been previously mechanically heated and air that has been previously cooled, either by cooling equipment or by economizer systems.
  3. **Humidification.** Nonadiabatic humidification (e.g. steam, infrared) is prohibited. Only adiabatic humidification (e.g. direct evaporative, ultrasonic) is permitted.
  4. **Power Consumption of Fans.** The total fan power at design conditions of each fan system shall not exceed 27 W/kBtu-h of net sensible cooling capacity.
  5. **Fan Control.** Each unitary air conditioner with mechanical cooling capacity exceeding 60,000 Btu/hr and each chilled water fan system shall be designed to vary the airflow rate as a function of actual load and shall have controls and/or devices (such as two-speed or variable speed control) that will result in fan motor demand of no more than 50 percent of design wattage at 66 percent of design fan speed.
  6. **Containment.** Computer rooms with air-cooled computers in racks and with a design load exceeding 175 kW/room shall include air barriers such that there is no significant air path for computer discharge air to recirculate back to computer inlets without passing through a cooling system.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.9(a)6:** Expansions of existing computer rooms.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.9(a)6:** Computer racks with a design load less than 1 kW/rack.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 140.9(a)6:** Equivalent energy performance based on computational fluid dynamics or other analysis.

**EXCEPTION to Section 140.9(a):** Computer rooms located in healthcare facilities.

(b) **Prescriptive Requirements for Commercial Kitchens.**

1. **Kitchen exhaust systems.**

- A. Replacement air introduced directly into the hood cavity of kitchen exhaust hoods shall not exceed 10 percent of the hood exhaust airflow rate.
- B. For kitchen/dining facilities having total Type I and Type II kitchen hood exhaust airflow rates greater than 5,000 cfm, each Type I hood shall have an exhaust rate that complies with TABLE 140.9-A. If a single hood or hood section is installed over appliances with different duty ratings, then the maximum allowable flow rate for the hood or hood section shall not exceed the TABLE 140.9-A values for the highest appliance duty rating under the hood or hood section. Refer to ASHRAE Standard 154-2011 for definitions of hood type, appliance duty and next exhaust flow rate.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.9(b)1B:** 75 percent of the total Type I and Type II exhaust replacement air is transfer air that would otherwise be exhausted.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.9(b)1B:** Existing hoods not being replaced as part of an addition or alteration.

*TABLE 140.9-A MAXIMUM NET EXHAUST FLOW RATE, CFM PER LINEAR FOOT OF HOOD LENGTH*

Type of Hood	Light Duty Equipment	Medium Duty Equipment	Heavy Duty Equipment	Extra Heavy Duty Equipment
Wall-mounted Canopy	140	210	280	385
Single Island	280	350	420	490
Double Island	175	210	280	385
Eyebrow	175	175	Not Allowed	Not Allowed
Backshelf / Passover	210	210	280	Not Allowed

2. **Kitchen ventilation.**

- A. Mechanically cooled or heated makeup air delivered to any space with a kitchen hood shall not exceed the greater of:
- The supply flow required to meet the space heating and cooling load; or
  - The hood exhaust flow minus the available transfer air from adjacent spaces. Available transfer air is that portion of outdoor ventilation air serving adjacent spaces not required to satisfy other exhaust needs, such as restrooms, not required to maintain pressurization of adjacent spaces, and that would otherwise be relieved from the building.

**EXCEPTION to Section 140.9(b)2A:** Existing kitchen makeup air units not being replaced as part of an addition or alteration.

- B. A kitchen/dining facility having a total Type I and Type II kitchen hood exhaust airflow rate greater than 5,000 cfm shall have one of the following:
- At least 50 percent of all replacement air is transfer air that would otherwise be exhausted; or
  - Demand ventilation system(s) on at least 75 percent of the exhaust air. Such systems shall:
    - Include controls necessary to modulate airflow in response to appliance operation and to maintain full capture and containment of smoke, effluent and combustion products during cooking and idle; and
    - Include failsafe controls that result in full flow upon cooking sensor failure; and

- c. Include an adjustable timed override to allow occupants the ability to temporarily override the system to full flow; and
- d. Be capable of reducing exhaust and replacement air system airflow rates to the larger of:
  - (i) 50 percent of the total design exhaust and replacement air system airflow rates; or
  - (ii) The ventilation rate required as specified by Section 120.1(c)3.
- iii. Listed energy recovery devices with a sensible heat recovery effectiveness of not less than 40 percent on at least 50 percent of the total exhaust airflow; or
- iv. A minimum of 75 percent of makeup air volume that is:
  - a. Unheated or heated to no more than 60°F; and
  - b. Uncooled or cooled without the use of mechanical cooling.

**EXCEPTION to Section 140.9(b)2B:** Existing hoods not being replaced as part of an addition or alteration.

3. **Kitchen Exhaust System Acceptance.** Before an occupancy permit is granted for a commercial kitchen subject to Section 140.9(b), the following equipment and systems shall be certified as meeting the Acceptance Requirements for Code Compliance, as specified by the Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7. A Certificate of Acceptance shall be submitted to the enforcement agency that certifies that the equipment and systems meet the acceptance requirements specified in NA7.11.

**EXCEPTION to Section 140.9(b):** healthcare facilities.

**(c) Prescriptive Requirements for Laboratory and Factory Exhaust Systems**

1. **Airflow Reduction Requirements.** For buildings with laboratory exhaust systems where the minimum circulation rate to comply with code or accreditation standards is 10 ACH or less, the design exhaust airflow shall be capable of reducing zone exhaust and makeup airflow rates to the regulated minimum circulation rate, or the minimum required to maintain pressurization requirements, whichever is larger. Variable exhaust and makeup airflow shall be coordinated to achieve the required space pressurization at varied levels of demand and fan system capacity.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 140.9(c)1:** Laboratory exhaust systems serving zones where constant volume is required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction, facility Environmental Health & Safety department or other applicable code.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 140.9(c)1:** New zones on an existing constant volume exhaust system.

2. **Exhaust System Transfer Air.** Conditioned supply air delivered to any space with mechanical exhaust shall comply with the requirements of Section 140.4(o).
3. **Fan System Power Consumption.** All newly installed fan exhaust systems serving a laboratory or factory greater than 10,000 CFM, shall meet subsection A and either B, C, or D:
  - A. System shall meet all discharge requirements in ANSI Z9.5-2012.
  - B. The exhaust fan system power shall not exceed 0.85 watts per cfm of exhaust air for systems with air filtration, scrubbers, or other air treatment devices. For all other exhaust fan systems the system power shall not exceed 0.65 watts per cfm of exhaust air. Exhaust fan system power equals the sum of the power of all fans in the exhaust system that are required to operate at normal occupied design conditions in order to exhaust air from the conditioned space to the outdoors. Exhaust air does not include entrained air, but does include all exhaust air from fume hoods, hazardous exhaust flows, or other manifolded exhaust streams.
 

**EXCEPTION to Section 140.9(c)3B:** Laboratory exhaust systems where applicable local, state, or federal exhaust treatment requirements specify installation of air treatment devices that cause more than 1 in. of water pressure drop.
  - C. The volume flow rate at the stack shall vary based on the measured 5-minute averaged wind speed and wind direction obtained from a calibrated local anemometer.

- i. At least two anemometers shall be installed in a location that experiences similar wind conditions to the free stream environment above the exhaust stacks and be at a height that is outside the wake region of nearby structures.
  - ii. Look-up tables shall be used to define the required exhaust volume flow rate, as a function of at least eight wind speeds and eight wind directions, to maintain downwind concentrations below health and odor limits, as defined by the 2018 American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists Threshold Limit Values and Biological Exposure Indices, for all detectable contaminants, or as defined by applicable local, state, or federal jurisdictions, if more stringent.
  - iii. Wind speed/direction sensors shall be certified by the manufacturer to be accurate within plus or minus 40 fpm (0.2 m/s) and 5.0 degrees when measured at sea level and 25°C, factory calibrated, and certified by the manufacturer to require calibration no more frequently than once every 5 years.
  - iv. Upon detection of anemometer and/or signal failure, the system shall reset the exhaust volume flow rate to the value needed to maintain downwind concentrations below health and odor limits for all detectable contaminants at worst-case wind conditions and shall report the fault to an Energy Management Control System or fault management application which automatically provides notification of the fault to a remote system provider. The system shall have logic that automatically checks for anemometer failure by the following means.
    - a. If any anemometer has not been calibrated within the manufacturer's recommended calibration period, the sensor has failed.
    - b. During unoccupied periods the system compares the readings of all anemometers. If any anemometer is more than 30% above or below the average reading for a period of 4 hours, the anemometer has failed.
  - v. Before an occupancy permit is granted for a laboratory or process facility subject to Section 140.9(c)3C, the applicable equipment and systems shall be certified as meeting the Acceptance Requirements for Code Compliance, as specified by the Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.16. A Certificate of Acceptance shall be submitted to the enforcement agency that certifies that the equipment and systems meet the acceptance requirements specified in NA7.16.
- D. The volume flow rate at the stack shall vary based on the measured contaminant concentration in the exhaust plenum from a calibrated contaminant sensor installed within each exhaust plenum.
- i. A contaminant-event threshold shall be established based on maintaining downwind concentrations below health and odor limits for all detectable chemicals at worst-case wind conditions, as defined by the 2018 American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists Threshold Limit Values and Biological Exposure Indices, or as defined by applicable local, state, or federal jurisdictions, if more stringent.
  - ii. At least two contaminant concentration sensors shall be Photo Ionization Detectors (PID) certified by the manufacturer to be accurate within plus or minus 5% when measured at sea level and 25°C, factory calibrated, and certified by the manufacturer to require calibration no more frequently than once every 6 months.
  - iii. Upon detection of sensor and/or signal failure, the system shall reset the exhaust volume flow rate to the value needed to maintain downwind concentrations below health and odor limits for all detectable contaminants at worst-case wind conditions and shall report the fault to an Energy Management Control System or fault management application which automatically provides notification of the fault to a remote system provider. The system shall have logic that automatically checks for sensor failure by the following means.
    - a. If any sensor has not been calibrated within the manufacturer's recommended calibration period, the sensor has failed.
    - b. During unoccupied periods the system compares the readings of all sensors. If any sensor is more than 30% above or below the average reading for a period of 4 hours, the sensor has failed.

- iv. Before an occupancy permit is granted for a laboratory or process facility subject to Section 140.9(c)3D, the applicable equipment and systems shall be certified as meeting the Acceptance Requirements for Code Compliance, as specified by the Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7.16. A Certificate of Acceptance shall be submitted to the enforcement agency that certifies that the equipment and systems meet the acceptance requirements specified in NA7.16.
4. **Fume Hood Automatic Sash Closure.** Variable air volume laboratory fume hoods with vertical only sashes located in fume hood intensive laboratories, as described in Table 140.9-B, shall have an automatic sash closure system that complies with the following:
- A. The automatic sash closure system shall be capable of the following:
    - i. The automatic sash closure system shall have a dedicated zone presence sensor that detects people in the area near the fume hood sash and automatically closes the sash within 5 minutes of no detection.
    - ii. The automatic sash closure system shall have controls to prevent the sash from automatic closing when a force of no more than 10 lbs is detected.
    - iii. The automatic sash closure system shall be equipped with an obstruction sensor that prevents the sash from automatic closing with obstructions in the sash opening. Obstruction sensor shall be capable of sensing transparent materials such as laboratory glassware.
    - iv. The automatic sash closure system shall be capable of being configured in a manual open mode where once the sash is closed, detection of people in the area near the fume hood by the zone presence sensor does not open the fume hood sash.
  - B. **Fume Hood Automatic Sash Closure Acceptance.** Before an occupancy permit is granted for the fume hoods subject to 140.9(c)4, the equipment and systems shall be certified as meeting the Acceptance Requirement for Code Compliance as specified by the Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA7. A Certificate of Acceptance shall be submitted to the enforcement agency that certifies that the equipment and systems meet the acceptance requirements specified in NA7.17.

*Table 140.9-B Fume Hood Intensive Laboratories*

Occupied Minimum Ventilation ACH	≤ 4	> 4 and ≤ 6	> 6 and ≤ 8	> 8 and ≤ 10	> 10 and ≤ 12	> 12 and ≤ 14
Hood Density (linear feet per 10,000 ft <sup>3</sup> of laboratory space)	≥ 6	≥ 8	≥ 10	≥ 12	≥ 14	≥ 16

**EXCEPTION to Section 140.9(c):** healthcare facilities.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code

## SUBCHAPTER 6

# NONRESIDENTIAL, HIGH-RISE RESIDENTIAL, AND HOTEL/MOTEL OCCUPANCIES—ADDITIONS, ALTERATIONS, AND REPAIRS

---

### SECTION 141.0 – ADDITIONS, ALTERATIONS, AND REPAIRS TO EXISTING NONRESIDENTIAL, HIGH-RISE RESIDENTIAL, AND HOTEL/MOTEL BUILDINGS, TO EXISTING OUTDOOR LIGHTING, AND TO INTERNALLY AND EXTERNALLY ILLUMINATED SIGNS

Additions, alterations, and repairs to existing nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel buildings, existing outdoor lighting for these occupancies, and internally and externally illuminated signs, shall meet the requirements specified in Sections 100.0 through 110.10, and 120.0 through 130.5 that are applicable to the building project, and either the performance compliance approach (energy budgets) in Section 141.0(a)2 (for additions) or 141.0(b)3 (for alterations), or the prescriptive compliance approach in Section 141.0(a)1 (for additions) or 141.0(b)2 (for alterations), for the Climate Zone in which the building is located. Climate zones are shown in FIGURE 100.1-A.

Covered process requirements for additions, alterations and repairs to existing nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel buildings are specified in Section 141.1.

**EXCEPTION to Section 141.0:** Alterations to healthcare facilities are not required to comply with this Section.

**NOTE:** For alterations that change the occupancy classification of the building, the requirements specified in Section 141.0(b) apply to the occupancy after the alterations.

(a) **Additions.** Additions shall meet either Item 1 or 2 below.

1. **Prescriptive approach.** The envelope and lighting of the addition; any newly installed space-conditioning system, electrical power distribution system, or water-heating system; any addition to an outdoor lighting system; and any new sign installed in conjunction with an indoor or outdoor addition shall meet the applicable requirements of Sections 110.0 through 120.7, 120.9 through 130.5, and 140.2 through 140.9.
2. **Performance approach.**
  - A. The envelope and indoor lighting in the conditioned space of the addition, and any newly installed space-conditioning system, electrical power distribution system, or water-heating system, shall meet the applicable requirements of Sections 110.0 through 120.7, 120.9 through 130.5; and
  - B. Either:
    - i. The addition alone shall comply with Section 140.1; or
    - ii. Existing plus addition plus alteration. The standard design for existing plus addition, plus alteration energy use is the combination of the existing building's unaltered components to remain, existing building altered components that are the more efficient, in TDV energy, of either the existing conditions, or the requirements of Section 141.0(b)2, plus the proposed addition's energy use meeting the requirements of Section 140.1. The proposed design energy use is the combination of the existing building's unaltered components to remain and the altered component's energy features, plus the proposed energy features of the addition.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 141.0(a):** When heating, cooling, or service water heating to an addition are provided by expanding existing systems, the existing systems and equipment need not comply with Sections 110.0 through 120.9, or Sections 140.4 through 140.5.

---

SECTION 141.0 – ADDITIONS, ALTERATIONS, AND REPAIRS TO EXISTING NONRESIDENTIAL, HIGH-RISE RESIDENTIAL, AND HOTEL/MOTEL BUILDINGS, TO EXISTING OUTDOOR LIGHTING, AND TO INTERNALLY AND EXTERNALLY ILLUMINATED SIGNS

---

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 141.0(a):** Where an existing system with electric reheat is expanded by adding variable air volume (VAV) boxes to serve an addition, total electric reheat capacity may be expanded so that the total capacity does not exceed 150 percent of the existing installed electric heating capacity in any one permit, and the system need not comply with Section 140.4(g). Additional electric reheat capacity in excess of 150 percent of the existing installed electric heating capacity may be added subject to the requirements of the Section 140.4(g).

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 141.0(a):** Duct Sealing. When ducts are extended from an existing duct system to serve the addition, the existing duct system and the extended ducts shall meet the applicable requirements specified in Section 141.0(b)2D.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 141.0(a):** Additions that increase the area of the roof by 2,000 square feet or less are exempt from the requirements of Section 110.10.

- (b) **Alterations.** Alterations to components of existing nonresidential, high-rise residential, hotel/motel, or relocatable public school buildings, including alterations made in conjunction with a change in building occupancy to a nonresidential, high-rise residential, or hotel/motel occupancy shall meet item 1, and either Item 2 or 3 below:
1. **Mandatory Requirements.** Altered components in a nonresidential, high-rise residential, or hotel/motel building shall meet the minimum requirements in this Section.
    - A. **Roof/Ceiling Insulation.** The opaque portions of the roof/ceiling that separate conditioned spaces from unconditioned spaces or ambient air shall meet the requirements of Section 141.0(b)2Biii.
    - B. **Wall Insulation.** For the altered opaque portion of walls separating conditioned spaces from unconditioned spaces or ambient air shall meet the applicable requirements of Items 1 through 4 below:
      1. **Metal Building.** A minimum of R-13 insulation between framing members, or the weighted average U-factor of the wall assembly shall not exceed U-0.113.
      2. **Metal Framed.** A minimum of R-13 insulation between framing members, or the weighted average U-factor of the wall assembly shall not exceed U-0.217.
      3. **Wood Framed and Others.** A minimum of R-11 insulation between framing members, or the weighted average U-factor of the wall assembly shall not exceed U-0.110.
      4. **Spandrel Panels and Curtain Walls.** A minimum of R-4, or the weighted average U-factor of the wall assembly shall not exceed U-0.280.

**EXCEPTION to Section 141.0(b)1B:** Light and heavy mass walls.

- C. **Floor Insulation.** For the altered portion of raised floors that separate conditioned spaces from unconditioned spaces or ambient air shall meet the applicable requirements of Items 1 through 3 below:
  1. **Raised Framed Floors.** A minimum of R-11 insulation between framing members, or the weighted average U-factor of the floor assembly shall not exceed the U-factor of U-0.071.
  2. **Raised Mass Floors in High-rise Residential and Hotel/Motel Guest Rooms.** A minimum of R-6 insulation, or the weighted average U-factor of the floor assembly shall not exceed the U-factor of U-0.111.
  3. **Raised Mass Floors in Other Occupancies.** No minimum U-factor requirement.
2. **Prescriptive approach.** The altered components of the envelope, or space conditioning, lighting, electrical power distribution and water heating systems, and any newly installed equipment serving the alteration, shall meet the applicable requirements of Sections 110.0 through 110.9, Sections 120.0 through 120.6, and Sections 120.9 through 130.5.

**EXCEPTION to Section 141.0(b)2:** The requirements of Section 120.2(i) shall not apply to alterations of space-conditioning systems or components.

- A. Fenestration alterations other than repair and those subject to Section 141.0(b)2 shall meet the requirements below:

- i. Vertical fenestration alterations shall meet the requirements in Table 141.0-A.
- ii. Added vertical fenestration shall meet the requirements of TABLE 140.3-B, C, or D.
- iii. All altered or newly installed skylights shall meet the requirements of TABLE 140.3-B, C or D.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 141.0(b)2Ai:** In an alteration, where 150 square feet or less of the entire building's vertical fenestration is replaced, RSHGC and VT requirements of TABLE 141.0-A shall not apply.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 141.0(b)2Aii:** In an alteration, where 50 square feet or less of vertical fenestration is added, RSHGC and VT requirements of TABLE 140.3-B, C or D shall not apply.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 141.0(b)2Aiii:** In an alteration, where 50 square feet or less of skylight is added, SHGC and VT requirements of TABLE 140.3-B, C or D shall not apply.

**NOTE:** Glass replaced in an existing sash and frame or sashes replaced in an existing frame are considered repairs. In these cases, Section 141.0(c) requires that the replacement be at least equivalent to the original in performance.

*Table 141.0-A Altered Vertical Fenestration Maximum U-Factor and Maximum RSHGC*

Climate Zone	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
<b>U-factor</b>	0.47	0.47	0.58	0.47	0.58	0.47	0.47	0.47	0.47	0.47	0.47	0.47	0.47	0.47	0.47	0.47
<b>RSHGC</b>	0.41	0.31	0.41	0.31	0.41	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.41
<b>VT</b>	See TABLE 140.3-B, C, and D for all Climate Zones															

- B. Existing roofs being replaced, recovered or recoated, of a nonresidential, high-rise residential and hotels/motels shall meet the requirements of Section 110.8(i). Roofs with more than 50 percent of the roof area or more than 2,000 square feet of roof, whichever is less, is being altered the requirements of i through iii below apply:

- i. Roofing Products. Nonresidential buildings:
  - a. Low-sloped roofs in Climate Zones 1 through 16 shall have a minimum aged solar reflectance of 0.63 and a minimum thermal emittance of 0.75, or a minimum SRI of 75.
  - b. Steep-sloped roofs in Climate Zones 1 through 16 shall have a minimum aged solar reflectance of 0.20 and a minimum thermal emittance of 0.75, or a minimum SRI of 16.

**EXCEPTION to Section 141.0(b)2Bia:** An aged solar reflectance less than 0.63 is allowed provided the maximum roof/ceiling U-factor in TABLE 141.0-B is not exceeded.

- ii. Roofing Products. High-rise residential buildings and hotels and motels:
  - a. Low-sloped roofs in Climate Zones 10, 11, 13, 14 and 15 shall have a minimum aged solar reflectance of 0.55 and a minimum thermal emittance of 0.75, or a minimum SRI of 64.
  - b. Steep-sloped roofs Climate Zones 2 through 15 shall have a minimum aged solar reflectance of 0.20 and a minimum thermal emittance of 0.75, or a minimum SRI of 16.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 141.0(b)2Bi and ii:** Roof area covered by building integrated photovoltaic panels and building integrated solar thermal panels are not required to meet the minimum requirements for solar reflectance, thermal emittance, or SRI.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 141.0(b)2Bi and ii:** Roof constructions with a weight of at least 25 lb/ft<sup>2</sup> are not required to meet the minimum requirements for solar reflectance, thermal emittance, or SRI.

*Table 141.0-B Roof/Ceiling Insulation Tradeoff for Aged Solar Reflectance*

Aged Solar Reflectance	Climate Zone 1, 3-9 U-factor	Climate Zone 2, 10-16 U-factor
0.62- 0.60	0.075	0.052
0.59-0.55	0.066	0.048
0.54-0.50	0.060	0.044
0.49-0.45	0.055	0.041
0.44-0.40	0.051	0.039
0.39-0.35	0.047	0.037
0.34-0.30	0.044	0.035
0.29-0.25	0.042	0.034

- iii. For nonresidential buildings, high-rise residential buildings and hotels/motels, when low-sloped roofs are exposed to the roof deck or to the roof recover boards, and meets Section 141.0(b)2Bia or iia, the exposed area shall be insulated to the levels specified in TABLE 141.0-C.

**EXCEPTION to Section 141.0(b)2Biii**

- a. Existing roofs that are insulated with at least R-7 insulation or that has a U-factor lower than 0.089 are not required to meet the R-value requirement of TABLE 141.0-C.
- b. If mechanical equipment is located on the roof and will not be disconnected and lifted as part of the roof replacement, insulation added may be limited to the maximum insulation thickness that will allow a height of 8 inches (203 mm) from the roof membrane surface to the top of the base flashing.
- c. If adding the required insulation will reduce the base flashing height to less than 8 inches (203 mm) at penthouse or parapet walls, the insulation added may be limited to the maximum insulation thickness that will allow a height of 8 inches (203 mm) from the roof membrane surface to the top of the base flashing, provided that the conditions in Subsections i through iv apply:
  - i. The penthouse or parapet walls are finished with an exterior cladding material other than the roofing covering membrane material; and
  - ii. The penthouse or parapet walls have exterior cladding material that must be removed to install the new roof covering membrane to maintain a base flashing height of 8 inches (203 mm); and
  - iii. For nonresidential buildings, the ratio of the replaced roof area to the linear dimension of affected penthouse or parapet walls shall be less than 25 square feet

- per linear foot for Climate Zones 2, and 10 through 16, and less than 100 square feet per linear foot for Climate Zones 1, and 3 through 9; and
- iv. For high-rise residential buildings, hotels or motels, the ratio of the replaced roof area to the linear dimension of affected penthouse or parapet walls shall be less than 25 square feet per linear foot for all Climate Zones.
- d. Tapered insulation may be used which has a thermal resistance less than that prescribed in TABLE 141.0-C at the drains and other low points, provided that the thickness of insulation is increased at the high points of the roof so that the average thermal resistance equals or exceeds the value that is specified in TABLE 141.0-C.

**TABLE 141.0-C INSULATION REQUIREMENTS FOR ROOF ALTERATIONS**

Climate Zone	Nonresidential		High-Rise Residential and Guest Rooms of Hotel/Motel Buildings	
	Continuous Insulation	U-factor	Continuous Insulation	U-factor
	R-value		R-value	
1	R-8	0.082	R-14	0.055
2	R-14	0.055	R-14	0.055
3-9	R-8	0.082	R-14	0.055
10-16	R-14	0.055	R-14	0.055

- C. **New or Replacement Space-Conditioning Systems or Components** other than new or replacement space-conditioning system ducts shall meet the requirements of Section 140.4 applicable to the systems or components being altered. For compliance with Section 140.4(c)1, additional fan power adjustment credits are available as specified in Table 141.0-D.

*Table 141.0-D Fan Power Limitation Pressure Drop Adjustment*

Device	Adjustment Credits
Particulate Filtration Credit: MERV 9 through 12	0.5 in. of water
Particulate Filtration Credit: MERV 13 through 15	0.9 in. of water

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 141.0(b)2C.** Subsection (b)2C does not apply to replacements of equivalent or lower capacity electric resistance space heaters for high rise residential apartment units.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 141.0(b)2C.** Subsection (b)2C does not apply to replacement of electric reheat of equivalent or lower capacity electric resistance space heaters, when natural gas is not available.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 141.0(b)2C.** Section 140.4(n) is not applicable to new or replacement space conditioning systems.

- D. **Altered Duct Systems.** When new or replacement space-conditioning system ducts are installed to serve an existing building, the new ducts shall meet the requirements of Section 120.4. If the space conditioning system meets the criteria of Section 140.4(l)1, the duct system shall be sealed as

confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures for duct sealing of an existing duct system as specified in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA2, to meet one of the following requirements:

- i. If the new ducts form an entirely new or replacement duct system directly connected to the air handler, the measured duct leakage shall be equal to, or less than 6 percent of the system air handler airflow as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing utilizing the procedures in Reference Nonresidential Appendix Section NA2.1.4.2.1.

Entirely new or replacement duct systems installed as part of an alteration shall be constructed of at least 75 percent new duct material, and up to 25 percent may consist of reused parts from the building's existing duct system, including registers, grilles, boots, air handlers, coils, plenums, and ducts, if the reused parts are accessible and can be sealed to prevent leakage.

- ii. If the new ducts are an extension of an existing duct system, the combined new and existing duct system shall meet one of the following requirements:
  - a. The measured duct leakage shall be equal to or less than 15 percent of the system air handler airflow as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing utilizing the procedures in Reference Nonresidential Appendix Section NA2.1.4.2.1; or
  - b. If it is not possible to comply with the duct leakage criterion in Subsection 141.0(b)2Diia, then all accessible leaks shall be sealed and verified through a visual inspection and a smoke test performed by a certified HERS Rater utilizing the methods specified in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA2.1.4.2.2.

**EXCEPTION to Section 141.0(b)2Dii: Duct Sealing.** Existing duct systems that are extended, which are constructed, insulated or sealed with asbestos are exempt from the requirements of subsection 141.0(b)2Dii.

- E. **Altered Space-Conditioning Systems.** When a space-conditioning system is altered by the installation or replacement of space-conditioning system equipment (including replacement of the air handler, outdoor condensing unit of a split system air conditioner or heat pump, or cooling or heating coil:
  - i. For all altered units where the existing thermostat does not comply with the requirements for demand responsive controls specified in Section 110.12, the existing thermostat shall be replaced with a demand responsive thermostat that complies with Section 110.12. All newly installed space-conditioning systems requiring a thermostat shall be equipped with a demand responsive thermostat that complies with Section 110.12; and
  - ii. The duct system that is connected to the new or replaced space-conditioning system equipment shall be sealed, if the duct system meets the criteria of Section 140.4(l)1, as confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing, in accordance with the applicable procedures for duct sealing of altered existing duct systems as specified in Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA2, and conforming to the applicable leakage compliance criteria in Section 141.0(b)2D.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 141.0(b)2Eii: Duct Sealing.** Buildings altered so that the duct system no longer meets the criteria of Section 140.4(l)1 are exempt from the requirements of Subsection 141.0(b)2Eii.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 141.0(b)2Eii: Duct Sealing.** Duct systems that are documented to have been previously sealed as confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with procedures in the Reference Nonresidential Appendix NA2 are exempt from the requirements of Subsection 141.0(b)2Eii.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 141.0(b)2Eii: Duct Sealing.** Existing duct systems constructed, insulated or sealed with asbestos are exempt from the requirements of Subsection 141.0(b)2Eii.

- F. Spaces with lighting systems installed for the first time shall meet the requirements of Sections 110.9, 130.0, 130.1, 130.2, 130.4, 140.3(c), 140.6, and 140.7.

- G. When the requirements of Section 130.1(d) are triggered by the addition of skylights to an existing building and the lighting system is not recircuited, the daylighting control need not meet the multi-level requirements in Section 130.1(d).
- H. New internally and externally illuminated signs shall meet the requirements of Sections 110.9, 130.3 and 140.8.
- I. **Altered Indoor Lighting Systems.** Alterations to indoor lighting systems that include 10% or more of the luminaires serving an enclosed space shall meet the requirements of i, ii, or iii below:
  - i. The alteration shall comply with the indoor lighting power requirements specified in Section 140.6 and the lighting control requirements specified in Table 141.0-F;
  - ii. The alteration shall not exceed 80% of the indoor lighting power requirements specified in Section 140.6, and shall comply with the lighting control requirements specified in Table 141.0-F; or
  - iii. The alteration shall be a one-for-one luminaire alteration within a building or tenant space of 5,000 square feet or less, the total wattage of the altered luminaires shall be at least 40% lower compared to their total pre-alteration wattage, and the alteration shall comply with the lighting control requirements specified in Table 141.0-F.

Alterations to indoor lighting systems shall not prevent the operation of existing, unaltered controls, and shall not alter controls to remove functions specified in Section 130.1.

Alterations to lighting wiring are considered alterations to the lighting system. Alterations to indoor lighting systems are not required to separate existing general, floor, wall, display, or ornamental lighting on shared circuits or controls. New or completely replaced lighting circuits shall comply with the control separation requirements of Section 130.1(a)4 and 130.1(c)1D.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 141.0(b)2I.** Alteration of portable luminaires, luminaires affixed to moveable partitions, or lighting excluded as specified in Section 140.6(a)3.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 141.0(b)2I.** Any enclosed space with only one luminaire.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 141.0(b)2I.** Any alteration that would directly cause the disturbance of asbestos, unless the alteration is made in conjunction with asbestos abatement.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 141.0(b)2I.** Acceptance testing requirements of Section 130.4 are not required for alterations where lighting controls are added to control 20 or fewer luminaires.

**EXCEPTION 5 to Section 141.0(b)2I.** Any alteration limited to adding lighting controls or replacing lamps, ballasts, or drivers.

**EXCEPTION 6 to Section 141.0(b)2I.** One-for-one luminaire alteration of up to 50 luminaires either per complete floor of the building or per complete tenant space, per annum.

J. **Reserved.**

K. **Reserved.**

- L. Alterations to existing outdoor lighting systems in a lighting application listed in TABLE 140.7-A or 140.7-B shall meet the applicable requirements of Sections 130.0, 130.2(a), 130.2(b), and 130.4, and:
  - i. In alterations that increase the connected lighting load, the added or altered luminaires shall meet the applicable requirements of Section 130.2(c) and the requirements of Section 140.7 for general hardscape lighting or for the specific lighting applications containing the alterations; and
  - ii. In alterations that do not increase the connected lighting load, where the greater of 5 luminaires or 10 percent of the existing luminaires are replaced in a general hardscape or a specific lighting application, the alterations shall meet the following requirements:
    - a. In parking lots and outdoor sales lots where the bottom of the luminaire is mounted 24 feet or less above the ground, the replacement luminaires shall comply with Section 130.2(c)1 AND Section 130.2(c)3;

- b. For all other lighting applications and where the bottom of the luminaire is mounted greater than 24 feet above the ground, the replacement luminaires shall comply with Section 130.2(c)1 AND EITHER comply with Section 130.2(c)2 or be controlled by lighting control systems, including motion sensors, that automatically reduces lighting power by at least 40 percent in response to the area being vacated of occupants; and
- iii. In alterations that do not increase the connected lighting load, where the greater of 5 luminaires or 50 percent of the existing luminaires are replaced in general hardscape or a specific application, the replacement luminaires shall meet the requirements of subsection ii above and the requirements of Section 140.7 for general hardscape lighting or specific lighting applications containing the alterations.

**EXCEPTION to Section 141.0(b)2Liii.** Alterations where the replacement luminaires have at least 40 percent lower power consumption compared to the original luminaires are not required to comply with the lighting power allowances of Section 140.7.

**EXCEPTION to Section 141.0(b)2L.** Acceptance testing requirements of Section 130.4 are not required for alterations where controls are added to 20 or fewer luminaires.

- M. Alterations to existing internally and externally illuminated signs that increase the connected lighting load, replace and rewire more than 50 percent of the ballasts, or relocate the sign to a different location on the same site or on a different site shall meet the requirements of Section 140.8.

**EXCEPTION to Section 141.0(b)2M.** Replacement of parts of an existing sign, including replacing lamps, the sign face or ballasts, that do not require rewiring or that are done at a time other than when the sign is relocated, is not an alteration subject to the requirements of Section 141.0(b)2M.

- N. Service water-heating systems shall meet the requirements of Section 140.5, except for the solar water heating requirements.
- O. A building shell for which interior walls or ceilings are installed for the first time shall meet the requirements of Section 140.3(c).
- P. **Electrical Power Distribution Systems.** Alterations to electrical power distribution systems shall meet the applicable requirements of Section 130.5 as follows:
  - i. **Service Electrical Metering.** New or replacement electrical service equipment shall meet the requirements of Section 130.5(a) applicable to the electrical power distribution system altered.
  - ii. **Separation Of Electrical Circuits For Electrical Energy Monitoring.** For entirely new or complete replacement of electrical power distribution systems, the entire system shall meet the applicable requirements of Section 130.5(b).
  - iii. **Voltage Drop.** Alterations of feeders and branch circuits where the alteration includes addition, modification, or replacement of both feeders and branch circuits, the altered circuits shall meet the requirements of Section 130.5(c).

**EXCEPTION to Section 141.0(b)2Piii:** Voltage drop permitted by California Electrical Code Sections 647.4, 695.6 and 695.7.

- iv. **Circuit Controls for 120-Volt Receptacles and Controlled Receptacles.** For entirely new or complete replacement of electrical power distribution systems, the entire system shall meet the applicable requirements of Section 130.5(d).

### 3. Performance approach.

- A. The altered envelope, space-conditioning system, lighting and water heating components, and any newly installed equipment serving the alteration, shall meet the applicable requirements of Sections 110.0 through 110.9, Sections 120.0 through 120.6, and Sections 120.9 through 130.5.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 141.0(b)3A Window Films.** Applied window films installed as part of an alteration complies with the U-factor, RSHGC and VT requirements of TABLE 141.0-E.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 141.0(b)2:** The requirements of Section 120.2(i) shall not apply to alterations of space-conditioning systems or components.

- B. The standard design for an altered component shall be the higher efficiency of existing conditions or the requirements of Section 141.0(b)2. For components not being altered, the standard design shall be based on the unaltered existing conditions such that the standard and proposed designs for these components are identical.
- C. When the third party verification option is specified, all components proposed for alteration, for which the additional credit is taken, must be verified. The Executive Director shall determine the qualifications required by the third party inspector.

*TABLE 141.0-E – The Standard Design For An Altered Component*

Altered Component	Standard Design Without Third Party Verification of Existing Conditions Shall be Based On	Standard Design With Third Party Verification of Existing Conditions Shall be Based On
Roof/Ceiling Insulation, Wall Insulation, and Floor/Soffit Insulation	The requirements of Section 141.0(b)1.	
Fenestration  The allowed glass area shall be the smaller of the a. or b. below: a. The proposed glass area: or b. The larger of: 1. The existing glass area that remains; or 2. The area allowed in Section 140.3(a)5A.	The U-factor and RSHGC requirements of TABLE 141.0-A.	The existing U-factor and RSHGC levels.
Space-Conditioning System Equipment and Ducts	The requirements of Sections 141.0(b)2C, 141.0(b)2Di or Section 141.0(b)2Dii, and Section 141.0(b)2E.	
Window Film	The U-factor of 0.40 and SHGC value of 0.35.	The existing fenestration in the alteration shall be based on TABLE 110.6-A and Table 110.6-B.
Service Water Heating Systems	The requirements of Section 140.5 without solar water heating requirements.	
Roofing Products	The requirements of Section 141.0(b)2B.	
Lighting System	The requirements of Sections 141.0(b)2F, through 141.0(b)2K.	
All Other Measures	The proposed efficiency levels.	

- D. The proposed design shall be based on the actual values of the altered components.

**NOTES TO SECTION 141.0(b)3:**

1. If an existing component must be replaced with a new component, that component is considered an altered component for the purpose of determining the energy budget and must therefore meet the requirements of Section 141.0(b)3.
2. The standard design assumes the same geometry and orientation as the proposed design.
3. The “existing efficiency level” modeling rules, including situations where nameplate data is not available, are described in the Nonresidential ACM Reference Manual.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 141.0(b):** When heating, cooling or service water heating for an alteration are provided by expanding existing systems, the existing systems and equipment need not comply with Sections 110.0 through 120.9 and Section 140.4 or 140.5.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 141.0(b):** When existing heating, cooling or service water heating systems or components are moved within a building, the existing systems or components need not comply with Sections 110.0 through 120.9 and Section 140.4 or 140.5.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 141.0(b):** Where an existing system with electric reheat is expanded when adding variable air volume (VAV) boxes to serve an alteration, total electric reheat capacity may be expanded not to exceed 20 percent of the existing installed electric capacity in any one permit and the system need not comply with Section 140.4(g). Additional electric reheat capacity in excess of 20 percent may be added subject to the requirements of the Section 140.4(g).

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 141.0(b):** The requirements of Section 120.2(i) shall not apply to alterations of space-conditioning systems or components.

**NOTE:** Relocation or moving of a relocatable public school building is not, by itself, considered an alteration for the purposes of Title 24, Part 6.

- (c) **Repairs.** Repairs shall not increase the preexisting energy consumption of the repaired component, system, or equipment.
- (d) **Alternate Method of Compliance.** Any addition, alteration, or repair may comply with the requirements of Title 24, Part 6 by meeting the applicable requirements for the entire building.

*Table 141.0-F – Control Requirements for Indoor Lighting System Alterations*

Control Specifications		Projects complying with Section 141.0(b)2fi	Projects complying with Sections 141.0(b)2fii and 141.0(b)2fiii
<b>Manual Area Controls</b>	130.1(a)1	Required	Required
	130.1(a)2	Required	Required
	130.1(a)3	Only required for new or completely replaced circuits	Only required for new or completely replaced circuits
<b>Multi-Level Controls</b>	130.1(b)	Required	Not Required
<b>Automatic Shut Off Controls</b>	130.1(c)1	Required; 130.1(c)1D only required for new or completely replaced circuits	Required; 130.1(c)1D only required for new or completely replaced circuits
	130.1(c)2	Required	Required
	130.1(c)3	Required	Required
	130.1(c)4	Required	Required
	130.1(c)5	Required	Required
	130.1(c)6	Required	Required
	130.1(c)7	Required	Required
	130.1(c)8	Required	Required
<b>Daylighting Controls</b>	130.1(d)	Required	Not Required
<b>Demand Responsive Controls</b>	130.1(e)	Required	Not Required

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, 25910, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

SECTION 141.0 – ADDITIONS, ALTERATIONS, AND REPAIRS TO EXISTING NONRESIDENTIAL, HIGH-RISE RESIDENTIAL, AND HOTEL/MOTEL BUILDINGS, TO EXISTING OUTDOOR LIGHTING, AND TO INTERNALLY AND EXTERNALLY ILLUMINATED SIGNS

---

---

## **SECTION 141.1 – REQUIREMENTS FOR COVERED PROCESSES IN ADDITIONS, ALTERATIONS TO EXISTING NONRESIDENTIAL, HIGH-RISE RESIDENTIAL, AND HOTEL/MOTEL BUILDINGS**

Covered processes in additions or alterations to existing buildings that will be nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel occupancies shall comply with the applicable subsections of section 120.6 and 140.9.

**Lab and Process Facility Exhaust Systems.** All newly installed fan systems for a laboratory or process facility exhaust system greater than 10,000 CFM shall meet the requirements of Section 140.9(c).

**NOTE:** For alterations that change the occupancy classification of the building, the requirements of Section 141.1 apply to the occupancy that will exist after the alterations.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

(This page intentionally left blank.)

## SUBCHAPTER 7

# LOW-RISE RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS – MANDATORY FEATURES AND DEVICES

---

### SECTION 150.0 – MANDATORY FEATURES AND DEVICES

Low-rise residential buildings shall comply with the applicable requirements of Sections 150(a) through 150.0(r).

**NOTE:** The requirements of Sections 150.0(a) through 150.0(r) apply to newly constructed buildings. Sections 150.2(a) and 150.2(b) specify which requirements of Sections 150.0(a) through 150.0(r) also apply to additions or alterations.

- (a) **Ceiling and Rafter Roof Insulation.** The opaque portions of ceilings and roofs separating conditioned spaces from unconditioned spaces or ambient air shall meet the requirements of Items 1 through 3 below:
1. Shall be insulated to achieve a weighted average U-factor not exceeding U-0.043 or shall be insulated between wood-framing members with insulation resulting in an installed thermal resistance of R-22 or greater for the insulation alone. For vented attics, the mandatory insulation shall be installed at the ceiling level; for unvented attics, the mandatory insulation shall be placed at either ceiling or roof level; and  
**EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(a)1:** Ceilings and rafter roofs in an alteration shall be insulated to achieve a weighted average U-factor not exceeding 0.054 or shall be insulated between wood-framing members with insulation resulting in an installed thermal resistance of R-19 or greater.
  2. Attic access doors shall have permanently attached insulation using adhesive or mechanical fasteners. The attic access shall be gasketed to prevent air leakage; and
  3. Insulation shall be installed in direct contact with a continuous roof or ceiling which is sealed to limit infiltration and exfiltration as specified in Section 110.7, including but not limited to placing insulation either above or below the roof deck or on top of a drywall ceiling.
- (b) **Loose-fill Insulation.** When loose-fill insulation is installed, the minimum installed weight per square foot shall conform with the insulation manufacturer's installed design weight per square foot at the manufacturer's labeled R-value.
- (c) **Wall Insulation.** Opaque portions of above grade walls separating conditioned spaces from unconditioned spaces or ambient air shall meet the following requirements:
1. 2x4 inch framing shall have an overall assembly U-factor not exceeding U-0.102.  
**EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(c)1:** Existing walls already insulated to a U-factor not exceeding U-0.110 or already insulated between framing members with insulation having an installed thermal resistance of R-11 or greater.
  2. 2x6 inch or greater framing shall have an overall assembly U-factor not exceeding U-0.071.
  3. Opaque non-framed assemblies shall have an overall assembly U-factor not exceeding U-0.102.
  4. Bay or Bow Window roofs and floors shall be insulated to meet the wall insulation requirements of TABLE 150.1-A or B.
  5. Masonry walls shall be insulated to meet the wall insulation requirements of TABLE 150.1-A or B.
  6. In wood framed assemblies, compliance with U-factors may be demonstrated by installing wall insulation with an R-value of 13 in 2x4 assemblies, and 20 in 2x6 assemblies.
- (d) **Raised-floor Insulation.** Raised floors separating conditioned space from unconditioned space or ambient air shall have an overall assembly U-factor not exceeding U-0.037. In a wood framed assembly, compliance with the U-factor may be demonstrated by installing insulation with an R-value of 19 or greater.

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(d):** A building with a controlled ventilation or unvented crawlspace may omit raised floor insulation if all of the following are met:

- A. The foundation walls are insulated to meet the wall insulation minimums as shown in TABLE 150.1-A or B; and
- B. A Class I or Class II vapor retarder is placed over the entire floor of the crawlspace; and
- C. Vents between the crawlspace and outside air are fitted with automatically operated louvers that are temperature actuated; and
- D. The requirements in Reference Residential Appendix RA4.5.1.

(e) **Installation of Fireplaces, Decorative Gas Appliances and Gas Logs.** If a masonry or factory-built fireplace is installed, it shall comply with Section 110.5, Section 4.503 of Part 11, and shall have the following:

1. Closeable metal or glass doors covering the entire opening of the firebox; and
2. A combustion air intake to draw air from the outside of the building, which is at least 6 square inches in area and is equipped with a readily accessible, operable, and tight-fitting damper or combustion-air control device; and

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(e)1B:** An outside combustion-air intake is not required if the fireplace will be installed over concrete slab flooring and the fireplace will not be located on an exterior wall.

3. A flue damper with a readily accessible control.

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(e)1C:** When a gas log, log lighter, or decorative gas appliance is installed in a fireplace, the flue damper shall be blocked open if required by the CMC or the manufacturer's installation instructions.

(f) **Slab Edge Insulation.** Material used for slab edge insulation shall meet the following minimum specifications:

1. Water absorption rate for the insulation material alone without facings no greater than 0.3 percent when tested in accordance with Test Method A – 24 Hour Immersion of ASTM C272.
2. Water vapor permeance no greater than 2.0 perm/inch when tested in accordance with ASTM E96.
3. Concrete slab perimeter insulation shall be protected from physical damage and ultraviolet light deterioration.
4. Insulation for a heated slab floor shall meet the requirements of Section 110.8(g).

(g) **Vapor Retarder**

1. In Climate Zones 1-16, the earth floor of unvented crawl space shall be covered with a Class I or Class II vapor retarder. This requirement shall also apply to controlled ventilation crawl space for buildings complying with the Exception to Section 150.0(d).
2. In Climate Zones 14 and 16, a Class I or Class II vapor retarder shall be installed on the conditioned space side of all insulation in all exterior walls, vented attics and unvented attics with air-permeable insulation.

(h) **Space-Conditioning Equipment.**

1. **Building Cooling and Heating Loads.** Building heating and cooling loads shall be determined using a method based on any one of the following:
  - A. The ASHRAE Handbook, Equipment Volume, Applications Volume, and Fundamentals Volume; or
  - B. The SMACNA Residential Comfort System Installation Standards Manual; or
  - C. The ACCA Manual J.

The cooling and heating loads are two of the criteria that shall be used for equipment sizing and selection.

**NOTE:** Heating systems are required to have a minimum heating capacity adequate to meet the minimum requirements of the CBC. The furnace output capacity and other specifications are published in the Commission's directory of certified equipment or other directories approved by the Commission.

2. **Design conditions.** For the purpose of sizing the space-conditioning (HVAC) system, the indoor design temperatures shall be 68°F for heating and 75°F for cooling. Outdoor design conditions shall be selected from Reference Joint Appendix JA2, which is based on data from the ASHRAE Climatic Data for Region X. The outdoor design temperatures for heating shall be no lower than the Heating Winter Median of Extremes values. The outdoor design temperatures for cooling shall be no greater than the 1.0 percent Cooling Dry Bulb and Mean Coincident Wet Bulb values.
  3. **Outdoor Condensing Units.**
    - A. **Clearances.** Installed air conditioner and heat pump outdoor condensing units shall have a clearance of at least five (5) feet (1.5 meters) from the outlet of any dryer vent.
    - B. **Liquid Line Drier.** Installed air conditioner and heat pump systems shall be equipped with liquid line filter driers if required, as specified by manufacturer's instructions.
  4. **Central Forced-Air Heating Furnaces.**
    - A. **Temperature Rise.** Central forced-air heating furnace installations shall be configured to operate in conformance with the furnace manufacturer's maximum inlet-to-outlet temperature rise specifications.
- (i) **Thermostats.** All heating or cooling systems, including heat pumps, not controlled by a central energy management control system (EMCS) shall have a setback thermostat, as specified in Section 110.2(c).
- (j) **Insulation for Piping and Tanks**
1. **Storage tank insulation.** Unfired hot water tanks, such as storage tanks and backup storage tanks for solar water-heating systems, shall be externally wrapped with insulation having an installed thermal resistance of R-12 or greater or have internal insulation of at least R-16 and a label on the exterior of the tank showing the insulation R-value.
  2. **Water piping, solar water-heating system piping, and space conditioning system line insulation thickness and conductivity.** Piping shall be insulated as follows:
    - A. All domestic hot water piping shall be insulated as specified in Section 609.11 of the California Plumbing Code. In addition, the following piping conditions shall have a minimum insulation wall thickness of 1 inch or a minimum insulation R-value of 7.7:
      - i. The first 5 feet (1.5 meters) of cold water pipes from the storage tank.
      - ii. All hot water piping with a nominal diameter equal to or greater than 3/4 inch (19 millimeter) and less than 1 inch.
      - iii. All hot water piping with a nominal diameter less than 3/4 inch that is:
        - a. Associated with a domestic hot water recirculation system;
        - b. From the heating source to the kitchen fixtures;
        - c. From the heating source to a storage tank or between storage tanks; or
        - d. Buried below grade.
    - B. Piping for space conditioning systems, solar water-heating system collector loop, and distribution piping for steam and hydronic heating system, shall meet the requirements of Section 120.3(c).

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.0(j)2:** Factory-installed piping within space-conditioning equipment certified under Section 110.1 or 110.2.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.0(j)2:** Piping that penetrates framing members shall not be required to have pipe insulation for the distance of the framing penetration. Piping that penetrates metal framing shall use grommets, plugs, wrapping or other insulating material to assure that no contact is made with the metal framing. Insulation shall abut securely against all framing members.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 150.0(j)2:** Piping installed in interior or exterior walls shall not be required to have pipe insulation if all of the requirements are met for compliance with Quality Insulation Installation (QII) as specified in the Reference Residential Appendix RA3.5.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 150.0(j)2:** Piping surrounded with a minimum of 1 inch of wall insulation, 2 inches of crawlspace insulation, or 4 inches of attic insulation, shall not be required to have pipe insulation.

3. **Insulation Protection.** Pipe insulation shall meet the insulation protection requirements of Section 120.3(b).

(k) **Residential Lighting.**

1. **Luminaire Requirements**

- A. **Luminaire Efficacy.** All installed luminaires shall meet the requirements in TABLE 150.0-A.
  - B. **Blank Electrical Boxes.** The number of electrical boxes that are more than 5 feet above the finished floor and do not contain a luminaire or other device shall be no greater than the number of bedrooms. These electrical boxes must be served by a dimmer, vacancy sensor control, or fan speed control.
  - C. **Recessed Downlight Luminaires in Ceilings.** In addition to complying with 150.0(k)1A, luminaires recessed into ceilings shall meet all of the following requirements:
    - i. Be listed, as defined in Section 100.1, for zero clearance insulation contact (IC) by Underwriters Laboratories or other nationally recognized testing/rating laboratory; and
    - ii. Have a label that certifies the luminaire is airtight with air leakage less than 2.0 CFM at 75 Pascals when tested in accordance with ASTM E283. An exhaust fan housing shall not be required to be certified airtight; and
    - iii. Be sealed with a gasket or caulk between the luminaire housing and ceiling, and have all air leak paths between conditioned and unconditioned spaces sealed with a gasket or caulk; and
    - iv. For luminaires with hardwired ballasts or drivers, allow ballast or driver maintenance and replacement to be readily accessible to building occupants from below the ceiling without requiring the cutting of holes in the ceiling; and
    - v. Shall not contain screw base sockets.
  - D. **Electronic Ballasts for Fluorescent Lamps.** Ballasts for fluorescent lamps rated 13 watts or greater shall be electronic and shall have an output frequency no less than 20 kHz.
  - E. **Night Lights, Step Lights and Path Lights.** Night lights, step lights and path lights shall not be required to comply with Table 150.0-A or be controlled by vacancy sensors provided they are rated to consume no more than 5 watts of power and emit no more than 150 lumens.
  - F. **Lighting Integral to Exhaust Fans.** Lighting integral to exhaust fans shall meet the applicable requirements of Section 150.0(k).
 

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(k)1F:** Lighting installed by the manufacturer in kitchen exhaust hoods.
  - G. **Screw based luminaires.** Screw based luminaires shall contain lamps that comply with Reference Joint Appendix JA8.
 

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(k)1G:** Luminaires with hard-wired ballasts for high intensity discharge lamps.
  - H. **Light Sources in Enclosed or Recessed Luminaires.** Lamps and other separable light sources that are not compliant with the JA8 elevated temperature requirements, including marking requirements, shall not be installed in enclosed or recessed luminaires.
  - I. **Light Sources in Drawers, Cabinets, and Linen Closets.** Light sources internal to drawers, cabinetry or linen closets shall not be required to comply with Table 150.0-A or be controlled by vacancy sensors provided that they are rated to consume no more than 5 watts of power and emit no more than 150 lumens, and are equipped with controls that automatically turn the lighting off when the drawer, cabinet or linen closet is closed.
2. **Interior Lighting Switching Devices and Controls.**
- A. All forward phase cut dimmers used with LED light sources shall comply with NEMA SSL 7A.
  - B. Exhaust fans shall be controlled separately from lighting systems.

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(k)2B:** Lighting integral to an exhaust fan may be on the same control as the fan provided the lighting can be turned OFF in accordance with the applicable provisions in Section 150.0(k)2 while allowing the fan to continue to operate.

- C. Lighting shall have readily accessible wall-mounted controls that allow the lighting to be manually turned ON and OFF.

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(k)2C:** Ceiling fans may provide control of integrated lighting via a remote control.

- D. Lighting controls and equipment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- E. No controls shall bypass a dimmer, occupant sensor or vacancy sensor function where that dimmer or sensor has been installed to comply with Section 150.0(k).
- F. Lighting controls shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 110.9.
- G. An Energy Management Control System (EMCS) may be used to comply with control requirements in Section 150.0(k) if at a minimum it provides the functionality of the specified controls in accordance with Section 110.9, meets the installation certificate requirements in Section 130.4, meets the EMCS requirements in Section 130.0(e), and complies with all other applicable requirements in Section 150.0(k)2.
- H. A multiscene programmable controller may be used to comply with dimmer requirements in Section 150.0(k) if at a minimum it provides the functionality of a dimmer in accordance with Section 110.9, and complies with all other applicable requirements in Section 150.0(k)2.
- I. In bathrooms, garages, laundry rooms, and utility rooms, at least one luminaire in each of these spaces shall be controlled by an occupant or vacancy sensor providing automatic-off functionality. If an occupant sensor is installed, it shall be initially configured to manual-on operation using the manual control required under Section 150.0(k)2C.
- J. Luminaires that are or contain light sources that meet Reference Joint Appendix JA8 requirements for dimming, and that are not controlled by occupancy or vacancy sensors, shall have dimming controls.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.0(k)2K:** Luminaires in closets less than 70 square feet.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.0(k)2K:** Luminaires in hallways.

- K. Undercabinet lighting shall be controlled separately from ceiling-installed lighting such that one can be turned on without turning on the other.

- 3. **Residential Outdoor Lighting.** In addition to meeting the requirements of Section 150.0(k)1A, luminaires providing residential outdoor lighting shall meet the following requirements, as applicable:

- A. For single-family residential buildings, outdoor lighting permanently mounted to a residential building, or to other buildings on the same lot, shall meet the requirement in item i and the requirements in either item ii or item iii:

- i. Controlled by a manual ON and OFF switch that permits the automatic actions of items ii or iii below; and
- ii. Controlled by a photocell and either a motion sensor or an automatic time switch control; or
- iii. Controlled by an astronomical time clock control.

Controls that override to ON shall not be allowed unless the override automatically returns the automatic control to its normal operation within 6 hours. An energy management control system that provides the specified lighting control functionality and complies with all requirements applicable to the specified controls may be used to meet these requirements.

- B. For low-rise residential buildings with four or more dwelling units, outdoor lighting for private patios, entrances, balconies, porches; and residential parking lots and carports with less than eight vehicles per site shall comply with either:
  - i. Section 150.0(k)3A; or

- ii. The applicable requirements in Sections 110.9, 130.0, 130.2, 130.4, 140.7 and 141.0.
  - C. For low-rise residential buildings with four or more dwelling units, any outdoor lighting for residential parking lots or carports with a total of eight or more vehicles per site and any outdoor lighting not regulated by Section 150.0(k)3B or 150.0(k)3D shall comply with the applicable requirements in Sections 110.9, 130.0, 130.2, 130.4, 140.7 and 141.0.
4. **Internally illuminated address signs.** Internally illuminated address signs shall either:
- A. Comply with Section 140.8; or
  - B. Consume no more than 5 watts of power.
5. **Residential Garages for Eight or More Vehicles.** Lighting for residential parking garages for eight or more vehicles shall comply with the applicable requirements for nonresidential garages in Sections 110.9, 130.0, 130.1, 130.4, 140.6, and 141.0.
6. **Interior Common Areas of Low-rise Multifamily Residential Buildings.**
- A. In a low-rise multifamily residential building where the total interior common area in a single building equals 20 percent or less of the floor area, permanently installed lighting for the interior common areas in that building shall comply with Table 150.0-A and be controlled by an occupant sensor.
  - B. In a low-rise multifamily residential building where the total interior common area in a single building equals more than 20 percent of the floor area, permanently installed lighting for the interior common areas in that building shall:
    - i. Comply with the applicable requirements in Sections 110.9, 130.0, 130.1, 140.6 and 141.0; and
    - ii. Lighting installed in corridors and stairwells shall be controlled by occupant sensors that reduce the lighting power in each space by at least 50 percent. The occupant sensors shall be capable of turning the light fully on and off from all designed paths of ingress and egress.
- (l) RESERVED
- (m) **Air-Distribution and Ventilation System Ducts, Plenums, and Fans.**
1. **CMC Compliance.**
- A. All air-distribution system ducts and plenums, including, but not limited to, mechanical closets and air-handler boxes, shall meet the requirements of the CMC Sections 601.0, 602.0, 603.0, 604.0, 605.0 and ANSI/SMACNA-006-2006 HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible 3rd Edition, incorporated herein by reference.
  - B. Portions of supply-air and return-air ducts and plenums of a space heating or cooling system shall either be insulated to:
    - i. a minimum installed level of R-6.0, or
    - ii. a minimum installed level of R-4.2 when the duct system is located entirely in conditioned space as confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the requirements of Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1.4.3.8.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.0(m)1B:** Portions of the duct system located in wall cavities are not required to be insulated if the following conditions are met:

    - i. The cavity, duct or plenum is located entirely inside the building's thermal envelope as confirmed by visual inspection.
    - ii. At all locations where portions of non-insulated cavities, ducts, or plenums make a transition into unconditioned space, the transition shall be air-sealed to prevent air infiltration into the cavity and be insulated to a minimum of R-6 as confirmed by visual inspection.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.0(m)1B:** Portions of the duct system completely exposed and surrounded by directly conditioned space are not required to be insulated.
  - C. Connections of metal ducts and the inner core of flexible ducts shall be mechanically fastened.

- D. Openings shall be sealed with mastic, tape, or other duct-closure system that meets the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A or UL 181B or aerosol sealant that meets the requirements of UL 723. If mastic or tape is used to seal openings greater than 1/4 inch, the combination of mastic and either mesh or tape shall be used.
- E. Building cavities, support platforms for air handlers, and plenums designed or constructed with materials other than sealed sheet metal, duct board or flexible duct shall not be used for conveying conditioned air. Building cavities and support platforms may contain ducts. Ducts installed in cavities and support platforms shall not be compressed to cause reductions in the cross-sectional area of the ducts.

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(m)1:** Ducts and fans integral to a wood heater or fireplace.

**2. Factory-Fabricated Duct Systems.**

- A. All factory-fabricated duct systems shall comply with UL 181 for ducts and closure systems, including collars, connections, and splices, and be labeled as complying with UL 181. UL 181 testing may be performed by UL laboratories or a laboratory approved by the Executive Director.
- B. All pressure-sensitive tapes, heat-activated tapes, and mastics used in the manufacture of rigid fiberglass ducts shall comply with UL 181 and UL 181A.
- C. All pressure-sensitive tapes and mastics used with flexible ducts shall comply with UL 181 and UL 181B.
- D. Joints and seams of duct systems and their components shall not be sealed with cloth back rubber adhesive duct tapes unless such tape is used in combination with mastic and drawbands.

**3. Field-Fabricated Duct Systems.**

- A. Factory-made rigid fiberglass and flexible ducts for field-fabricated duct systems shall comply with UL 181. All pressure-sensitive tapes, mastics, aerosol sealants, or other closure systems used for installing field-fabricated duct systems shall meet the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A, and UL 181B.
- B. Mastic sealants and mesh.
  - i. Sealants shall comply with the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A, and UL 181B, and be nontoxic and water resistant.
  - ii. Sealants for interior applications shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C731 and D2202, incorporated herein by reference.
  - iii. Sealants for exterior applications shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C731, C732, and D2202, incorporated herein by reference.
  - iv. Sealants and meshes shall be rated for exterior use.
- C. Pressure-sensitive tape. Pressure-sensitive tapes shall comply with the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A, and UL 181B.
- D. Joints and seams of duct systems and their components shall not be sealed with cloth back rubber adhesive duct tapes unless such tape is used in combination with mastic and drawbands.
- E. Drawbands used with flexible duct.
  - i. Drawbands shall be either stainless-steel worm-drive hose clamps or UV-resistant nylon duct ties.
  - ii. Drawbands shall have a minimum tensile strength rating of 150 pounds.
  - iii. Drawbands shall be tightened as recommended by the manufacturer with an adjustable tensioning tool.
- F. Aerosol-sealant closures.
  - i. Aerosol sealants shall meet the requirements of UL 723 and be applied according to manufacturer specifications.

- ii. Tapes or mastics used in combination with aerosol sealing shall meet the requirements of this section.
4. **Duct Insulation R-value Ratings.** All duct insulation product R-values shall be based on insulation only (excluding air films, vapor retarder, or other duct components) and tested C-values at 75°F mean temperature at the installed thickness, in accordance with ASTM C518 or ASTM C177, incorporated herein by reference, and certified pursuant to Section 110.8.
5. **Duct Insulation Thickness.** The installed thickness of duct insulation used to determine its R-value shall be determined as follows:
  - A. For duct board, duct liner, and factory-made rigid ducts not normally subjected to compression, the nominal insulation thickness shall be used.
  - B. For duct wrap, installed thickness shall be assumed to be 75 percent (25 percent compression) of nominal thickness.
  - C. For factory-made flexible air ducts, the installed thickness shall be determined by dividing the difference between the actual outside diameter and nominal inside diameter by two.
6. **Duct Labeling.** Insulated flexible duct products installed to meet this requirement shall include labels, in maximum intervals of 3 feet, showing the thermal performance R-value for the duct insulation itself (excluding air films, vapor retarder, or other duct components), based on the tests in Section 150.0(m)4 and the installed thickness determined by Section 150.0(m)5C.
7. **Backdraft Dampers.** All fan systems, regardless of volumetric capacity, that exchange air between the building conditioned space and the outside of the building shall be provided with backdraft or automatic dampers to prevent unintended air leakage through the fan system when the fan system is not operating.
8. **Gravity Ventilation Dampers.** All gravity ventilating systems that serve conditioned space shall be provided with either automatic or readily accessible, manually operated dampers in all openings to the outside except combustion inlet and outlet air openings and elevator shaft vents.
9. **Protection of Insulation.** Insulation shall be protected from damage, including that due to sunlight, moisture, equipment maintenance, and wind but not limited to the following: Insulation exposed to weather shall be suitable for outdoor service (e.g., protected by aluminum, sheet metal, painted canvas, or plastic cover). Cellular foam insulation shall be protected as above or painted with a coating that is water retardant and provides shielding from solar radiation that can cause degradation of the material.
10. **Porous Inner Core Flex Duct.** Flexible ducts having porous inner cores shall have a non-porous layer or air barrier between the inner core and the outer vapor barrier.
11. **Duct System Sealing and Leakage Testing.** When space conditioning systems utilize forced air duct systems to supply conditioned air to an occupiable space, the ducts shall be sealed, as confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing, in accordance with all applicable procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1, and the leakage compliance criteria specified in Reference Residential Appendix TABLE RA3.1-2, and conforming to one of the following Subsections A, B, or C as applicable:
  - A. For single family dwellings and townhouses with the air-handling unit installed and the ducts connected directly to the air handler, the total leakage of the duct system shall not exceed 5 percent of the nominal system air handler airflow as determined utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.1.
  - B. For single family dwellings and townhouses at the rough-in stage of construction prior to installation of the dwelling's interior finishing:
    - i. **Air-handling unit installed.** If the air-handling unit is installed and the ducts are connected directly to the air handler, the total leakage of the duct system shall not exceed 5 percent of the nominal system air handler airflow as determined utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Sections RA3.1.4.3.2, RA3.1.4.3.2.1 and RA3.1.4.3.3.
    - ii. **Air-handling unit not yet installed.** If the air-handling unit is not yet installed, the total leakage of the duct system shall not exceed 4 percent of the nominal system air handler airflow as determined utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Sections RA3.1.4.3.2, RA3.1.4.3.2.2 and RA3.1.4.3.3.

- C. For multifamily dwellings with the air-handling unit installed and the ducts connected directly to the air handler, regardless of duct system location:
- i. The total leakage of the duct system shall not exceed 12 percent of the nominal system air handler airflow as determined utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.1; or
  - ii. The duct system leakage to outside shall not exceed 6 percent of the nominal system air handler airflow as determined utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.4.

**12. Air Filtration.**

- A. System types specified in subsections i, ii, and iii shall be provided with air filters in accordance with Sections 150.0(m)12B, 150.0(m)12C, and 150.0(m)12D. System types specified in subsection i shall also comply with Section 150.0(m)12E.
- i. Mechanical space conditioning systems that supply air to an occupiable space through ductwork exceeding 10 ft (3 m) in length.
  - ii. Mechanical supply-only ventilation systems that provide outside air to an occupiable space.
  - iii. The supply side of mechanical balanced ventilation systems, including heat recovery ventilation systems, and energy recovery ventilation systems that provide outside air to an occupiable space.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.0(m)12A:** Evaporative coolers are exempt from the air filtration requirements in Section 150.0(m)12.

**B. System Design and Installation.**

- i. The system shall be designed to ensure that all recirculated air or outdoor air supplied to the occupiable space is filtered before passing through any system thermal conditioning components.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.0(m)12Bi:** For heat recovery ventilators and energy recovery ventilators the location of the filters required by Section 150.0(m)12 may be downstream of a system thermal conditioning component, provided the system is equipped with ancillary filtration upstream of the system's thermal conditioning component.

- ii. All systems shall be designed to accommodate the clean-filter pressure drop imposed by the system air filter(s). The design airflow rate, and maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop at the design airflow rate applicable to each air filter shall be determined and reported on labels according to subsection iv below.

Systems specified in Section 150.0(m)12Ai shall be equipped with air filters that meet either subsection a or b below.

- a. Nominal two-inch minimum depth filter(s) shall be sized by the system designer, or
- b. Nominal one-inch minimum depth filter(s) shall be allowed if the filter(s) are sized according to Equation 150.0-A, based on a maximum face velocity of 150 ft per minute, and according to the maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop specified in Section 150.0(m)12Dii.

$$A_{\text{face}} = Q_{\text{filter}} / V_{\text{face}} \quad (\text{Equation 150.0-A})$$

where

$A_{\text{face}}$  = air filter face area, the product of air filter nominal length x nominal width, ft<sup>2</sup>

$Q_{\text{filter}}$  = design airflow rate for the air filter, ft<sup>3</sup>/min

$V_{\text{face}}$  = air filter face velocity ≤ 150, ft/min

- iii. All system air filters shall be located and installed in such a manner as to be accessible for regular service by the system owner.

- iv. All system air filter installation locations shall be labeled to disclose the applicable design airflow rate and the maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop. The labels shall be permanently affixed to the air filter installation location, readily legible, and visible to a person replacing the air filter.
  - C. **Air Filter Efficiency.** The system shall be provided with air filter(s) having a designated efficiency equal to or greater than MERV 13 when tested in accordance with ASHRAE Standard 52.2, or a particle size efficiency rating equal to or greater than 50 percent in the 0.30-1.0  $\mu\text{m}$  range, and equal to or greater than 85 percent in the 1.0-3.0  $\mu\text{m}$  range when tested in accordance with AHRI Standard 680.
  - D. **Air Filter Pressure Drop.** All systems shall be provided with air filter(s) that conform to the applicable maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop specified in subsections i, ii, iii, or iv below, when tested using ASHRAE Standard 52.2, or as rated using AHRI Standard 680, for the applicable design airflow rate(s) for the system air filter(s).
    - i. The maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop determined by the system design for the nominal two-inch minimum depth air filter required by Section 150.0(m)12Biia, or
    - ii. A maximum of 25 PA (0.1 inches water) clean-filter pressure drop shall be allowed for a nominal one-inch depth air filter sized according to Section 150.0(m)12Biib, or
    - iii. For systems specified in 150.0(m)12Aii, and 150.0(m)12Aiii, the maximum allowable clean filter pressure drop determined by the system design.
    - iv. If EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.0(m)13B or D is utilized for compliance with cooling system airflow rate and fan efficacy requirements, the clean-filter pressure drop for the system air filter shall conform to the requirements given in TABLE 150.0-B or 150.0-C.
  - E. **Air Filter Product Labeling.** Systems described in 150.0(m)12Ai shall be equipped with air filters that have been labeled by the manufacturer to disclose the efficiency and pressure drop ratings that demonstrate conformance with Sections 150.0(m)12C and 150.0(m)12D.
13. **Space Conditioning System Airflow Rate and Fan Efficacy.** Space conditioning systems that utilize forced air ducts to supply cooling to an occupiable space shall:
- A. **Static Pressure Probe.** Have a hole for the placement of a static pressure probe (HSPP), or a permanently installed static pressure probe (PSPP) in the supply plenum downstream of the air conditioning evaporator coil. The size, location, and labeling of the HSPP or PSPP shall conform to the requirements specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.3.1.1 as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing; and
 

**EXCEPTION to 150.0(m)13A:** Systems that cannot conform to the specifications for hole location in Reference Residential Appendix Figure RA3.3-1 shall not be required to provide holes as described in Figure RA3.3-1.
  - B. **Single Zone Central Forced Air Systems.** Demonstrate, in every control mode, airflow greater than or equal to 350 CFM per ton of nominal cooling capacity through the return grilles, and an air-handling unit fan efficacy less than or equal to the maximum W/CFM specified in subsections i or ii below. The airflow rate and fan efficacy requirements in this section shall be confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures given in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.3.
    - i. 0.45 W/CFM for gas furnace air-handling units.
    - ii. 0.58 W/CFM for air-handling units that are not gas furnaces.
  - C. **Zonally Controlled Central Forced Air Systems.** Zonally controlled central forced air cooling systems shall be capable of simultaneously delivering, in every zonal control mode, an airflow from the dwelling, through the air handler fan and delivered to the dwelling, of greater than or equal to 350 CFM per ton of nominal cooling capacity, and operating at an air-handling unit fan efficacy of less than or equal to the maximum W/CFM specified in subsections i or ii below. The airflow rate and fan efficacy requirements in this section shall be confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the applicable procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.3.
    - i. 0.45 W/CFM for gas furnace air-handling units.

- ii. 0.58 W/CFM for air-handling units that are not gas furnaces.

- D. Small Duct High Velocity Forced Air Systems.** Demonstrate, in every control mode, airflow greater than or equal to 250 CFM per ton of nominal cooling capacity through the return grilles, and an air-handling unit fan efficacy less than or equal to 0.62 W/CFM as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures given in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.3

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.0(m)13B and D:** Standard ducted systems without zoning dampers may comply by meeting the applicable requirements in TABLE 150.0-B or 150.0-C as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Sections RA3.1.4.4 and RA3.1.4.5. The design clean-filter pressure drop requirements specified by Section 150.0(m)12Div for the system air filter(s) shall conform to the requirements given in TABLES 150.0-B and 150.0-C.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.0(m)13B and D:** Multispeed compressor systems or variable speed compressor systems shall verify airflow (cfm/ton) and fan efficacy (Watt/cfm) for system operation at the maximum compressor speed and the maximum air handler fan speed.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 150.0(m)13B:** Gas furnace air-handling units manufactured prior to July 3, 2019 shall comply with a fan efficacy value less than or equal to 0.58 w/cfm as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures given in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.3.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.0(m)13C:** Multispeed or variable speed compressor systems, or single speed compressor systems that utilize the performance compliance approach, shall demonstrate compliance with the airflow (cfm/ton) and fan efficacy (Watt/cfm) requirements of Section 150.0(m)13C by operating the system at maximum compressor capacity and system fan speed with all zones calling for conditioning, rather than in every zonal control mode.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.0(m)13C:** Gas furnace air-handling units manufactured prior to July 3, 2019 shall comply with a fan efficacy value less than or equal to 0.58 w/cfm as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures given in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.3.

**(n) Water Heating System.**

1. Systems using gas or propane water heaters to serve individual dwelling units shall include the following components:
  - A. A dedicated 125 volt, 20 amp electrical receptacle that is connected to the electric panel with a 120/240 volt 3 conductor, 10 AWG copper branch circuit, within 3 feet from the water heater and accessible to the water heater with no obstructions. In addition, all of the following:
    - i. Both ends of the unused conductor shall be labeled with the word “spare” and be electrically isolated; and
    - ii. A reserved single pole circuit breaker space in the electrical panel adjacent to the circuit breaker for the branch circuit in A above and labeled with the words “Future 240V Use”; and
  - B. A Category III or IV vent, or a Type B vent with straight pipe between the outside termination and the space where the water heater is installed; and
  - C. A condensate drain that is no more than 2 inches higher than the base of the installed water heater, and allows natural draining without pump assistance, and
  - D. A gas supply line with a capacity of at least 200,000 Btu/hr.
2. Water heating recirculation loops serving multiple dwelling units shall meet the requirements of Section 110.3(c)5.
3. Solar water-heating systems and collectors shall be certified and rated by the Solar Rating and Certification Corporation (SRCC), the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials, Research and Testing (IAPMO R&T), or by a listing agency that is approved by the Executive Director.

4. Instantaneous water heaters with an input rating greater than 6.8 kBTU/hr (2kW) shall meet the requirements of Section 110.3(c)7.
- (o) **Requirements for Ventilation and Indoor Air Quality.** All dwelling units shall meet the requirements of ASHRAE Standard 62.2, Ventilation and Acceptable Indoor Air Quality in Residential Buildings subject to the amendments specified in Section 150.0(o)1 below. All dwelling units shall comply with Section 150.0(o)2 below.
1. Amendments to ASHRAE 62.2 requirements.
    - A. Window operation is not a permissible method of providing the dwelling unit ventilation airflow specified in subsections C, E, or F below.
    - B. Continuous operation of central forced air system air handlers used in central fan integrated ventilation systems is not a permissible method of providing the dwelling unit ventilation airflow required in Section 4 of ASHRAE Standard 62.2.
    - C. Single family detached dwelling units, and attached dwelling units not sharing ceilings or floors with other dwelling units, occupiable spaces, public garages, or commercial spaces shall have mechanical ventilation airflow provided at rates determined in accordance with ASHRAE 62.2 Sections 4.1.1 and 4.1.2 as specified in subsections i, ii, and iii below.

- i. Total Required Ventilation Rate [ASHRAE 62.2:4.1.1].

The total required ventilation rate shall be calculated using Equation 150.0-B

$$Q_{tot} = 0.03A_{floor} + 7.5(N_{br} + 1) \quad \text{(Equation 150.0-B)}$$

where

$Q_{tot}$  = total required ventilation rate, cfm

$A_{floor}$  = dwelling-unit floor area, ft<sup>2</sup>

$N_{br}$  = number of bedrooms (not to be less than 1)

- ii. Effective Annual Average Infiltration Rate. The effective annual average infiltration rate shall be determined in accordance with subsections a and b:

- a. An enclosure leakage rate in cubic feet per minute at 50 Pa (0.2 inch water) ( $Q_{50}$ ) shall be determined by either subsection 1, or subsection 2 below.

1.  $Q_{50}$  shall be calculated based on the conditioned volume of the dwelling unit and a default value for dwelling unit envelope leakage of 2 air changes per hour at 50 PA (0.2 inch water) (2 ACH<sub>50</sub>) as specified by equation 150.0-C below.

$$Q_{50} = V_{du} \times 2 \text{ ACH}_{50} / 60 \text{ min} \quad \text{(Equation 150.0-C)}$$

where

$Q_{50}$  = leakage rate at 50 Pa

$V_{du}$  = dwelling unit conditioned volume, ft<sup>3</sup>

ACH<sub>50</sub> = air changes per hour at 50 Pa (0.2 inch water)

2. If dwelling unit envelope leakage less than 2 ACH<sub>50</sub> is confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing,  $Q_{50}$  shall be calculated according to Equation 150.0-D below, using the value for dwelling unit envelope leakage less than 2 ACH<sub>50</sub> verified by the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.8.

$$Q_{50} = V_{du} \times \text{Verified } ACH_{50} / 60 \text{ min} \quad (\text{Equation 150.0-D})$$

where

$Q_{50}$  = leakage rate at 50 Pa

$V_{du}$  = dwelling unit conditioned volume, ft<sup>3</sup>

$ACH_{50}$  = air changes per hour at 50 Pa (0.2 inch water)

- b. The Effective Annual Average Infiltration Rate ( $Q_{inf}$ ) shall be calculated using Equation 150.0-E [ASHRAE 62.2:4.1.2.1].

$$Q_{inf} = 0.052 \times Q_{50} \times wsf \times [H/H_r]^z \quad (\text{Equation 150.0-E})$$

where

$Q_{inf}$  = effective annual infiltration rate, cfm (L/s)

$Q_{50}$  = leakage rate at 50 Pa from equation 150.0-C, or equation 150.0-D

$wsf$  = weather and shielding factor from Table 150.0-D

$H$  = vertical distance between the lowest and highest above-grade points within the pressure boundary, ft (m)

$H_r$  = reference height, 8.2 ft (2.5 m)

$z = 0.4$  for the purpose of calculating the Effective Annual Average Infiltration Rate

- iii. Required Mechanical Ventilation Rate [ASHRAE 62.2:4.1.2]

The Required Mechanical Ventilation Rate ( $Q_{fan}$ ) shall be calculated using Equation 150.0-F

$$Q_{fan} = Q_{tot} - \Phi (Q_{inf} \times A_{ext}) \quad (\text{Equation 150.0-F})$$

where

$Q_{fan}$  = required mechanical ventilation rate, cfm (L/s)

$Q_{tot}$  = total required ventilation rate, cfm (L/s) from Equation 150.0-B.

$Q_{inf}$  = effective annual average infiltration rate, cfm (L/s) from Equation 150.0-E

$A_{ext} = 1$  for single-family detached homes, or the ratio of exterior envelope surface area that is not attached to garages or other dwelling units to total envelope surface area for attached dwelling units not sharing ceilings or floors with other dwelling units, occupiable spaces, public garages, or commercial spaces.

$\Phi = 1$  for balanced ventilation systems and  $Q_{inf}/Q_{tot}$  otherwise

- D. Air filtration shall conform to the specifications in Section 150.0(m)12. Compliance with ASHRAE 62.2 Sections 6.7 (Minimum Filtration) and 6.7.1 (Filter Pressure Drop) shall not be required.
- E. Multifamily attached dwelling units shall have mechanical ventilation airflow provided at rates in accordance with Equation 150.0-B [ASHRAE 62.2:4.1.1], and comply with one of the following subsections i or ii below. When subsection ii below is utilized for compliance, all dwelling units in the multifamily building shall use the same ventilation system type.
- i. A balanced ventilation system shall provide the required dwelling-unit ventilation airflow, or
  - ii. Continuously operating supply ventilation systems, or continuously operating exhaust ventilation systems shall be allowed to be used to provide the required dwelling unit ventilation airflow if the dwelling-unit envelope leakage is less than or equal to 0.3 cubic feet per minute at 50 Pa (0.2 inch water) per ft<sup>2</sup> of dwelling unit envelope surface area as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.8.

- F. Multifamily building central ventilation systems that serve multiple dwelling units shall be balanced to provide ventilation airflow for each dwelling unit served at a rate equal to or greater than the rate specified by Equation 150.0-B [ASHRAE 62.2:4.1.1], but no more than twenty percent greater than the specified rate. These systems shall utilize balancing means to ensure the dwelling-unit airflows can be adjusted to meet this balancing requirement. These system balancing means may include but not be limited to constant air regulation devices, orifice plates, and variable speed central fans.
- G. Kitchen range hoods shall be rated for sound in accordance with Section 7.2 of ASHRAE 62.2.  
EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(o)1G: Kitchen range hoods may be rated for sound at a static pressure determined at working speed as specified in HVI 916 section 7.2.
- H. Compliance with ASHRAE 62.2 Section 6.5.2 (Space Conditioning System Ducts) shall not be required.
- I. Compliance with ASHRAE 62.2 Section 4.4 (Control and Operation) shall require manual switches associated with dwelling unit ventilation systems to have a label clearly displaying the following text, or equivalent text: "This switch controls the indoor air quality ventilation for the home. Leave it on unless the outdoor air quality is very poor."

## 2. Field Verification and Diagnostic Testing.

- A. **Airflow Performance.** The dwelling unit ventilation airflow required by Sections 150.0(o)1C, 150.0(o)1E, and 150.0(o)1F shall be confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the applicable procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.7.
  - B. **Kitchen Range Hoods.** The installed kitchen range hood shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.7.4.3 to confirm the model is rated by HVI to comply with the following requirements:
    - i. The minimum ventilation airflow rate as specified in Section 5 of ASHRAE 62.2.
    - ii. The maximum sound rating as specified in Section 150.0(o)1G.
- (p) **Pool Systems and Equipment Installation.** Any residential pool system or equipment installed shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 110.4, as well as the requirements listed in this section.

### 1. Pump sizing and flow rate.

- A. All pumps and pump motors installed shall be listed in the Commission's directory of certified equipment and shall comply with the Appliance Efficiency Regulations.
- B. All pump flow rates shall be calculated using the following system equation:

$$H = C \times F^2$$

WHERE:

H is the total system head in feet of water.

F is the flow rate in gallons per minute (gpm).

C is a coefficient based on the volume of the pool:

0.0167 for pools less than or equal to 17,000 gallons.

0.0082 for pools greater than 17,000 gallons.

- C. Filtration pumps shall be sized, or if programmable, shall be programmed, so that the filtration flow rate is not greater than the rate needed to turn over the pool water volume in 6 hours or 36 gpm, whichever is greater; and
- D. Pump motors used for filtration with a capacity of 1 hp or more shall be multi-speed; and
- E. Each auxiliary pool load shall be served by either separate pumps or the system shall be served by a multi-speed pump; and

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.0(p)1E:** Pumps less than 1 hp may be single speed.

- F. Multi-speed pumps shall have controls which default to the filtration flow rate when no auxiliary pool loads are operating; and
  - G. For multi-speed pumps, the controls shall default to the filtration flow rate setting within 24 hours and shall have an override capability for servicing.
2. **System piping.**
- A. A length of straight pipe that is greater than or equal to at least 4 pipe diameters shall be installed before the pump; and
  - B. Pool piping shall be sized so that the velocity of the water at maximum flow for auxiliary pool loads does not exceed 8 feet per second in the return line and 6 feet per second in the suction line; and
  - C. All elbows shall be sweep elbows or of an elbow-type that has a pressure drop of less than the pressure drop of straight pipe with a length of 30 pipe diameters.
3. **Filters.** Filters shall be at least the size specified in NSF/ANSI 50 for public pool intended applications.
4. **Valves.** Minimum diameter of backwash valves shall be 2 inches or the diameter of the return pipe, whichever is greater.
- (q) **Fenestration Products.** Fenestration separating conditioned space from unconditioned space or outdoors shall meet the requirements of either Item 1 or 2 below:
- 1. Fenestration, including skylight products, must have a maximum U-factor of 0.58.
  - 2. The weighted average U-factor of all fenestration, including skylight products, shall not exceed 0.58.
- EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.0(q)1:** Up to 10 square feet of fenestration area or 0.5 percent of the Conditioned Floor Area, whichever is greater, is exempt from the maximum U-factor requirement.
- EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.0(q)1:** For dual-glazed greenhouse or garden windows, up to 30 square feet of fenestration area is exempt from the maximum U-factor requirement.
- (r) **Solar Ready Buildings.** Shall meet the requirements of Section 110.10 applicable to the building project.

TABLE 150.0-A CLASSIFICATION OF HIGH EFFICACY LIGHT SOURCES

<b>High Efficacy Light Sources</b>	
Light sources shall comply with one of the columns below:	
<p>Light sources in this column other than those installed in ceiling recessed downlight luminaires are classified as high efficacy and are <b>not</b> required to comply with Reference Joint Appendix JA8</p>	<p>Light sources in this column are only considered to be high efficacy if they are certified to the Commission as High Efficacy Light Sources in accordance with Reference Joint Appendix JA8 and marked as required by JA8.</p>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Pin-based linear fluorescent or compact fluorescent light sources using electronic ballasts.</li> <li>2. Pulse-start metal halide light sources.</li> <li>3. High pressure sodium light sources.</li> <li>4. Luminaires with hardwired high frequency generator and induction lamp.</li> <li>5. LED light sources installed outdoors.</li> <li>6. Inseparable SSL luminaires containing colored light sources that are installed to provide decorative lighting.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>8. All light sources installed in ceiling recessed downlight luminaires. Note that ceiling recessed downlight luminaires shall not have screw bases regardless of lamp type as described in Section 150.0(k)1C.</li> <li>9. Any light source not otherwise listed in this table.</li> </ol>

TABLE 150.0-B: Return Duct Sizing for Single Return Duct Systems

Return duct length shall not exceed 30 feet and shall contain no more than 180 degrees of bend. If the total bending exceeds 90 degrees, one bend shall be a metal elbow.		
Return grille devices shall be labeled in accordance with the requirements in Section 150.0(m)12Biv to disclose the grille's design airflow rate and a maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop of 25 Pa (0.1 inches water) for the air filter when tested using ASHRAE Standard 52.2, or as rated in accordance with AHRI Standard 680 for the design airflow rate for the return grille.		
System Nominal Cooling Capacity (Ton)*	Return Duct Minimum Nominal Diameter (inch)	Minimum Total Return Filter Grille Nominal Area (inch <sup>2</sup> )
1.5	16	500
2.0	18	600
2.5	20	800
*Not applicable to systems with nominal cooling capacity greater than 2.5 tons or less than 1.5 ton		

TABLE 150.0-C: Return Duct Sizing for Multiple Return Duct Systems

Each return duct length shall not exceed 30 feet and shall contain no more than 180 degrees of bend. If the total bending exceeds 90 degrees, one bend shall be a metal elbow.			
Return grille devices shall be labeled in accordance with the requirements in Section 150.0(m)12Biv to disclose the grille's design airflow rate and a maximum allowable clean-filter pressure drop of 25 Pa (0.1 inches water) for the air filter when tested using ASHRAE Standard 52.2, or as rated in accordance with AHRI Standard 680 for the design airflow rate for the return grille.			
System Nominal Cooling Capacity (Ton)*	Return Duct 1 Minimum Nominal Diameter (inch)	Return Duct 2 Minimum Nominal Diameter (inch)	Minimum Total Return Filter Grille Nominal Area (inch <sup>2</sup> )
1.5	12	10	500
2.0	14	12	600
2.5	14	14	800
3.0	16	14	900
3.5	16	16	1000
4.0	18	18	1200
5.0	20	20	1500
*Not applicable to systems with nominal cooling capacity greater than 5.0 tons or less than 1.5 tons.			

TABLE 150.0-D: Infiltration Effectiveness Weather and Shielding Factors [ASHRAE 62.2:Table B1]

TMY3	wsf	Weather Station	Latitude	Longitude	State
690150	0.50	Twenty-nine Palms	34.30	-116.17	California
722860	0.43	March AFB	33.90	-117.25	California
722868	0.45	Palm Springs Intl	33.83	-116.50	California
722869	0.42	Riverside Muni	33.95	-117.45	California
722880	0.39	Burbank–Glendale–Pasadena AP	34.20	-118.35	California
722885	0.39	Santa Monica Muni	34.02	-118.45	California
722886	0.39	Van Nuys Airport	34.22	-118.48	California
722895	0.55	Lompoc (AWOS)	34.67	-120.47	California
722897	0.51	San Luis Co Rgnl	35.23	-120.63	California
722899	0.45	Chino Airport	33.97	-117.63	California
722900	0.38	San Diego Lindbergh Field	32.73	-117.17	California
722903	0.39	San Diego/Montgomery	32.82	-117.13	California
722904	0.40	Chula Vista Brown Field NAAS	32.58	-116.98	California
722906	0.39	San Diego North Island NAS	32.70	-117.20	California
722926	0.40	Camp Pendleton MCAS	33.30	-117.35	California
722927	0.38	Carlsbad/Palomar	33.13	-117.28	California
722930	0.39	San Diego Miramar NAS	32.87	-117.13	California
722950	0.42	Los Angeles Intl Arpt	33.93	-118.40	California
722956	0.38	Jack Northrop Fld H	33.92	-118.33	California
722970	0.38	Long Beach Daugherty Fld	33.83	-118.17	California
722976	0.34	Fullerton Municipal	33.87	-117.98	California
722977	0.36	Santa Ana John Wayne AP	33.68	-117.87	California
723805	0.51	Needles Airport	34.77	-114.62	California
723810	0.59	Edwards AFB	34.90	-117.87	California
723815	0.58	Daggett Barstow–Daggett AP	34.85	-116.80	California
723816	0.62	Lancaster Gen Wm Fox Field	34.73	-118.22	California
723820	0.57	Palmdale Airport	34.63	-118.08	California
723830	0.68	Sandberg	34.75	-118.72	California
723840	0.43	Bakersfield Meadows Field	35.43	-119.05	California
723890	0.45	Fresno Yosemite Intl AP	36.78	-119.72	California
723895	0.42	Porterville (AWOS)	36.03	-119.07	California
723896	0.43	Visalia Muni (AWOS)	36.32	-119.40	California
723910	0.45	Point Mugu Nf	34.12	-119.12	California
723925	0.44	Santa Barbara Municipal AP	34.43	-119.85	California
723926	0.43	Camarillo (AWOS)	34.22	-119.08	California
723927	0.45	Oxnard Airport	34.20	-119.20	California
723940	0.52	Santa Maria Public Arpt	34.92	-120.47	California

TABLE 150.0-D: Infiltration Effectiveness Weather and Shielding Factors [ASHRAE 62.2:Table B1] (continued)

TMY3	wsf	Weather Station	Latitude	Longitude	State
723965	0.53	Paso Robles Municipal Arpt	35.67	-120.63	California
724800	0.55	Bishop Airport	37.37	-118.35	California
724815	0.46	Merced/Macready Fld	37.28	-120.52	California
724830	0.51	Sacramento Executive Arpt	38.50	-121.50	California
724837	0.45	Beale AFB	39.13	-121.43	California
724838	0.50	Yuba Co	39.10	-121.57	California
724839	0.51	Sacramento Metropolitan AP	38.70	-121.58	California
724915	0.49	Monterey Naf	36.60	-121.87	California
724917	0.54	Salinas Municipal AP	36.67	-121.60	California
724920	0.50	Stockton Metropolitan Arpt	37.90	-121.23	California
724926	0.47	Modesto City-County AP	37.63	-120.95	California
724927	0.53	Livermore Municipal	37.70	-121.82	California
724930	0.54	Oakland Metropolitan Arpt	37.72	-122.22	California
724935	0.47	Hayward Air Term	37.67	-122.12	California
724936	0.53	Concord-Buchanan Field	38.00	-122.05	California
724940	0.60	San Francisco Intl AP	37.62	-122.40	California
724945	0.48	San Jose Intl AP	37.37	-121.93	California
724955	0.55	Napa Co. Airport	38.22	-122.28	California
724957	0.49	Santa Rosa (AWOS)	38.52	-122.82	California
725845	0.44	Blue Canyon AP	39.30	-120.72	California
725846	0.66	Truckee-Tahoe	39.32	-120.13	California
725847	0.64	South Lake Tahoe	38.90	-120.00	California
725905	0.47	Ukiah Municipal AP	39.13	-123.20	California
725910	0.50	Red Bluff Municipal Arpt	40.15	-122.25	California
725920	0.47	Redding Municipal Arpt	40.52	-122.32	California
725945	0.56	Arcata Airport	40.98	-124.10	California
725946	0.60	Crescent City Faa Ai	41.78	-124.23	California
725955	0.55	Montague Siskiyou County AP	41.78	-122.47	California
725958	0.59	Alturas	41.50	-120.53	California
745090	0.45	Mountain View Moffett Fld NAS	37.40	-122.05	California
745160	0.67	Travis Field AFB	38.27	-121.93	California
746120	0.52	China Lake Naf	35.68	-117.68	California
747020	0.50	Lemoore Reeves NAS	36.33	-119.95	California
747185	0.46	Imperial	32.83	-115.58	California
747187	0.46	Palm Springs Thermal AP	33.63	-116.17	California
747188	0.48	Blythe Riverside Co Arpt	33.62	-114.72	California

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

## SUBCHAPTER 8

# LOW-RISE RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS - PERFORMANCE AND PRESCRIPTIVE COMPLIANCE APPROACHES

---

### SECTION 150.1 – PERFORMANCE AND PRESCRIPTIVE COMPLIANCE APPROACHES FOR LOW-RISE RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS

(a) **Basic Requirements.** Low-rise residential buildings shall meet all of the following:

1. The applicable requirements of Sections 110.0 through 110.10.
2. The applicable requirements of Section 150.0 (mandatory features).
3. Either the performance standards or the prescriptive standards set forth in this section for the Climate Zone in which the building is located. Climate zones are shown in Reference Joint Appendix JA2 – Weather/Climate Data.

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.1(a)3:** If a single contiguous subdivision or tract falls in more than one Climate Zone, all buildings in the subdivision or tract may be designed to meet the performance or prescriptive standards for the Climate Zone that contains 50 percent or more of the dwelling units.

**NOTE:** The Commission periodically updates, publishes, and makes available to interested persons and local enforcement agencies precise descriptions of the Climate Zones, as specified in Reference Joint Appendix JA2 – Weather/Climate Data.

**NOTE:** The requirements of Sections 150.0(a) through 150.0(r) apply to newly constructed buildings and Sections 150.2(a) and 150.2(b) specifies changes to the requirements of Sections 150.1(a) through 150.1(c) that apply to additions or alterations.

(b) **Performance Standards.** A building complies with the performance standards if the energy consumption calculated for the Proposed Design Building is no greater than the energy budget calculated for the Standard Design Building using Commission-certified compliance software as specified by the Alternative Calculation Methods Approval Manual.

1. **Newly Constructed Buildings.** The Energy Budget for newly constructed buildings is expressed in terms of the Energy Design Rating, which is based on TDV energy. The Energy Design Rating (EDR) has two components, the Energy Efficiency Design Rating, and the Solar Electric Generation and Demand Flexibility Design Rating. The Solar Electric Generation and Demand Flexibility Design Rating shall be subtracted from the Energy Efficiency Design Rating to determine the Total Energy Design Rating. The Proposed Building shall separately comply with the Energy Efficiency Design Rating and the Total Energy Design Rating.

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.1(b)1.** A community shared solar electric generation system, or other renewable electric generation system, and/or community shared battery storage system, which provides dedicated power, utility energy reduction credits, or payments for energy bill reductions, to the permitted building and is approved by the Energy Commission as specified in Title 24, Part 1, Section 10-115, may offset part or all of the solar electric generation system Energy Design Rating required to comply with the Standards, as calculated according to methods established by the Commission in the Residential ACM Reference Manual.

2. **Additions and Alterations to Existing Buildings.** The Energy Budget for additions and alterations is expressed in terms of TDV energy.

### 3. Compliance Demonstration Requirements for Performance Standards.

- A. **Certificate of Compliance and Application for a Building Permit.** The application for a building permit shall include documentation pursuant to Sections 10-103(a)1 and 10-103(a)2 which demonstrates, using an approved calculation method, that the building has been designed so that its Energy Efficiency Design Rating and the total EDR meets or exceeds the Standard design EDR for the applicable Climate Zone.

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.1(b)3A: Multiple Orientation:** A permit applicant may demonstrate compliance with the energy budget requirements of Section 150.1(a) and (b) for any orientation of the same building model if the documentation demonstrates that the building model with its proposed designs and features would comply in each of the four cardinal orientations.

- B. **Field Verification.** When performance of installed features, materials, components, manufactured devices or systems above the minimum specified in Section 150.1(c) is necessary for the building to comply with Section 150.1(b), or is necessary to achieve a more stringent local ordinance, field verification shall be performed in accordance with the applicable requirements in the following subsections, and the results of the verification(s) shall be documented on applicable Certificates of Installation pursuant to Section 10-103(a)3 and applicable Certificates of Verification pursuant to Section 10-103(a)5.
- i. **SEER Rating.** When performance compliance requires installation of a space conditioning system with a SEER rating that is greater than the minimum SEER rating required by TABLE 150.1-A or B, the installed system shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.4.4.1.
  - ii. **EER Rating.** When performance compliance requires installation of a space conditioning system with an EER rating greater than the standard design value for EER, the installed system shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.4.4.1.
  - iii. **Low Leakage Air Handler.** When performance compliance requires installation of a low leakage air-handling unit, the installed air handling unit shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1.4.3.9.
  - iv. **HSPF Rating.** When performance compliance requires installation of a heat pump system with an HSPF rating that is greater than the minimum HSPF rating required by TABLE 150.1-A or B, the installed system shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.4.4.1.
  - v. **Heat Pump - Rated Heating Capacity.** When performance compliance requires installation of a heat pump system, the heating capacity values at 47 degrees F and 17 degrees F shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.4.4.2.
  - vi. **Whole House Fan.** When performance compliance requires installation of a whole-house fan, the whole house fan ventilation airflow rate and fan efficacy shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.9.
  - vii. **Central Fan Ventilation Cooling System.** When performance compliance requires installation of a central fan ventilation cooling system, the installed system shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.3.4.
  - viii. **Building Enclosure Air Leakage.** When performance compliance requires a building enclosure leakage rate that is lower than the standard design, the building enclosure shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.8.
  - ix. **Quality Insulation Installation (QII).** When performance compliance requires field verification of QII, the building insulation system shall be field verified in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.5.

- (c) **Prescriptive Standards/Component Package.** Buildings that comply with the prescriptive standards shall be designed, constructed, and equipped to meet all of the requirements for the appropriate Climate Zone shown in TABLE 150.1-A or B. In TABLE 150.1-A and TABLE 150.1-B, a NA (not allowed) means that feature is not

permitted in a particular Climate Zone and a NR (no requirement) means that there is no prescriptive requirement for that feature in a particular Climate Zone. Installed components shall meet the following requirements:

1. **Insulation.**

- A. Roof and Ceiling insulation shall be installed in a ventilated attic with an R-value equal to or greater than that shown in TABLE 150.1-A or B meeting options i or ii below.
- i. Option A: RESERVED.
  - ii. Option B: A minimum R-value of insulation installed between the roof rafters in contact with the roof deck and an additional layer of ceiling insulation located between the attic and the conditioned space when meeting Section 150.1(c)9A; or
  - iii. Option C: A minimum R-value of ceiling insulation located between the attic and the conditioned space when meeting Section 150.1(c)9B.

**NOTE:** Low rise residential single family and multifamily buildings with the ducts and air handler located in the conditioned space, as specified by Section 150.1(c)9B, need only comply with insulation requirements of Option C.

B. **Walls.**

- i. Framed exterior walls shall be insulated such that the exterior wall has an assembly U-factor equal to or less than that shown in TABLE 150.1-A or B. The U-factors shown are maximum U-factors for the exterior wall assembly.
  - ii. Mass walls above grade and below grade shall be insulated such that the wall has an assembly U-factor equal to or less than that shown in TABLE 150.1-A or B, or walls shall be insulated with continuous insulation that has an R-value equal to or greater than that shown in TABLE 150.1-A or B. “Interior” denotes continuous insulation installed on the inside surface of the wall, and “exterior” denotes continuous insulation installed on the outside surface of the wall.
  - iii. Other unframed exterior walls, excluding mass walls, shall meet the requirements for framed walls shown in TABLE 150.1-A or B.
- C. Raised-floors shall be insulated such that the floor assembly has an assembly U-factor equal to or less than shown in TABLE 150.1-A or B, or shall be insulated between wood framing with insulation having an R-value equal to or greater than shown in TABLE 150.1-A or B.

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.1(c)1C:** Raised-floor insulation may be omitted if the foundation walls are insulated to meet the wall insulation minimums shown in TABLE 150.1-A or B, and a vapor retarder is placed over the entire floor of the crawl space, and the vents are fitted with automatically operated louvers, and the requirements of Reference Residential Appendix RA4.5.1 are met.

- D. Slab floor perimeter insulation shall be installed with a U-factor equal to or less than or R-value equal to or greater than shown in TABLE 150.1-A or B. The minimum depth of concrete-slab floor perimeter insulation shall be 16 inches or the depth of the footing of the building, whichever is less.

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.1(c)1:** The insulation requirements of TABLE 150.1-A and TABLE 150.1-B may also be met by ceiling, roof deck, wall, or floor assemblies that meet the required maximum U-factors using a U-factor calculation method that considers the thermal effects of all elements of the assembly and is approved by the Executive Director.

- E. All buildings shall comply with the Quality Insulation Installation (QII) requirements shown in TABLE 150.1-A or B. When QII is required, insulation installation shall meet the criteria specified in Reference Appendix RA3.5.

2. **Radiant Barrier.** A radiant barrier required in TABLE 150.1-A or B shall meet the requirements specified in Section 110.8(j), and shall meet the installation criteria specified in the Reference Residential Appendix RA4.

3. **Fenestration.**

- A. Installed fenestration products, including glazed doors, shall have an area weighted average U-factor and Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC) meeting the applicable fenestration values in TABLE 150.1-A or B and shall be determined in accordance with Sections 110.6(a)2 and 110.6(a)3.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.1(c)3A:** For each dwelling unit up to 3 square feet of new glazing area installed in doors and up to 3 square feet of new tubular skylights area with dual-pane diffusers shall not be required to meet the U-factor and SHGC requirements of TABLE 150.1-A or B.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.1(c)3A:** For each dwelling unit up to 16 square feet of new skylight area with a maximum U-factor of 0.55 and a maximum SHGC of 0.30.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 150.1(c)3A** For fenestration containing chromogenic type glazing:

- i. The lower-rated labeled U-factor and SHGC shall be used with automatic controls to modulate the amount of solar gain and light transmitted into the space in multiple steps in response to daylight levels or solar intensity;
- ii. Chromogenic glazing shall be considered separately from other fenestration; and
- iii. Area-weighted averaging with other fenestration that is not chromatic shall not be permitted and shall be determined in accordance with Section 110.6(a).

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 150.1(c)3A:** For dwelling units containing unrated site-built fenestration that meets the maximum area restriction, the U-factor and SHGC can be determined in accordance with the Nonresidential Reference Appendix NA6 or use default values in TABLE 110.6-A and TABLE 110.6-B.

- B. The maximum total fenestration area shall not exceed the percentage of conditioned floor area, CFA, as indicated in TABLE 150.1-A or B. Total fenestration includes skylights and west-facing glazing.
- C. The maximum west-facing fenestration area shall not exceed the percentage of conditioned floor area as indicated in TABLE 150.1-A or B. West-facing fenestration area includes skylights tilted in any direction when the pitch is less than 1:12.
4. **Shading.** Where TABLE 150.1-A or B requires a Maximum SHGC, the requirements shall be met by one of the following:
- A. Complying with the required SHGC pursuant to Section 150.1(c)3A; or
  - B. An exterior operable shading louver or other exterior shading device that meets the required SHGC; or
  - C. A combination of Items A and B to achieve the same performance as achieved in Section 150.1(c)3A.
  - D. For south-facing glazing only, optimal overhangs shall be installed so that the south-facing glazing is fully shaded at solar noon on August 21 and substantially exposed to direct sunlight at solar noon on December 21.
  - E. Exterior shading devices must be permanently secured with attachments or fasteners that are not intended for removal.

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.1(c)4E:** Where the California Building Code (CBC) requires emergency egress or where compliance would conflict with Health and Safety regulations.

5. **Doors.** Installed swinging door products separating conditioned space from outside or adjacent unconditioned space, but not including glazed door products, shall have an area-weighted average U-factor no greater than the applicable door value in TABLE 150.1-A or B and shall be determined in accordance with Section 110.6(a)2. Glazed door products are treated as fenestration products in Sections 150.1(c)3 and 150.1(c)4.

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.1(c)5:** Swinging doors between the garage and conditioned space that are required to have fire protection are not required to meet the applicable door value in TABLE 150.1-A or B.

6. **Heating System Type.** Heating system types shall be installed as required in TABLE 150.1-A or B.

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.1(c)6:** A supplemental heating unit may be installed in a space served directly or indirectly by a primary heating system, provided that the unit thermal capacity does not exceed 2 kW or 7,000 Btu/hr and is controlled by a time-limiting device not exceeding 30 minutes.

7. **Space Heating and Space Cooling.** All space heating and space cooling equipment shall comply with minimum Appliance Efficiency Regulations as specified in Sections 110.0 through 110.2 and meet all applicable requirements of Sections 150.0 and 150.1(c)7A.
- A. **Refrigerant Charge.** When refrigerant charge verification or fault indicator display is shown as required by TABLE 150.1-A or B, the system shall comply with either 150.1(c)7Ai or 150.1(c)7A ii:
- i. air-cooled air conditioners and air-source heat pumps, including but not limited to ducted split systems, ducted packaged systems, small duct high velocity systems, and mini-split systems, shall comply with subsections a, b and c, unless the system is of a type that cannot be verified using the specified procedures:
    - a. Have measurement access holes (MAH) installed according to the specifications in the Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.2.3; and
    - b. System airflow rate in accordance with subsection I or II below, shall be confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with all applicable procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3. 3 or an approved alternative procedure as specified by RA1; and
      - I. For small duct high velocity systems the system airflow rate shall be greater than or equal to 250 cfm per ton; or
      - II. For all other air-cooled air conditioner or air-source heat pump systems the system airflow rate shall be greater than or equal to 350 cfm per ton.
    - c. The installer shall charge the system according to manufacturer's specifications. Refrigerant charge shall be verified according to one of the following options, as applicable:
      - I. The installer and rater shall perform the standard charge procedure as specified by Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.2 or an approved alternative procedure as specified by RA1; or
      - II. The system shall be equipped with a fault indicator display (FID) device that meets the specifications of Reference Joint Appendix JA6. The installer shall verify the refrigerant charge and FID device in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.4.2. The HERS Rater shall verify FID device in accordance with the procedures in Section RA3.4.2; or
      - III. The installer shall perform the weigh-in charging procedure as specified by Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.3.1 provided the system is of a type that can be verified using the RA3.2.2 standard charge verification procedure and RA3.3 airflow rate verification procedure or approved alternatives in RA1. The HERS Rater shall verify the charge using RA3.2.2 and RA3.3 or approved alternatives in RA1.

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.1(c)7Aia:** Systems that cannot conform to the specifications for hole location in Reference Residential Appendix Figure RA3.2-1, shall not be required to provide holes as described in Figure RA3.2-1.

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.1(c)7Aib:** Standard ducted systems without zoning dampers may comply with the minimum airflow rate by meeting the applicable requirements in TABLE-150.0-B or 150.0-C as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.4 and RA3.1.4.5. The design clean-filter pressure drop requirements of Section 150.0(m)12D for the system air filter device(s) shall conform to the requirements given in TABLES 150.0-B and 150.0-C.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.1(c)7Aic:** When the outdoor temperature is less than 55 degrees F and the installer utilizes the weigh-in charging procedure in Reference Residential

Appendix Section RA3.2.3.1 to verify the refrigerant charge, the installer may elect to utilize the HERS Rater verification procedure in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.3.2. If the HERS Rater verification procedure in Section RA3.2.3.2 is used for compliance, the system's thermostat shall conform to the specifications in Section 110.12. Ducted systems shall comply with minimum system airflow rate requirement in Section 150.1(c)7Aib.

- ii. Air-cooled air conditioners and air-source heat pumps, including but not limited to ducted split systems, ducted packaged systems, small duct high velocity systems and mini-split systems, which are of a type that cannot comply with the requirements of 150.1(c)7Ai shall comply with subsections a and b, as applicable.
  - a. The installer shall confirm the refrigerant charge using the weigh-in charging procedure specified in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.3.1, as verified by a HERS Rater according to the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.3.2; and
  - b. Systems that utilize forced air ducts shall comply with the minimum system airflow rate requirement in Section 150.1(c)7Aib provided the system is of a type that can be verified using the procedures in RA3.3 or an approved alternative procedure in RA1.

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.1(c)7A:** Packaged systems for which the manufacturer has verified correct system refrigerant charge prior to shipment from the factory are not required to have refrigerant charge confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing. The installer of these packaged systems shall certify on the Certificate of Installation that the packaged system was pre-charged at the factory and has not been altered in a way that would affect the charge. Ducted systems shall comply with minimum system airflow rate requirement in Section 150.1(c)7Aib, provided that the system is of a type that can be verified using the procedure specified in RA3.3 or an approved alternative in RA1.

- 8. **Domestic Water-Heating Systems.** Water-heating systems shall meet the requirements of either A B or C. For recirculation distribution systems serving individual dwelling unit, only Demand Recirculation Systems with manual on/off control as specified in the Reference Appendix RA4.4.9 shall be used:
  - A. For systems serving individual dwelling units, the water heating system shall meet the requirement of either i, ii, iii, iv, or v:
    - i. One or more gas or propane instantaneous water heater with an input of 200,000 Btu per hour or less and no storage tank.
    - ii. A single gas or propane storage type water heater with an input of 75,000 Btu per hour or less, rated volume less than or equal to 55 gallons and that meets the requirements of Sections 110.1 and 110.3. The dwelling unit shall have installed fenestration products with a weighted average U-factor no greater than 0.24, and in addition one of the following shall be installed:
      - a. A compact hot water distribution system that is field verified as specified in the Reference Appendix RA4.4.16; or
      - b. A drain water heat recovery system that is field verified as specified in the Reference Appendix RA3.6.9.
    - iii. A single gas or propane storage type water heater with an input of 75,000 Btu per hour or less, rated volume of more than 55 gallons.
    - iv. A single heat pump water heater. The storage tank shall be located in the garage or conditioned space. In addition, one of the following:
      - a. A compact hot water distribution system as specified in the Reference Appendix RA4.4.6 and a drain water heat recovery system that is field verified as specified in the Reference Appendix RA3.6.9; or
      - b. For Climate Zones 2 through 15, a photovoltaic system capacity of 0.3 kWdc larger than the requirement specified in Section 150.1(c)14; or
      - c. For Climate Zones 1 and 16, a photovoltaic system capacity of 1.1 kWdc larger than the requirement specified in Section 150.1(c)14.

- v. A single heat pump water heater that meets the requirements of NEEA Advanced Water Heater Specification Tier 3 or higher. The storage tank shall be located in the garage or conditioned space. In addition, for Climate Zones 1 and 16, a photovoltaic system capacity of 0.3 kWdc larger than the requirement specified in Section 150.1(c)14 or a compact hot water distribution system as specified in the Reference Appendix RA4.4.6.
- B. For systems serving multiple dwelling units, a central water-heating system that includes the following components shall be installed:
- i. Gas or propane water heating system; and
  - ii. A recirculation system that meets the requirements of Sections 110.3(c)2 and 110.3(c)5, includes two or more separate recirculation loops serving separate dwelling units, and is capable of automatically controlling the recirculation pump operation based on measurement of hot water demand and hot water return temperature; and
- EXCEPTION to Section 150.1(c)8Bii:** Buildings with eight or fewer dwelling units may use a single recirculation loop.
- iii. A solar water-heating system meeting the installation criteria specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA4 and with a minimum solar savings fraction of either a or b below:
    - a. A minimum solar savings fraction of 0.20 in Climate Zones 1 through 9 or a minimum solar savings fraction of 0.35 in Climate Zones 10 through 16; or
    - b. A minimum solar savings fraction of 0.15 in Climate Zones 1 through 9 or a minimum solar savings fraction of 0.30 in Climate Zones 10 through 16. In addition, a drain water heat recovery system that is field verified as specified in the Reference Appendix RA3.6.9.
- C. A water-heating system serving multiple dwelling units determined by the Executive Director to use no more energy than the one specified in subsection B above.
9. **Space Conditioning Distribution Systems.** All space conditioning systems shall meet all applicable requirements of A or B below:
- A. High performance attics. Air handlers or ducts are allowed to be in ventilated attic spaces when the roof and ceiling insulation level meet Option Bin TABLE 150.1-A or B. Duct insulation levels shall meet the requirements in TABLE 150.1-A or B.
  - B. Duct and air handlers located in conditioned space. Duct systems and air handlers of HVAC systems shall be located in conditioned space, and confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing to meet the criterion of Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1.4.3.8. Duct insulation levels shall meet the requirements in TABLE 150.1-A or B.
- NOTE:** Gas heating appliances installed in conditioned spaces must meet the combustion air requirements of the California Mechanical Code Chapter 7, as applicable.
10. **Central Fan Integrated Ventilation Systems.** Central forced air system fans used to provide outside air, shall have an air-handling unit fan efficacy less than or equal to the maximum W/CFM specified in A or B below. The airflow rate and fan efficacy requirements in this section shall be confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with all applicable procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.3. Central Fan Integrated Ventilation Systems shall be certified to the Energy Commission as Intermittent Ventilation Systems as specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.7.4.2.
- A. 0.45 W/CFM for gas furnace air-handling units; or
  - B. 0.58 W/CFM for air-handling units that are not gas furnaces.
- EXCEPTION to Section 151.0(c)10A:** Gas furnace air-handling units manufactured prior to July 3, 2019 shall comply with a fan efficacy value less than or equal to 0.58 w/cfm as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures given in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.3.

11. **Roofing products.** All roofing products shall meet the requirements of Section 110.8 and the applicable requirements of Subsection A or B:
- A. Low-rise residential buildings with steep-sloped roofs, in Climate Zones 10 through 15 shall have a minimum aged solar reflectance of 0.20 and a minimum thermal emittance of 0.75, or a minimum SRI of 16.
  - B. Low-rise residential buildings with low-sloped roofs; in Climate Zones 13 and 15 shall have a minimum aged solar reflectance of 0.63 and a minimum thermal emittance of 0.75 or a minimum SRI of 75.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.1(c)11:** Building integrated photovoltaic panels and building integrated solar thermal panels are exempt from the minimum requirements for solar reflectance and thermal emittance or SRI.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.1(c)11:** Roof constructions with a weight of at least 25 lb/ft<sup>2</sup> are exempt from the minimum requirements for solar reflectance and thermal emittance or SRI.

12. **Ventilation Cooling.** Single family homes shall comply with the Whole House Fan (WHF) requirements shown in TABLE 150.1-A. When a WHF is required, comply with Subsections A. through C. below:
- A. Have installed one or more WHFs whose total Air Flow CFM is equal to or greater than 1.5 CFM/ft<sup>2</sup> of conditioned floor area. Air Flow CFM for WHF's shall be determined based on the Air Flow listed in the Energy Commission's database of certified appliances, which is available at: [www.energy.ca.gov/appliances/database](http://www.energy.ca.gov/appliances/database); and
  - B. Have at least 1 square foot of attic vent free area for each 750 CFM of rated whole house fan Air Flow CFM, or if the manufacturer has specified a greater free vent area, the manufacturers' free vent area specifications; and

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.1(c)12B:** WHFs that are directly vented to the outside.

- C. Provide homeowners who have WHFs with a one page "How to operate your whole house fan" informational sheet.
13. **HVAC System Bypass Ducts.** Bypass ducts that deliver conditioned supply air directly to the space conditioning system return duct airflow shall not be used.

14. **Photovoltaic Requirements.** All low-rise residential buildings shall have a photovoltaic (PV) system meeting the minimum qualification requirements as specified in Joint Appendix JA11, with annual electrical output equal to or greater than the dwelling's annual electrical usage as determined by Equation 150.1-C:

*EQUATION 150.1-C ANNUAL PHOTOVOLTAIC ELECTRICAL OUTPUT*

$$\text{kW}_{\text{PV}} = (\text{CFA} \times \text{A})/1000 + (\text{ND}_{\text{well}} \times \text{B})$$

WHERE:

$\text{kW}_{\text{PV}}$  = kWdc size of the PV system

CFA = Conditioned floor area

ND<sub>well</sub> = Number of dwelling units

A = Adjustment factor from Table 150.1-C

B = Dwelling adjustment factor from Table 150.1-C

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.1(c)14:** No PV is required if the effective annual solar access is restricted to less than 80 contiguous square feet by shading from existing permanent natural or manmade barriers

external to the dwelling, including but not limited to trees, hills, and adjacent structures. The effective annual solar access shall be 70 percent or greater of the output of an unshaded PV array on an annual basis.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.1(c)14:** In climate zone 15, the PV size shall be the smaller of a size that can be accommodated by the effective annual solar access or a PV size required by the Equation 150.1-C, but no less than 1.5 Watt DC per square foot of conditioned floor area.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 150.1(c)14:** In all climate zones, for dwelling units with two habitable stories, the PV size shall be the smaller of a size that can be accommodated by the effective annual solar access or a PV size required by the Equation 150.1-C, but no less than 1.0 Watt DC per square foot of conditioned floor area

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 150.1(c)14:** In all climate zones, for low-rise residential dwellings with three habitable stories and single family dwellings with three or more habitable stories, the PV size shall be the smaller of a size that can be accommodated by the effective annual solar access or a PV size required by the Equation 150.1-C, but no less than 0.8 Watt DC per square foot of conditioned floor area.

**EXCEPTION 5 to Section 150.1(c)14:** For a dwelling unit plan that is approved by the planning department prior to January 1, 2020 with available solar ready zone between 80 and 200 square feet, the PV size is limited to the lesser of the size that can be accommodated by the effective annual solar access or a size that is required by the Equation 150.1-C.

**EXCEPTION 6 to Section 150.1(c)14:** PV sizes from Equation 150.1-C may be reduced by 25 percent if installed in conjunction with a battery storage system. The battery storage system shall meet the qualification requirements specified in Joint Appendix JA12 and have a minimum capacity of 7.5 kWh.

Table 150.1-C – CFA and Dwelling adjustment Factors

Climate Zone	A - CFA	B - Dwelling Units
1	0.793	1.27
2	0.621	1.22
3	0.628	1.12
4	0.586	1.21
5	0.585	1.06
6	0.594	1.23
7	0.572	1.15
8	0.586	1.37
9	0.613	1.36
10	0.627	1.41
11	0.836	1.44
12	0.613	1.40
13	0.894	1.51
14	0.741	1.26
15	1.56	1.47
16	0.59	1.22

TABLE 150.1-A COMPONENT PACKAGE – Single Family Standard Building Design

Single Family			Climate Zone																	
			1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16		
<b>Building Envelope Insulation</b>																				
<b>Building Envelope</b>	<b>Roofs/Ceilings</b>	<b>Option B</b> (meets §150.1(c)9A)	Below Roof Deck Insulation <sup>1,2</sup> (With Air Space)	NR	NR	NR	R 19	NR	NR	NR	R 19									
			Ceiling Insulation	R 38	R 38	R 30	R 38	R 30	R 30	R 30	R 38									
			Radiant Barrier	NR	REQ	REQ	NR	REQ	REQ	REQ	NR									
		<b>Option C</b> (meets §150.1(c)9B)	Ceiling Insulation	R 38	R 30	R 38														
			Radiant Barrier	NR	REQ	NR														
	<b>Walls</b>	<b>Above Grade</b>	Framed <sup>3</sup>	U 0.048	U 0.065	U 0.065	U 0.048													
			Mass Wall Interior <sup>4,5</sup>	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.059 R 17															
			Mass Wall Exterior <sup>4,5</sup>	U 0.125 R 8.0																
		<b>Below Grade</b>	Below Grade Interior <sup>6</sup>	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.067 R 15															
Below Grade Exterior <sup>8</sup>			U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.100 R 10	U 0.100 R 10	U 0.053 R 19	

TABLE 150.1-A COMPONENT PACKAGE – Single Family Standard Building Design (continued)

			Climate Zone																	
			1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16		
<b>Building Envelope</b>	<b>Floors</b>	Slab Perimeter	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	U 0.58 R 7.0		
		Raised	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19		
		Concrete Raised	U 0.092 R 8.0	U 0.092 R 8.0	U 0.269 R 0	U 0.092 R 8.0	U 0.138 R 4.0	U 0.092 R 8.0	U 0.092 R 8.0	U 0.138 R 4.0	U 0.092 R 8.0									
	<b>Quality Insulation Installation (QII)</b>		Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes		
	<b>Roofing Products</b>	<b>Low-sloped</b>	Aged Solar Reflectance	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.63	NR	0.63	NR	
			Thermal Emittance	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.75	NR	0.75	NR
		<b>Steep-sloped</b>	Aged Solar Reflectance	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	NR
			Thermal Emittance	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	NR
	<b>Fenestration</b>	Maximum U-factor		0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	
		Maximum SHGC		NR	0.23	NR	0.23	NR	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	NR
		Maximum Total Area		20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%
		Maximum West Facing Area		NR	5%	NR	5%	NR	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	NR
	<b>Door</b>	Maximum U-factor		0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	

TABLE 150.1-A COMPONENT PACKAGE – Single Family Standard Building Design (continued)

			Climate Zone																
			1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	
<b>HVAC SYSTEM</b>	<b>Space Heating<sup>9</sup></b>	<b>Electric-Resistance Allowed</b>	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	
		<b>If gas, AFUE</b>	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN
		<b>If Heat Pump, HSPF<sup>7</sup></b>	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN
	<b>Space Cooling</b>	<b>SEER</b>	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN
		<b>Refrigerant Charge Verification or Fault Indicator Display</b>	NR	REQ	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	NR
		<b>Whole House Fan<sup>8</sup></b>	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	NR	NR
	<b>Central System Air Handlers</b>	<b>Central Fan Integrated Ventilation System Fan Efficacy</b>	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ
	<b>Ducts<sup>10</sup></b>	<b>Roof/Ceiling Options B</b>	Duct Insulation	R-8	R-8	R- 6	R-8	R- 6	R- 6	R- 6	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8
			§150.1(c)9A	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
		<b>Roof/Ceiling Option C</b>	Duct Insulation	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R- 6	R-6	R-6	R- 6	R- 6	R- 6
§150.1(c)9B			REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ
<b>Water Heating</b>	<b>All Buildings</b>		System Shall meet Section 150.1(c)8																

Footnote requirements to TABLE 150.1-A:

1. Install the specified R-value with an air space present between the roofing and the roof deck. Such as standard installation of concrete or clay tile.
2. R-values shown for below roof deck insulation are for wood-frame construction with insulation installed between the framing members. Alternatives including insulation above rafters or above roof deck shall comply with the performance standards.
3. Assembly U-factors for exterior framed walls can be met with cavity insulation alone or with continuous insulation alone, or with both cavity and continuous insulation that results in an assembly U-factor equal to or less than the U-factor shown. Use Reference Joint Appendices JA4 Table 4.3.1, 4.3.1(a), or Table 4.3.4 to determine alternative insulation products to be less than or equal to the required maximum U-factor.
4. Mass wall has a heat capacity greater than or equal to 7.0 Btu/h-ft<sup>2</sup>. “
5. “Interior” denotes insulation installed on the inside surface of the wall. “Exterior” denotes insulation installed on the exterior surface of the wall.
6. Below grade “interior” denotes insulation installed on the inside surface of the wall; and  
Below grade “exterior” denotes insulation installed on the outside surface of the wall.
7. HSPF means "heating seasonal performance factor."
8. When whole house fans are required (REQ), only those whole house fans that are listed in the Appliance Efficiency Directory may be installed. Compliance requires installation of one or more WHFs whose total airflow CFM is capable of meeting or exceeding a minimum 1.5 cfm/square foot of conditioned floor area as specified by Section 150.1(c)12.
9. A supplemental heating unit may be installed in a space served directly or indirectly by a primary heating system, provided that the unit thermal capacity does not exceed 2 kilowatts or 7,000 Btu/hr and is controlled by a time-limiting device not exceeding 30 minutes.
10. For duct and air handler location: REQ denotes location in conditioned space. When the table indicates ducts and air handlers are in conditioned space, a HERS verification is required as specified by Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1.4.3.8.

TABLE 150.1-B COMPONENT PACKAGE – Multifamily Standard Building Design

Multifamily		Climate Zone																		
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16			
<b>Building Envelope Insulation</b>																				
<b>Building Envelope Insulation</b>	<b>Roofs/Ceilings</b>	<b>Option B</b> (meets §150.1(c)9A)	Below Roof Deck Insulation <sup>1,2</sup> (With Air Space)	NR	NR	NR	R19	NR	NR	NR	R19	R19	R13	R19	R19	R19	R19	R13		
			Ceiling Insulation	R 38	R 38	R 30	R 38	R 30	R 30	R 30	R 38	R 38								
			Radiant Barrier	NR	REQ	REQ	NR	REQ	REQ	REQ	NR	NR								
		<b>Option C</b> (meets §150.1(c)9B)	Ceiling Insulation	R38	R 30	R 38	R 38													
			Radiant Barrier	NR	REQ	NR														
<b>Building Envelope Insulation</b>	<b>Walls</b>	<b>Above Grade</b>	Framed <sup>3</sup>	U 0.051	U 0.065	U 0.065	U 0.051													
			Mass Wall Interior <sup>4,5</sup>	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.059 R 17															
			Mass Wall Exterior <sup>5</sup>	U 0.125 R 8.0	U 0.077 R 13															
		<b>Below Grade<sup>6</sup></b>	Below Grade Interior	U 0.077 R 13	U 0.067 R 15															
			Below Grade Exterior	U 0.200 R 5.0	U 0.100 R 10	U 0.100 R 10	U 0.053 R 19													

TABLE 150.1-B COMPONENT PACKAGE – Multifamily Standard Building Design (continued)

	Floors	Slab Perimeter	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	U 0.58 R 7.0			
		Raised	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19	U 0.037 R 19		
		Concrete Raised	U 0.092 R 8.0	U 0.092 R 8.0	U 0.269 R 0	U 0.092 R 8.0	U 0.138 R 4.0	U 0.092 R 8.0	U 0.092 R 8.0	U 0.138 R 4.0	U 0.092 R 8.0										
Quality Insulation Installation (QII)		Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	NR	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes			
Building Envelope	Roofing Products	Low-sloped	Aged Solar Reflectance	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.63	NR	0.63	NR	
			Thermal Emittance	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.75	NR	0.75	NR
		Steep-sloped	Aged Solar Reflectance	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	NR
			Thermal Emittance	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	NR
	Fenestration	Maximum U-factor		0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	
		Maximum SHGC		NR	0.23	NR	0.23	NR	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	NR
		Maximum Total Area		20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%
		Maximum West Facing Area		NR	5%	NR	5%	NR	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	NR
	Door	Maximum U-factor		0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	

TABLE 150.1-B COMPONENT PACKAGE – Multifamily Standard Building Design (continued)

			Climate Zone																
			1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	
<b>HVAC SYSTEM</b>	<b>Space Heating<sup>8</sup></b>	<b>Electric-Resistance Allowed</b>	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	
		<b>If gas, AFUE</b>	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	
		<b>If Heat Pump, HSPF<sup>7</sup></b>	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	
	<b>Space cooling</b>	<b>SEER</b>	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	MIN	
		<b>Refrigerant Charge Verification or Fault Indicator Display</b>	NR	REQ	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	NR	
	<b>Central System / Air Handlers</b>	<b>Central Fan Integrated Ventilation System Fan Efficacy</b>	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	
	<b>Ducts<sup>9</sup></b>	<b>Roof/Ceiling Options B</b>	Duct Insulation	R-8	R-8	R- 6	R-8	R- 6	R- 6	R- 6	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8	R-8	
			§150.1(c)9A	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
		<b>Roof/Ceiling Option C</b>	Duct Insulation	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R-6	R- 6	R-6	R-6	R- 6	R- 6	R- 6
			§150.1(c)9B	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ	REQ
<b>Water Heating</b>	<b>All Buildings</b>		System Shall meet Section 150.1(c)8																

Footnote requirements to TABLE 150.1-B:

1. Install the specified R-value with an air space present between the roofing and the roof deck. Such as standard installation of concrete or clay tile.
2. R-values shown for below roof deck insulation are for wood-frame construction with insulation installed between the framing members. Alternatives including insulation above rafters or above roof deck shall comply with the performance standards.
3. Assembly U-factors for exterior framed walls can be met with cavity insulation alone or with continuous insulation alone, or with both cavity and continuous insulation that results in an assembly U-factor equal to or less than the U-factor shown. Use Reference Joint Appendices JA4 Table 4.3.1, 4.3.1(a), or Table 4.3.4 to determine alternative insulation products to be less than or equal to the required maximum U-factor.
4. Mass wall has a heat capacity greater than or equal to 7.0 Btu/h-ft<sup>2</sup>.
5. "Interior" denotes insulation installed on the inside surface of the wall. "Exterior" denotes insulation installed on the exterior surface of the wall.
6. Below grade "interior" denotes insulation installed on the inside surface of the wall; and  
Below grade "exterior" denotes insulation installed on the outside surface of the wall.
7. HSPF means "heating seasonal performance factor."
8. A supplemental heating unit may be installed in a space served directly or indirectly by a primary heating system, provided that the unit thermal capacity does not exceed 2 kilowatts or 7,000 Btu/hr and is controlled by a time-limiting device not exceeding 30 minutes.
9. For duct and air handler location: REQ denotes location in conditioned space. When the table indicates ducts and air handlers are in conditioned space, a HERS verification is required as specified by Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1.4.3.8.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402, 25402.1, and 25605, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, 25605, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

## SUBCHAPTER 9

# LOW-RISE RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS - ADDITIONS AND ALTERATIONS TO EXISTING LOW-RISE RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS

---

### SECTION 150.2 – ENERGY EFFICIENCY STANDARDS FOR ADDITIONS AND ALTERATIONS TO EXISTING LOW-RISE RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS

- (a) **Additions.** Additions to existing low-rise residential buildings shall meet the requirements of Sections 110.0 through 110.9, Sections 150.0(a) through (q), and either Section 150.2(a)1 or 2.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.2(a):** Additions 1,000 square feet or less are exempt from the requirement to provide dwelling unit mechanical ventilation airflow as specified by Sections 150.0(o)1C, 150.0(o)1E, or 150.0(o)1F, however all other applicable requirements specified by Section 150.0(o) shall be met by the addition.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.2(a):** Additions of 300 square feet or less are exempt from the roofing requirements of Section 150.1(c)11.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 150.2(a):** Existing inaccessible piping shall not require insulation as defined under Section 150.0(j)2Aiii.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 150.2(a): Space-Conditioning System.** When heating or cooling will be extended to an addition from the existing system(s), the existing heating and cooling equipment need not comply with Part 6. The heating system capacity must be adequate to meet the minimum requirements of CBC Section 1204.1.

**EXCEPTION 5 to Section 150.2(a): Space-Conditioning System Ducts.** When ducts are extended from an existing duct system to serve the addition, the existing duct system and the extended ducts shall meet the applicable requirements specified in Section 150.2(b)1D.

**EXCEPTION 6 to Section 150.2(a):** Additions 1,000 square feet or less are exempt from the Ventilation Cooling requirements of Section 150.1(c)12.

**EXCEPTION 7 to Section 150.2(a):** Photovoltaic systems, as specified in Section 150.1(c)14, are not required for additions.

1. **Prescriptive approach.** Additions to existing buildings shall meet the following additional requirements:
  - A. Additions that are greater than 700 square feet shall meet the requirements of Section 150.1(c), with the following modifications:
    - i. Extensions of existing wood-framed walls may retain the dimensions of the existing walls and shall install cavity insulation of R-15 in a 2x4 framing and R-21 in a 2x6 framing.
    - ii. The maximum allowed fenestration area shall be the greater of 175 square feet or 20 percent of the addition floor area, and the maximum allowed west-facing fenestration area shall be the greater of 70 square feet or the requirements of Section 150.1(c).
    - iii. When existing siding of a wood-framed wall is not being removed or replaced, cavity insulation of R-15 in a 2x4 framing and R-21 in a 2x6 framing shall be installed and continuous insulation is not required.
    - iv. Additions that consist of the conversion of existing spaces from unconditioned to conditioned space shall not be required to perform the following as part of QII:
      - a. Existing window and door headers shall not be required to be insulated.

- b. Air sealing shall not be required when the existing air barrier is not being removed or replaced.
- B. Additions that are 700 square feet or less shall meet the requirements of Section 150.1(c), with the following modifications:
  - i. Roof and Ceiling insulation in an attic shall be insulated to R38 in climate zones 1, 11-16 or R-30 in climate zones 2-10; and
  - ii. Radiant barriers shall be installed in climate zones 2-15; and
  - iii. Extensions of existing wood-framed walls may retain the dimensions of the existing walls and shall install cavity insulation of R-15 in a 2x4 framing and R-21 in a 2x6 framing; and
  - iv. In Climate Zones 2, 4 and 6-15; the maximum allowed west-facing fenestration area shall not be greater than 60 square feet; and shall also comply with either a or b below:
    - a. For additions that are 700 square feet or less but greater than 400 square feet, the maximum allowed fenestration area limit is the greater of 120 square feet or 25 percent of the conditioned floor area of the addition; or
    - b. For additions that are 400 square feet or less, the maximum allowed fenestration area is the greater of 75 square feet or 30 percent of the conditioned floor area of the addition.
  - v. Quality Insulation Installation (QII) requirements of Section 150.1(c)1E do not apply.
  - vi. When existing siding of a wood-framed wall is not being removed or replaced, cavity insulation of R-15 in a 2x4 framing and R-21 in a 2x6 framing shall be installed and continuous insulation is not required.

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.2(a)1B:** Insulation in an enclosed rafter ceiling shall meet the requirements of Section 150.0.

**C. Mechanical Ventilation for Indoor Air Quality.**

- i. Additions to an existing dwelling unit that increase the conditioned floor area of the existing dwelling unit by more than 1,000 square feet shall have mechanical ventilation airflow in accordance with Sections 150.0(o)1C, 150.0(o)1E, or 150.0(o)1F as applicable. The mechanical ventilation airflow rate shall be based on the conditioned floor area of the entire dwelling unit comprised of the existing dwelling unit conditioned floor area plus the addition conditioned floor area.
- ii. New dwelling units that are additions to an existing building shall have mechanical ventilation airflow provided in accordance with Sections 150.0(o)1C, 150.0(o)1E, or 150.0(o)1F as applicable. The mechanical ventilation airflow rate shall be based on the conditioned floor area of the new dwelling unit.

**D. Water Heater.** When a second water heater is installed as part of the addition, one of the following types of water heaters shall be installed:

- i. A water-heating system that meets the requirements of Section 150.1(c)8; or
- ii. A water-heating system determined by the Executive Director to use no more energy than the one specified in Item i above.

**2. Performance approach.** Performance calculations shall meet the requirements of Section 150.1(a) through (c), pursuant to the applicable requirements in Items A, B, and C below.

- A. **For additions alone.** The addition complies if the addition alone meets the energy budgets as specified in Section 150.1(b).
- B. **Existing plus alteration plus addition.** The standard design for existing plus alteration plus addition energy use is the combination of the existing building's unaltered components to remain; existing building altered components that are the more efficient, in TDV energy, of either the existing conditions or the requirements of Section 150.2(b)2; plus the proposed addition's energy use meeting the requirements of Section 150.2(a)1. The proposed design energy use is the combination of the

existing building's unaltered components to remain and the altered components' energy features, plus the proposed energy features of the addition.

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.2(a)2B:** Existing structures with a minimum R-11 insulation in framed walls showing compliance with Section 150.2(a)2 are exempt from showing compliance with Section 150.0(c).

C. Mechanical Ventilation for Indoor Air Quality.

- i. Additions to an existing dwelling unit that increase the conditioned floor area of the existing dwelling unit by more than 1,000 square feet shall have mechanical ventilation airflow in accordance with Sections 150.0(o)1C, 150.0(o)1E, or 150.0(o)1F as applicable. The mechanical ventilation airflow rate shall be based on the conditioned floor area of the entire dwelling unit comprised of the existing dwelling unit conditioned floor area plus the addition conditioned floor area.
- ii. New dwelling units that are additions to an existing building shall have mechanical ventilation airflow provided in accordance with Sections 150.0(o)1C, 150.0(o)1E, or 150.0(o)1F as applicable. The mechanical ventilation airflow rate shall be based on the conditioned floor area of the new dwelling unit.

(b) **Alterations.** Alterations to existing low-rise residential buildings or alterations in conjunction with a change in building occupancy to a low-rise residential occupancy shall meet either Item 1 or 2 below.

1. **Prescriptive approach.** The altered component and any newly installed equipment serving the alteration shall meet the applicable requirements of Sections 110.0 through 110.9 and all applicable requirements of Section 150.0(a) through (l); 150.0(m)1 through 150.0 (m)10, Section 150.0(o) through (q); and

A. **Fenestration.** Alterations that add vertical fenestration and skylight area shall meet the total fenestration area and west facing fenestration area, U-factor, and Solar Heat Gain Coefficient requirements of Section 150.1(c) and TABLE 150.1-A or B.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.2(b)1A:** Alterations that add fenestration area of up to 75 square feet shall not be required to meet the total fenestration area and west-facing fenestration area requirements of Sections 150.1(c)3B and C.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.2(b)1A:** Alterations that add up to 16 square feet of new skylight area with a maximum U-factor of 0.55 and a maximum SHGC of 0.30 area shall not be required to meet the total fenestration area and west-facing fenestration area requirements of Sections 150.1(c)3B and C.

B. **Replacement Fenestration.** New manufactured fenestration products installed to replace existing fenestration products of the same total area shall meet the U-factor and Solar Heat Gain Coefficient requirements of Sections 150.1(c)3A, and 150.1(c)4.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.2(b)1B:** Replacement of vertical fenestration no greater than 75 square feet with a U-factor no greater than 0.40 in Climate Zones 1-16, and a SHGC value no greater than 0.35 in Climate Zones 2, 4, and 6-15.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.2(b)1B:** Replaced skylights must meet a U-factor no greater than 0.55, and a SHGC value no greater than 0.30.

**NOTE:** Glass replaced in an existing sash and frame or sashes replaced in an existing frame are considered repairs, provided the replacement is at least equivalent to the original in performance.

C. **Entirely New or Complete Replacement Space-Conditioning Systems** installed as part of an alteration, shall include all the system heating or cooling equipment, including but not limited to . condensing unit and cooling or heating coil for split systems; or complete replacement of a package unit; plus entirely new or replacement duct system (Section 150.2(b)1Diia); plus a new or replacement air handler.

Entirely New or complete replacement space-conditioning systems shall:

- i. Meet the requirements of Sections 150.0(h), 150.0(i), 150.0(j)2, 150.0(j)3, 150.0(m)1 through 150.0(m)10; 150.0(m)12; 150.0(m)13, 150.1(c)6, 150.1(c)7, 150.1(c)10 and TABLE 150.2-A; and
- ii. Be limited to natural gas, liquefied petroleum gas, or the existing fuel type.

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.2(b)1Cii:** When the fuel type of the replaced heating system was natural gas or liquefied petroleum gas, the new or complete replacement space-conditioning system may be a heat pump.

- D. **Altered Duct Systems - Duct Sealing:** In all Climate Zones, when more than 40 feet of new or replacement space-conditioning system ducts are installed, the ducts shall comply with the applicable requirements of subsections i and ii below. Additionally, when altered ducts, air-handling units, cooling or heating coils, or plenums are located in garage spaces, the system shall comply with subsection 150.2(b)1Diic regardless of the length of any new or replacement space-conditioning ducts installed in the garage space.
- i. New ducts located in unconditioned space shall meet the applicable requirements of Sections 150.0(m)1 through 150.0(m)11, and the duct insulation requirements of TABLE 150.2-A, and

TABLE 150.2-A DUCT INSULATION R-VALUE

Climate Zone	1 through 10, 12&13	11, 14 through 16
Duct R-Value	R-6	R-8

- ii. The altered duct system, regardless of location, shall be sealed as confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with all applicable procedures for duct sealing of altered existing duct systems as specified in the Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1, utilizing the leakage compliance criteria specified in Subsection a or b below.
- a. **Entirely New or Complete Replacement Duct System.** If the new ducts form an entirely new or complete replacement duct system directly connected to the air handler, the duct system shall meet one of the following requirements:
- I. For single family dwellings, the measured duct leakage shall be equal to or less than 5 percent of the system air handler airflow as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.1.
  - II. For multifamily dwellings, regardless of duct system location,
    - A. The total leakage of the duct system shall not exceed 12 percent of the nominal system air handler airflow as determined utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.1, or
    - B. The duct system leakage to outside shall not exceed 6 percent of the nominal system air handler airflow as determined utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.4.

Entirely new or complete replacement duct systems installed as part of an alteration shall be constructed of at least 75 percent new duct material, and up to 25 percent may consist of reused parts from the dwelling unit's existing duct system, including but not limited to registers, grilles, boots, air handler, coil, plenums, duct material; if the reused parts are accessible and can be sealed to prevent leakage.

Entirely new or complete replacement duct systems shall also conform to the requirements of Sections 150.0(m)12 and 150.0(m)13.

- b. **Extension of an Existing Duct System.** If the new ducts are an extension of an existing duct system serving single family or multifamily dwellings, the combined new and existing duct system shall meet one of the following requirements:
- I. The measured duct leakage shall be equal to or less than 15 percent of nominal system air handler airflow as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.1; or
  - II. The measured duct leakage to outside shall be equal to or less than 10 percent of nominal system air handler airflow as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.4; or
  - III. If it is not possible to meet the duct sealing requirements of either Section 150.2(b)1DiibI, or 150.2(b)1DiibII, then all accessible leaks shall be sealed and verified through a visual

inspection and a smoke test by a certified HERS Rater utilizing the methods specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1.4.3.5.

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.2(b)1Diib: Duct Sealing.** Existing duct systems that are extended, which are constructed, insulated or sealed with asbestos.

- c. **Altered Ducts and Duct System Components in Garage Spaces.** When new or replacement space-conditioning ducts, air-handling units, cooling or heating coils, or plenums are located in a garage space, compliance with either I or II below is required.
  - I. The measured system duct leakage shall be less than or equal to 6 percent of system air handler airflow as determined utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.1, or
  - II. All accessible leaks located in the garage space shall be sealed and verified through a visual inspection and a smoke test by a certified HERS Rater utilizing the methods specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1.4.3.5.

E. **Altered Space-Conditioning System - Duct Sealing:** In all Climate Zones, when a space-conditioning system serving a single family or multifamily dwelling is altered by the installation or replacement of space-conditioning system equipment, including replacement of the air handler, outdoor condensing unit of a split system air conditioner or heat pump, or cooling or heating coil; the duct system that is connected to the altered space-conditioning system equipment shall be sealed, as confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the applicable procedures for duct sealing of altered existing duct systems as specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1 and the leakage compliance criteria specified in subsection i, ii, or iii below. Additionally, when altered ducts, air-handling units, cooling or heating coils, or plenums are located in garage spaces, the system shall comply with Section 150.2(b)1Diic regardless of the length of any new or replacement space-conditioning ducts installed in the garage space.

- i. The measured duct leakage shall be equal to or less than 15 percent of system air handler airflow as determined utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.1; or
- ii. The measured duct leakage to outside shall be equal to or less than 10 percent of system air handler airflow as determined utilizing the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.3.4; or
- iii. If it is not possible to meet the duct sealing requirements of either Section 150.2(b)1Ei or Section 150.2(b)1Eii, then, all accessible leaks shall be sealed and verified through a visual inspection and a smoke test by a certified HERS Rater utilizing the methods specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1.4.3.5.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.2(b)1E: Duct Sealing.** Duct systems that are documented to have been previously sealed as confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with procedures in the Reference Residential Appendix RA3.1.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.2(b)1E: Duct Sealing.** Duct systems with less than 40 linear feet as determined by visual inspection.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 150.2(b)1E: Duct Sealing.** Existing duct systems constructed, insulated or sealed with asbestos.

- F. **Altered Space-Conditioning System - Mechanical Cooling:** When a space-conditioning system is an air conditioner or heat pump that is altered by the installation or replacement of refrigerant-containing system components such as the compressor, condensing coil, evaporator coil, refrigerant metering device or refrigerant piping, the altered system shall comply with the following requirements:
  - i. All thermostats associated with the system shall be replaced with setback thermostats meeting the requirements of Section 110.2(c).
  - ii. In Climate Zones 2, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, and 15, air-cooled air conditioners and air-source heat pumps, including but not limited to ducted split systems, ducted package systems, small duct high velocity air systems, and minisplit systems, shall comply with subsections a and b, unless the

system is of a type that cannot be verified using the specified procedures. Systems that cannot comply with the requirements of 150.2(b)1Fii shall comply with 150.2(b)1Fiii.

- a. Minimum system airflow rate shall comply with the applicable subsection I or II below as confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.3 or an approved alternative procedure as specified in Section RA1.;
  - I. Small duct high velocity systems shall demonstrate a minimum system airflow rate greater than or equal to 250 cfm per ton of nominal cooling capacity; or
  - II. All other air-cooled air conditioner or air-source heat pump systems shall demonstrate a minimum system airflow rate greater than or equal to 300 cfm per ton of nominal cooling capacity; and
- b. The installer shall charge the system according to manufacturer's specifications. Refrigerant charge shall be verified according to one of the following options, as applicable.
  - I. The installer and rater shall perform the standard charge verification procedure as specified in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.2, or an approved alternative procedure as specified in Section RA1; or
  - II. The system shall be equipped with a fault indicator display (FID) device that meets the specifications of Reference Joint Appendix JA6. The installer shall verify the refrigerant charge and FID device in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.4.2. The HERS Rater shall verify FID device in accordance with the procedures in Section RA3.4.2; or
  - III. The installer shall perform the weigh-in charging procedure as specified by Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.3.1 provided the system is of a type that can be verified using the RA3.2.2 standard charge verification procedure and RA3.3 airflow rate verification procedure or approved alternatives in RA1. The HERS Rater shall verify the charge using RA3.2.2 and RA3.3 or approved alternatives in RA1.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.2(b)1Fia:** Systems unable to comply with the minimum airflow rate requirement shall demonstrate compliance using the procedures in Section RA3.3.3.1.5; and the system's thermostat shall conform to the specifications in Section 110.12.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.2(b)1Fia:** Entirely new or complete replacement space conditioning systems, as specified by section 150.2(b)1C, without zoning dampers may comply with the minimum airflow rate by meeting the applicable requirements in TABLE-150.0-B or 150.0-C as confirmed by field verification and diagnostic testing in accordance with the procedures in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.1.4.4 and RA3.1.4.5. The design clean-filter pressure drop requirements of Section 150.0(m)12C for the system air filter device(s) shall conform to the requirements given in TABLES 150.0-B and 150.0-C.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.2(b)1Fiib:** When the outdoor temperature is less than 55 degrees F and the installer utilizes the weigh-in charging procedure in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.3.1 to demonstrate compliance, the installer may elect to utilize the HERS Rater verification procedure in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.3.2. If the HERS Rater verification procedure in Section RA3.2.3.2 is used for compliance, the system's thermostat shall conform to the specifications in Section 110.12. Ducted systems shall comply with the minimum system airflow rate requirements in Section 150.2(b)1Fia.

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.2(b)1Fii:** Entirely new or complete replacement packaged systems for which the manufacturer has verified correct system refrigerant charge prior to shipment from the factory are not required to have refrigerant charge confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing. The installer of these packaged systems shall certify on the Certificate of Installation that the packaged system was pre-charged at the factory and has not been altered in a way that would affect the charge. Ducted systems shall comply with minimum system airflow rate requirement in Section 150.2(b)1Fia, provided that the system is of a type that can be verified using the procedure specified in RA3.3 or an approved alternative in RA1.

- iii. In climate Zones 2, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, and 15, air-cooled air conditioners or air-source heat pumps, including but not limited to ducted split systems, ducted package systems, small duct high velocity, and minisplit systems, which are of a type that cannot comply with the requirements of 150.2(b)1Fiib shall comply with subsections a and b, as applicable.
  - a. The installer shall confirm the refrigerant charge using the weigh-in charging procedure specified in Reference Residential Appendix Section RA3.2.3.1, as verified by a HERS Rater according to the procedures specified in Reference Residential Appendix RA3.2.3.2; and
  - b. Systems that utilize forced air ducts shall comply with the minimum system airflow rate requirement in Section 150.2(b)1Fiia provided the system is of a type that can be verified using the procedures in RA3.3 or an approved alternative procedure in RA1.

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.2(b)1Fiii:** Entirely new or complete replacement packaged systems for which the manufacturer has verified correct system refrigerant charge prior to shipment from the factory are not required to have refrigerant charge confirmed through field verification and diagnostic testing. The installer of these packaged systems shall certify on the Certificate of Installation that the packaged system was pre-charged at the factory and has not been altered in a way that would affect the charge. Ducted systems shall comply with minimum system airflow rate requirement in Section 150.2(b)1Fiib, provided that the system is of a type that can be verified using the procedure specified in RA3.3 or an approved alternative in RA1.

- G. Altered Space-Conditioning System.** Replacement space-conditioning systems shall be limited to natural gas, liquefied petroleum gas, or the existing fuel type.

**EXCEPTION to Section 150.2(b)1G:** When the fuel type of the replaced heating system was natural gas or liquefied petroleum gas, the replacement space-conditioning system may be a heat pump

- H. Water-Heating System.** Altered or replacement service water-heating systems or components shall meet the applicable requirements below:

- i. **Pipe Insulation.** For newly installed piping, the insulation requirements of Section 150.0(j)2 shall be met. For existing accessible piping the applicable requirements of Section 150.0(j)2Ai, iii, and iv shall be met.
- ii. **Distribution System.** For recirculation distribution system serving individual dwelling units, only Demand Recirculation Systems with manual on/off control as specified in the Reference Appendix RA4.4.9 shall be installed.
- iii. **Water heating system.** The water heating system shall meet one of the following:
  - a. A natural gas or propane water-heating system; or
  - b. For Climate Zones 1 through 15, a single heat pump water heater. The storage tank shall not be located outdoors and be placed on an incompressible, rigid insulated surface with a minimum thermal resistance of R-10. The water heater shall be installed with a communication interface that meets either the requirements of 110.12(a); or
  - c. For Climate Zones 1 through 15, a single heat pump water heater that meets the requirements of NEEA Advanced Water Heater Specification Tier 3 or higher. The storage tank shall not be located outdoors; or
  - d. If no natural gas is connected to the existing water heater location, a consumer electric water heater.; or
- e. A water-heating system determined by the executive director to use no more energy than the one specified in Item a. above; or if no natural gas is connected to the existing water heater location, a water-heating system determined by the executive director to use no more energy than the one specified in Item d. above.

- I. **Roofs.** Replacements of the exterior surface of existing roofs, including adding a new surface layer on top of the existing exterior surface, shall meet the requirements of Section 110.8 and the applicable requirements of Subsections i and ii where more than 50 percent of the roof is being replaced.
- i. Low-rise residential buildings with steep-sloped roofs, in Climate Zones 10 through 15 shall have a minimum aged solar reflectance of 0.20 and a minimum thermal emittance of 0.75, or a minimum SRI of 16.

**EXCEPTION TO 150.2(b)1ii:** The following shall be considered equivalent to Subsection i:

- a. Air-space of 1.0 inch (25 mm) is provided between the top of the roof deck to the bottom of the roofing product; or
  - b. The installed roofing product has a profile ratio of rise to width of 1 to 5 for 50 percent or greater of the width of the roofing product; or
  - c. Existing ducts in the attic are insulated and sealed according to Section 150.1(c)9; or
  - d. Buildings with at least R-38 ceiling insulation; or
  - e. Buildings with a radiant barrier in the attic meeting the requirements of Section 150.1(c)2; or
  - f. Buildings that have no ducts in the attic; or
  - g. In Climate Zones 10-15, R-2or greater insulation above the roof deck.
- ii. Low-sloped roofs in Climate Zones 13 and 15 shall have a 3-year aged solar reflectance equal or greater than 0.63 and a thermal emittance equal or greater than 0.75, or a minimum SRI of 75.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.2(b)1iii:** Buildings with no ducts in the attic.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.2(b)1iii:** The aged solar reflectance can be met by using insulation at the roof deck specified in TABLE 150.2-B.

- J. **Lighting.** The altered lighting system shall meet the lighting requirements of Section 150.0(k). The altered luminaires shall meet the luminaire efficacy requirements of Section 150.0(k) and TABLE 150.0-A. Where existing screw base sockets are present in ceiling-recessed luminaires, removal of these sockets is not required provided that new JA8 compliant trim kits or lamps designed for use with recessed downlights or luminaires are installed.

## 2. Performance approach.

The altered component(s) and any newly installed equipment serving the alteration shall meet the applicable requirements of subsections A, B, and C below.

- A. The altered components shall meet the applicable requirements of Sections 110.0 through 110.9, Section 150.0(a) through (l); Sections 150.0(m)1 through 150.0 (m)10, and Section 150.0(o) through (q). Entirely new or complete replacement space-conditioning systems, and entirely new or complete replacement duct systems, as these terms are used in Sections 150.2(b)1C, and 150.2(b)1Diia, shall comply with the requirements of Sections 150.0(m)12 and 150.0(m)13.
- B. The standard design for an altered component shall be the higher efficiency of existing conditions or the requirements stated in TABLE 150.2-C. For components not being altered, the standard design shall be based on the existing conditions. When the third party verification option is specified as a requirement, all components proposed for alteration for which the additional credit is taken, must be verified.

TABLE 150.2-B AGED SOLAR REFLECTANCE INSULATION TRADE OFF TABLE

Aged Solar Reflectance	Roof Deck Insulation R-value	Aged Solar Reflectance	Roof Deck Insulation R-value
0.62-0.60	2	0.44-0.40	12
0.59-0.55	4	0.39-0.35	16
0.54-0.50	6	0.34-0.30	20
0.49-0.45	8	0.29-0.25	24

TABLE 150.2-C STANDARD DESIGN FOR AN ALTERED COMPONENT

Altered Component	Standard Design Without Third Party Verification of Existing Conditions Shall be Based On	Standard Design With Third Party Verification of Existing Conditions Shall be Based On
Ceiling Insulation, Wall Insulation, and Raised-floor Insulation	The requirements of Sections 150.0(a), (c), and (d)	The existing insulation R-value
Fenestration	The U-factor of 0.40 and SHGC value of 0.35. The glass area shall be the glass area of the existing building.	If the proposed U-factor is $\leq 0.40$ and SHGC value is $\leq 0.35$ , the standard design shall be based on the existing U-factor and SHGC values as verified. Otherwise, the standard design shall be based on the U-factor of 0.40 and SHGC value of 0.35. The glass area shall be the glass area of the existing building.
Window Film	The U-factor of 0.40 and SHGC value of 0.35.	The existing fenestration in the alteration shall be based on Table 110.6-A and Table 110.6-B.
Doors	The U-factor of 0.20. The door area shall be the door area of the existing building.	If the proposed U-factor is $< 0.20$ , the standard design shall be based on the existing U-factor value as verified. Otherwise, the standard design shall be based on the U-factor of 0.20. The door area shall be the door area of the existing building.
Space-Heating and Space-Cooling Equipment	TABLE 150.1-A or B for equipment efficiency requirements; Section 150.2(b)1C for entirely new or complete replacement systems; Section 150.2(b)1F for refrigerant charge verification requirements.	The existing efficiency levels.
Air Distribution System – Duct Sealing	The requirements of Sections 150.2(b)1D and 150.2(b)1E	
Air Distribution System – Duct Insulation	The proposed efficiency levels.	The existing efficiency levels.
Water Heating Systems	The requirements of Section 150.2(b)1Gii	The existing efficiency level.
Roofing Products	The requirements of Section 150.2(b)1H.	
All Other Measures	The proposed efficiency levels.	The existing efficiency levels.

C. The proposed design shall be based on the actual values of the altered components.

**NOTES TO SECTION 150.2(b)2:**

1. If an existing component must be replaced with a new component, that component is considered an altered component for the purpose of determining the standard design altered component energy budget and must meet the requirements of Section 150.2(b)2B.
2. The standard design shall assume the same geometry and orientation as the proposed design.
3. The “existing efficiency level” modeling rules, including situations where nameplate data is not available, are described in the Residential ACM Approval Manual.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 150.2(b):** Any dual-glazed greenhouse or garden window installed as part of an alteration complies with the U-factor requirements in Section 150.1(c)3.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 150.2(b):** Where the space in the attic or rafter area is not large enough to accommodate the required R-value, the entire space shall be filled with insulation provided such installation does not violate Section 1203.2 of Title 24, Part 2.

(c) **Whole Building.** Any addition or alteration may comply with the requirements of Title 24, Part 6 by meeting the requirements for the entire building.

**NOTE:** Authority: Sections 25213, 25218, 25218.5, 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25007, 25008, 25218.5, 25310, 25402, 25402.1, 25402.4, 25402.5, 25402.8, 25910, and 25943, Public Resources Code.

---

## CALIFORNIA MECHANICAL CODE, CALIFORNIA CODE OF REGULATIONS, TITLE 24, PART 4 CHAPTER 6, DUCT SYSTEMS

*TABLE P4-A ADOPTION TABLE*

CODE SECTION	Agency
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended Sections listed below) <sup>1</sup>	CEC
601.0	X
602.0	X
603.0	X
604.0	X
605.0	X
<sup>1</sup> Adopted by reference for Occupancies A, B, E, F, H, M, R S, and U; see Sections 110.8(d)3, 120.4 and 150.0(m).	

---

## APPENDIX 1-A STANDARDS AND DOCUMENTS REFERENCED IN THE ENERGY CODE

The following documents are incorporated by reference to the extent they are referenced in the Energy Efficiency Regulations.

### AIR-CONDITIONING, HEATING AND REFRIGERATION INSTITUTE

AHRI 210/240-2008	Performance Rating of Unitary Air Conditioning and Air-Source Heat Pump Equipment (2008 with Addendum 1)
ANSI/AHRI/CSA 310/380-2017	Standard for Packaged Terminal Air-Conditioners and Heat Pumps (2017)
AHRI 320-98	Water-Source Heat Pumps
AHRI 325-98	Ground Water-Source Heat Pumps (1998)
ANSI/AHRI 340/360-2015	Performance Rating of Commercial and Industrial Unitary Air-Conditioning and Heat Pump Equipment (2015)
ANSI/AHRI 365-2009	Commercial and Industrial Unitary Air-Conditioning Condensing Units (2009)
ANSI/AHRI 390-2003	Performance Rating of Single Package Vertical Air-Conditioners and Heat Pumps
ANSI/AHRI 400-2015	Liquid to Liquid Heat Exchangers (2015)
ANSI/AHRI 460-2005	Performance Rating of Remote Mechanical-Draft Air-Cooled Refrigerant Condensers (2005)
AHRI 550/590-2015	Performance Rating of Water-Chilling Packages Using the Vapor Compression Cycle (2015)
ANSI/AHRI 560-2000	Absorption Water Chilling and Water Heating Packages (2000)
AHRI 680	Performance Rating of Residential Air Filter Equipment (2015)
AHRI 1230-2014	Performance Rating of Variable Refrigerant Flow (VRF) Multi-Split Air-Conditioning and Heat Pump Equipment (w/ Addendum 1)
Available from:	Air-Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute 4301 North Fairfax Drive, Suite 425 Arlington, Virginia 22203 (703) 524-8800

### AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS OF AMERICA

Manual J – Residential Load Calculation, Eighth Edition (2016)	
Available from:	Air Conditioning Contractors of America, Inc. 2800 Shirlington Road, Suite 300 Arlington, VA 22206 <a href="http://www.acca.org">www.acca.org</a> (703) 575-4477

**AMERICAN ARCHITECTURAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION  
CANADIAN STANDARDS ASSOCIATION  
WINDOW AND DOOR MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION**

AAMA/WDMA/CSA  
101/I.S.2/A440-11

NAFS 2011 – North American Fenestration Standard/Specification for windows, doors,  
and  
skylights

Available from:

AAMA  
1827 Walden Office Square, Suite 550  
Schaumburg, IL 60173-4268  
(847)303-5664  
[www.aamanet.org](http://www.aamanet.org)

CSA  
5060 Spectrum Way, Suite 100  
Mississauga, ON, Canada L4W 5N6  
(800)463-6727  
[www.csagroup.org](http://www.csagroup.org)

WDMA  
2025 M Street, NW, Suite 800  
Washington, DC 20036-3309  
(202)367-1157  
[www.wdma.com](http://www.wdma.com)

**AMERICAN CONFERENCE OF GOVERNMENTAL INDUSTRIAL HYGIENISTS**

2018 Threshold Limit Values (TLVS) and Biological Exposure Indices (BEIS)

Available from: ACGIH  
1330 Kemper Meadow Drive  
Cincinnati, Ohio 45240  
(513) 742-2020  
www.acgih.org

**AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE**

ANSI Z21.10.3-2017 Gas Water Heaters, Volume 1, Storage Water Heaters with Input Ratings above 75,000 Btu/h (2017)

ANSI Z21.13-2017 Gas-Fired Low Pressure Steam and Hot Water Boilers (2017)

ANSI Z21.40.4-2017 Performance Testing and Rating of Gas-Fired, Air-Conditioning and Heat Pump Appliances (2017)

ANSI Z21.47-2016 Gas-Fired Central Furnaces (2016)

ANSI Z83.8-2016 Gas Unit Heaters and Gas-Fired Duct Furnaces (2016)

Available from: American National Standards Institute  
25 West 43rd Street, 4th Floor  
New York, NY 10036  
(212) 642-4900

ANSI/NSPI-5 2003 Residential Inground Swimming Pools (2003)

ANSI C82.6 - 15 Ballasts for High-Intensity Discharge Lamps - Methods of Measurement - 2015

Available from: Association of Pool & Spas Professionals  
2111 Eisenhower Ave.  
Alexandria, VA 22314  
(703) 838-0083

**AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING, AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS  
(NATIONAL PUBLICATIONS)**

ASHRAE Standard 52.2 -2017	Method of Testing General Ventilation Air-Cleaning Devices for Removal Efficiency by Particle Size
ASHRAE Standard 55-2017	Thermal Environment Conditions for Human Occupancy
ASHRAE Standard 62.2-2016	Ventilation and Acceptable Indoor Air Quality in Low-Rise Residential Buildings
ASHRAE 193 - RA2014	Method of Test for Determining the Airtightness of HVAC Equipment (RA2014)
ASHRAE Handbook	
Applications Volume,	Heating, Ventilating and Air-Conditioning Applications (2015)
Equipment Volume,	Heating, Ventilating and Air-Conditioning Systems and Equipment (2016)
Fundamentals Volume,	Fundamentals (2017)
Available from:	ASHRAE
	1791 Tullie Circle N.E.
	Atlanta, Georgia 30329-2305
	<a href="http://www.ashrae.org">www.ashrae.org</a>

**AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING, AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS  
(REGIONAL PUBLICATION)**

ASHRAE Climatic Data for Region X Arizona, California, Hawaii, Nevada, Publication SPCDX, 1982, ISBN #20002196 and Supplement, 1994, ISBN #20002596

Available from:	Order Desk
	Building News
	10801 National Boulevard
	Los Angeles, CA 90064
	(800) 873-6397 or (310) 474-7771
	<a href="http://www.bnibooks.com/">http://www.bnibooks.com/</a>

**AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS**

ASME A112.18.1-2012/CSA B125.1-12	Plumbing Supply Fittings
ASME A17.1 -16	Handbook on Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators (2016)
Available from:	ASME
	Three Park Avenue
	New York, NY 10016-5990
	(800) 843-2763
	<a href="http://www.asme.org/">http://www.asme.org/</a>

**AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR TESTING AND MATERIALS**

ASTM C55-17	Standard Specification for Concrete Brick (2017)
ASTM C177-13	Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Guarded Hot Plate Apparatus (2013)
ASTM C272-16	Standard Test Method for Water Absorption of Core Materials for Structural Sandwich Constructions (2016)
ASTM C335/C335M-17	Standard Test Method for Steady State Heat Transfer Properties of Horizontal Pipe Insulation (2017)
ASTM C518-17	Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus (2017)
ASTM C731-15	Standard Test Method for Extrudability, After Package Aging, of Latex Sealants (2015)
ASTM C732-17	Standard Test Method for Aging Effects of Artificial Weathering on Latex Sealants (2017)
ASTM C836/C836M-15	Standard Specification for High Solids Content, Cold Liquid-Applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane for Use with Separate Wearing Course (2015)
ASTM C1167-11	Standard Specification for Clay Roof Tiles(2011)
ASTM C1371-15	Standard Test Method for Determination of Emittance of Materials Near Room Temperature Using Portable Emissometers (2015)
ASTM C1492-16	Standard Specification for Concrete Roof Tile (2016)
ASTM C1549-16	Standard Test Method for Determination of Solar Reflectance Near Ambient Temperature Using a Portable Solar Reflectometer (0216)
ASTM C1583-13	Standard Test Method for Tensile Strength of Concrete Surfaces and the Bond Strength or Tensile Strength of Concrete Repair and Overlay Materials by Direct Tension (Pull-off Method) (2013)
ASTM D448-17	Standard Classification for Sizes of Aggregate for Road and Bridge Construction (2017)
ASTM D522-17	Standard Test Methods for Mandrel Bend Test of Attached Organic Coatings (2017)
ASTM D822-13	Standard Practice for Filtered Open-Flame Carbon-Arc Exposures of Paint and Related Coatings (2013)
ASTM D1003-13	Standard Test Method for Haze and Luminous Transmittance of Transparent Plastics (2013)
ASTM D1653-13	Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Organic Coating Films (2013)
ASTM D1863-11	Standard Specification for Mineral Aggregate Used on Built-Up Roofs (2011)
ASTM D2370-16	Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Organic Coatings (2016)
ASTM D2824-13	Standard Specification for Aluminum-Pigmented Asphalt Roof Coatings, Nonfibered, Asbestos Fibered, and Fibered without Asbestos (2013)
ASTM D3468-13	Standard Specification for Liquid-Applied Neoprene and Chlorosulfonated Polyethylene Used in Roofing and Waterproofing (2013)
ASTM D3805/D3805M-16	Standard Guide for Application of Aluminum-Pigmented Asphalt Roof Coatings (2016)
ASTM D4798/-16	Standard Test Method Accelerated Weathering Test Conditions and Procedures for Bituminous Materials (Xenon-Arc Method) (2016)
ASTM D5870-16	Standard Practice for Calculating Property Retention Index of Plastics (2016)
ASTM D6694/D6694M-15	Standard Specification for Liquid-Applied Silicone Coating Used in Spray Polyurethane Foam Roofing (2015)

ASTM E96-16	Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials (2016)
ASTM E283-12	Standard Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen (2012)
ASTM E408-13	Standard Test Methods for Total Normal Emittance of Surfaces Using Inspection-Meter Techniques (2013)
ASTM E972-13	Standard Test Method for Solar Photometric Transmittance of Sheet Materials Using Sunlight (2013)
ASTM E1918-16	Standard Test Method for Measuring Solar Reflectance of Horizontal and Low-Sloped Surfaces in the Field (2016)
ASTM E1980-11	Standard Practice for Calculating Solar Reflectance Index of Horizontal and Low-Sloped Opaque Surfaces (2011)
ASTM E2178-13	Standard Test Method for Air Permeance of Building Materials (2013)
ASTM E2357-17	Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage of Air Barrier Assemblies (2017)
ASTM E779-10	Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization (2010)
ASTM E1677-11	Standard Specification for an Air Retarder (AR) Material or System for Low-Rise Framed Building Walls (2011)

Available from: American Society for Testing and Materials  
100 Barr Harbor Drive  
West Conshohocken, Pennsylvania 19428-2959  
(800) 262-1373 or (610) 832-9585

#### **CALIFORNIA BUILDING STANDARDS COMMISSION**

2019 California Electrical Code

2019 California Plumbing Code

2019 California Mechanical Code

2019 California Building Code

Available from: California Building Standards Commission  
2525 Natomas Park Drive, Suite 130  
Sacramento, CA 95833-2936  
(916) 263-0916  
[www.bsc.ca.gov](http://www.bsc.ca.gov)

**CALIFORNIA ENERGY COMMISSION**

Appliance Efficiency Regulations

Alternative Calculation Method (ACM) Approval Manual

Available from: California Energy Commission/Publications  
1516 Ninth Street  
Sacramento, CA 95814  
(916) 654-5200  
[www.energy.ca.gov/title24](http://www.energy.ca.gov/title24).

**CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF CONSUMER AFFAIRS**

Standards for Insulating Material

Available from: California Department of Consumer Affairs  
Bureau of Electronic and Appliance Repair, Home Furnishings and Thermal Insulation  
4244 South Market Court, Suite D  
Sacramento, California 95834-1243  
(916) 999-2041

**COOLING TECHNOLOGY INSTITUTE**

CTI ATC-105-00 Acceptance Test Code for Water Cooling Towers (2000)  
CTI STD-201-15 Standard for the Certification of Water-Cooling Tower Thermal Performance (2015)

Available from: Cooling Technology Institute  
2611 FM 1960 West, Suite A-101  
Houston, Texas 77068-3730

PO Box 73383  
Houston, Texas 77273-3383  
(281) 583-4087

**COOL ROOF RATING COUNCIL**

CRRC-1                                      Product Rating Program Manual (2018)  
Available from:                              Cool Roof Rating Council  
    449 15<sup>th</sup> Street, Suite 400  
    Oakland, CA 94612  
    (866) 465-2523  
    [www.coolroofs.org](http://www.coolroofs.org)

**HYDRONICS INSTITUTE**

HI Heating Boiler Standard 86, 6th Edition, (1989)  
Available from:                              Hydronics Institute  
    35 Russo Place, P.O. Box 218  
    Berkeley Heights, New Jersey 07922  
    (908) 464-8200

**ILLUMINATING ENGINEERING SOCIETY**

The IES Lighting Handbook, Tenth Edition (2011)  
IES LM-79-08                                      Electrical and Photometric Measurements of Solid-State Lighting Products (2008)  
Available from:                              IES  
    120 Wall Street, 17th Floor  
    New York, New York 10005-4001  
    (212) 248-5000  
    [www.ies.org](http://www.ies.org)

**INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF PLUMBING AND MECHANICAL OFFICIALS**

2007 California Mechanical Code  
Available from:                              International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials  
    2001 E. Walnut Drive South  
    Walnut, California 91789-2825  
    800 85-IAPMO (854-2766)  
    [www.iapmo.org](http://www.iapmo.org)

**INTERNATIONAL CONFERENCE OF BUILDING OFFICIALS**

2007 California Building Code

Available from: International Conference of Building Officials  
International Code Council Los Angeles District Office  
5360 South Workman Mill Road  
Whittier, California 90601-2298  
(800) 284-4406  
[www.icbo.org](http://www.icbo.org)

**INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATION FOR STANDARDIZATION**

ISO-13256-1 Water-Source Heat Pumps - Testing and Rating for Performance - Part 1: Water-to-Air and Brine-to-Air Heat Pumps (1998)

ISO-13256-2 "Water-source heat pumps --Testing and rating for performance -- Part 1: Water-to-water and brine-to-water heat pumps," (1998)

Available from: ISO  
1, rue de Varembe  
Case postale 56  
CH-1211  
Geneve 20, Switzerland

**INTERNATIONAL WINDOW FILM ASSOCIATION**

Visual Quality Standard for Applied Window Film Visual Quality Standard for Applied Window Film (Re-endorsed 2015)

Available from: International Window film Association  
P.O. Box 3871  
Martinsville, VA 24115-3871  
276-666-4932

**NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION**

NEMA SSL 7A-2015            “Phase Cut Dimming for Solid State Lighting: Basic Compatibility”  
Available from:            1300 North 17<sup>th</sup> Street, Suite 1752  
                                      Rosslyn, VA 22209  
                                      703-841-3200  
                                      www.nema.org

**NATIONAL FENESTRATION RATING COUNCIL**

NFRC 100                    Procedures for Determining Fenestration Product U-factors (2017)  
NFRC 200                    Procedures for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficients and Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence (2017)  
NFRC 202                    Procedure for Determining Translucent Fenestration Product Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence (2017)  
  
                                      Note: This Technical document has yet not been fully approved by NFRC. If this document is not approved before the Building Energy Standards effective date it will be removed.  
NFRC 203                    Procedure for Determining Visible Transmittance of Tubular Daylighting Devices (2017)  
  
                                      Note: This Technical document has yet not been fully approved by NFRC. If this document is not approved before the Building Energy Standards effective date it will be removed.  
NFRC 400                    Procedures for Determining Fenestration Product Air Leakage (2017)  
Available from:            National Fenestration Rating Council  
                                      6035 Ivy Lane, Suite 140  
                                      Greenbelt, MD 20770.  
  
                                      (301) 589-1776  
                                      [WWW.NFRC.org](http://WWW.NFRC.org) and Email: info@nfr.org

**NSF INTERNATIONAL (FORMERLY NATIONAL SANITATION FOUNDATION)**

NSF/ANSI 50 2016            Circulation System Components and Related Materials for Swimming Pools, Spas/Hot Tubs (2016)  
Available from:            NSF International  
                                      PO Box 130140  
                                      Ann Arbor, MI 48113  
                                      (734) 769-8010

**RESIDENTIAL ENERGY SERVICES NETWORK**

ANSI/RESNET/ICC 380-2016 Standard for Testing Airtightness of Building Enclosures, Airtightness of Heating and Cooling Air Distribution Systems, and Airflow of Mechanical Ventilation Systems (2016)

Available from: Residential Energy Services Network, Inc. (RESNET)  
P.O. Box 4561  
Oceanside, CA 92052-4561  
<http://resnet.us/>

**SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS NATIONAL ASSOCIATION**

Residential Comfort System Installation Standards (2016)

Available from: Sheet Metal And Air Conditioning Contractors National Association (SMACNA)  
4201 Lafayette Center Drive  
Chantilly, VA 20151-1209  
(703) 803-2980  
[www.smacna.org](http://www.smacna.org)

**UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES**

UL 181 Standard for Safety for Factory-made Air Ducts and Connectors (2017)

UL 181A Standard for Safety for Closure Systems for Use with Rigid Air Ducts and Air Connectors (2017)

UL 181B Standard for Safety for Closure Systems for Use with Flexible Air Ducts and Air Connectors (2017)

UL 723 Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials (2017)

UL 727 Standard for Oil-Fired Central Furnaces (2006)

UL 731 Standard for Oil-Fired Unit Heaters (2012)

UL 1077 Standard for Supplementary Protectors for Use in Electrical Equipment (2015)

UL 1574 Track Lighting Systems (2016)

UL 1598 Standard for Luminaires (2012)

UL 1741 Standard for Inverters, Converters, Controllers and Interconnection System Equipment for Use With Distributed Energy Resources (2018)

UL 1973 Standard for Batteries for Use in Stationary, Vehicle Auxiliary Power and Light Electric Rail (LER) Applications (2018)

UL 2108 Low Voltage Lighting Systems (2018)

UL 8750 Standard for Light Emitting Diode (LED) Equipment for Use in Lighting Products (2018)

UL 9540 Standard for Energy Storage Systems and Equipment (2016)

Available from: Underwriters Laboratories  
333 Pfingsten Road  
Northbrook, Illinois 60062-2096  
(847) 272-8800

---

## **APPENDIX 1-B ENERGY COMMISSION DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE IN THEIR ENTIRETY**

The following documents published by the California Energy Commission are incorporated by reference in their entirety into the Energy Code.

Reference Appendices for the Building Energy Efficiency Standards for Residential and Nonresidential Buildings, including the Joint Appendices (JA), the Residential Appendices (RA), and Nonresidential Appendices (NA)

Alternative Calculation Method (ACM) Approval Manual

Available from: California Energy Commission/Publications  
1516 Ninth Street  
Sacramento, CA 95814  
(916) 654-5200  
[www.energy.ca.gov/title24](http://www.energy.ca.gov/title24).